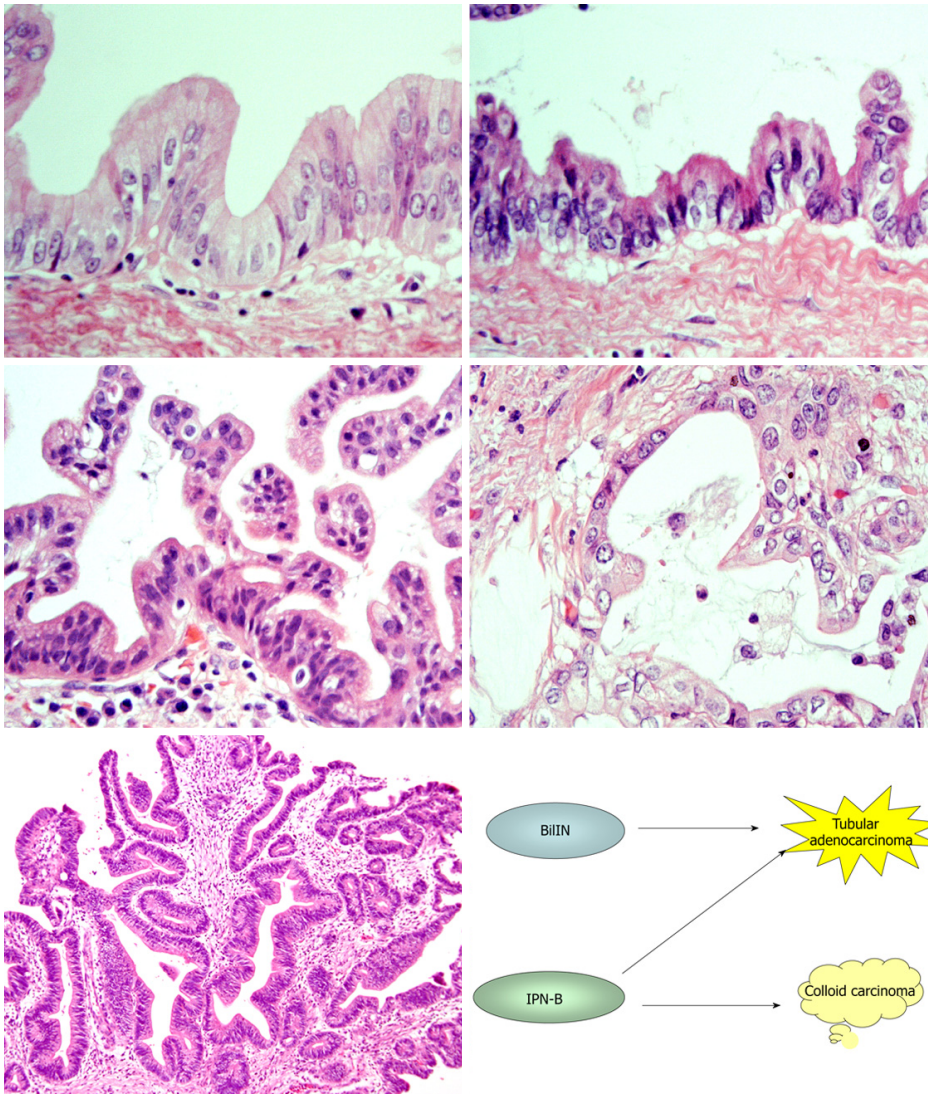
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

World Journal of Hepatology

World J Hepatol 2009 October 31; 1(1): 1-109

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of hepatology



World Journal of Hepatology

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of hepatology

Editorial Board

2009-2013

The *World Journal of Hepatology* Editorial Board consists of 575 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in hepatology. They are from 45 countries, including Argentina (4), Australia (7), Austria (2), Bangladesh (1), Belgium (3), Botswana (2), Brazil (8), Brunei Darussalam (1), Bulgaria (1), Canada (10), Chile (1), China (89), Egypt (3), Finland (1), France (15), Germany (28), Greece (8), Hungary (3), India (20), Ireland (1), Israel (7), Italy (65), Japan (45), Malaysia (1), Mexico (4), Pakistan (2), Poland (1), Portugal (1), Philippines (1), Romania (1), Saudi Arabia (1), Singapore (4), South Korea (17), Spain (22), Sri Lanka (1), Sudan (1), Switzerland (3), Thailand (6), The Gambia (1), The Netherland (4), Tunisia (2), Turkey (13), United Kingdom (17), United States (145) and Venezuela (1).

Stephen Lam Chan, *Hong Kong*
George G Chen, *Hong Kong*
Min-Shan Chen, *Guangzhou*
Yang Cheng, *Shanghai*
Siu Tim Cheung, *Hong Kong*
Thomas YC Cheung, *Hong Kong*
Yick-Pang Ching, *Hong Kang*
William Chi-shing Cho, *Hong Kong*
Chui Chung-hin, *Hong Kong*
Shuang-Suo Dang, *Xi'an*
Yi-Tao Ding, *Nanjing*
Jian-Gao Fan, *Shanghai*
Yuen Man Fung, *Hong Kang*
Zuojiong Gong, *Wuhan*
Tian-Quan Han, *Shanghai*
Jin-Yang He, *Guangzhou*
Garrett CL Ho, *Hong Kong*
Ji-Ming Hu, *Wuhan*
Canhua Huang, *Chengdu*
Zhi-Yong Huang, *Wuhan*
Jian-Hui Jiang, *Changsha*
Dong-Yan Jin, *Hong Kong*
Hsiang-Fu Kung, *Hong Kong*
Lai PBS Lai, *Hong Kong*
Wan YJ Lau, *Hong Kong*
Nancy WY Leung, *Hong Kong*
Jin-Qing Li, *Guangzhou*
Li-Ying Li, *Beijing*
Shu-Chen Li, *Harbin*
Xin-Wei Li, *Shanghai*
Yu-Yuan Li, *Guangzhou*
Enqi Liu, *Xi'an*
Yin-Kun Liu, *Shanghai*
Chung-Mau Lo, *Hong Kong*
Lun-Gen Lu, *Shanghai*
Ming-De Lu, *Guangzhou*
John M Luk, *Hong Kong*
Guang-Hua Luo, *Changzhou*
Shuang Mei, *Shanghai*
Kelvin KC Ng, *Hong Kong*
Qin Ning, *Wuhan*
Qin Pan, *Shanghai*
Qi-Jun Qian, *Shanghai*
Jian-Min Qin, *Shanghai*
Xianjun Qu, *Jinan*
Xue-Ying Sun, *Harbin*
Qin Su, *Beijing*
Wu-Yi Sun, *Hefei*
Huiru Tang, *Wuhan*
Peng Tao, *Nanning*
Eric WC Tse, *Hong Kong*
Bin Wang, Weifang
Xiaozhong Wang, *Fuzhou*
Xiu-Jie Wang, *Chengdu*
Zhen Xia Wang, *Huhhot*
Grace LH Wong, *Hong Kong*
Nathalie Wong, *Hong Kong*
Xiong-Zhi Wu, *Tianjin*
De-Xiang Xu, *Hefei*
Rui-An Xu, *Quanzhou*
Xun Di Xu, *Changsha*
Xiao Yang, *Beijing*
Zhen-Fan Yang, *Hong Kong*
Boon Hun Yong, *Hong Kong*
Ting-He Yu, *Chengdu*
Benny CY Zee, *Hong Kong*
Jia-Ning Zhang, *Dalian*
Xiao-Dong Zhang, *Tianjin*
Xiao-Lan Zhang, *Shijiazhuang*
Xiao-Yan Zhang, *Shanghai*
Hong-Chuan Zhao, *Hefei*
Xiao-Ping Zhao, *Beijing*
Jiang Fan Zhu, *Shanghai*
Yi-Ping Zou, *Beijing*

Egypt

Nabil Mohie Abdel-Hamid, *Minia*
Laila AF Eissa, *Mansoura*
Mona Mostafa Fahmy Nosseir, *Giza*

Finland

Thomas Kietzmann, *Oulu*

France

Aramando Abergel, *Clenmont -Ferrant*
Henri Bismuth, *Villejuif Cedex*
Ana CFN Cardoso, *Paris*
Nicolas Chignard, *Paris*
Claude C de Fromentel, *Lyon*
Zdenko Herceg, *Lyon*
Nathalie Janel, *Paris*
Victor de Ledinghen, *Pessac cedex*
Antoinette Lemoine, *Villejuif*
Marcellin Patrick, *Clichy*
Raoul Poupon, *Paris*
Rodrigue Rossignol, *Bordeaux cedex*
Christian Trépo, *Lyon*
Dominique A Vuitton, *Besancon*
Virginie Wautot, *Pierre Benite*

Germany

Thomas Bock, *Tuebingen*
Ali Canbay, *Essen*
Enrico Narciso De Toni, *München*
Joachim Drevs, *Freiburg*
Volker Fendrich, *Marburg*
Peter R Galle, *Mainz*
Erich Gulbins, *Essen*
Roland Kaufmann, *Jena*
Sebastian Hinz, *Kiel*
Philipp Kobbe, *Aachen*
Michael Kremer, *Heidelberg*
Christian Liedtke, *Aachen*
Martin Loss, *Regensburg*
Arun Kumar Mankan, *Munich*
Lars Müller, *MD, Kiel*
Michael D Menger, *Saarbrucken*
Andreas K Nussler, *Munich*
Margarete Odenthal, *Koeln*
Claus Petersen, *Hannover*
Andrej Potthoff, *Hannover*
Thomas Pusl, *München*
Elke Roeb, *Giessen*
Frank Tacke, *Aachen*
Stefan Rose-John, *Kiel*
Andreas Teufel, *Mainz*
Lothar Thomas, *Frankfurt*
Jens JW Tischendorf, *Aachen*
Arndt Vogel, *Hannover*

Greece

Alex P Betrosian, *Athens*
Spiros G Delis, *Athens*
Ioannis Diamantis, *Athens*
Papandreou Dimitrios, *Mela*
Moses S Elisaf, *Ioannina*
Elias A Kouroumalis, *Crete*
George Papatheodoridis, *Athens*
Stamatios E. Theocharis, *Athens*

Hungary

Gábor Bánhegyi, *Budapest*
Subhamay Ghosh, *Pécs*
Peter Nagy, *Budapest*

India

Anjali Deepak Amarapurkar, *Mumbai*
DN Amararpurkar, *Mumbai*
Runu Chakravarty, *Kolkata*
Pronobesh Chattopadhyay, *Moradabad*
Puneet Chopra, *Gurgaon Haryana*
Tanya Das, *Kolkata*
Radha Krishan Dhiman, *Chandigarh*
Ajay Duseja, *Chandigarh*
Devendra K Gupta, *New Delhi*
P Kar, *New Delhi*
Sudhir Kumar, *Lucknow*
Vijay Kumar, *New Delhi*
Anoop Misra, *New Delhi*
Devendra Parmar, *Lucknow*
Rajendra Prasad, *Chandigarh*
K Rajeshwari, *New Delhi*
Pallu Reddanna, *Hyderabad*
Barjesh Chander Sharma, *New Delhi*
Sarman Singh, *New Delhi*
Ajith TA, *Thrissur*

Ireland

Matthew William Lawless, *Dublin*

Israel

Yaron Ilan, *Jerusalem*
Yaakov Maor Kendler, *Tel Hashomer*
Ran Oren, MD, *Tel Aviv*
Amir Shlomai, *Modiin*
Rifaat Safadi, *Jerusalem*
Shira Zelber Sagi, *Tel Aviv*
Yehuda Julius Shoenfeld, *Tel Hahsomer*

Italy

Luca Aasaloni, *Bologna*
Giovanni Addolorato, *Rome*

Luigi E Adinolfi, *Naples*
Pietro Andreone, *Bologna*
M Appetecchia, *Rome*
Antonio Ascione, *Napoli*
Ferruccio Bonino, *Milano*
Bruno D Bruno, *Benevento*
Savino Bruno, *Milano*
Paolo Cabassa, *Brescia*
Melchiorre Cervello, *Palermo*
Claudio Chiesa, *Rome*
Stefano Colagrande, *Firenze*
Massimo G Colombo, *Milan*
Antonio Craxì, *Palermo*
Samuele De Minicis, *Montegranaro*
Alessandro Vitale, *alessandro*
Fabio Farinati, *Padova*
Paolo Feltracco, *Padova*
Domenico Ferri, *Bari*
Amalia Gastaldelli, *Pisa*
Domenico Girelli, *Verona*
Fernando Goglia, *Benevento*
Alessandro Grasso, *Savona*
Ignazio Grattagliano, *Bari*
Fabio Grizzi, *Milan*
Pietro Invernizzi, *Milan*
Francesco Izzo, *Naples*
Amedeo Lonardo, *Modena*
Malaguarnera Lucia, *Trecastagni*
Massimo Di Maio, *Rossano*
Melania Manco, *Rome*
Andrea Mancuso, *Palermo*
F Marotta, *Milano*
Fabio Marra, *Florence*
Roberto Mazzanti, *Florence*
Giulia Morsica, *Milan*
Antonio Moschetta, *Bari*
Massimo Negrini, *Ferrara*
Andrea Nicolini, *Pisa*
Giuseppe R Nigri, *Rome*
Valerio Nobili, *Rome*
Valentina Pallottini, *Rome*
Adriano M Pellicelli, *Rome*
Marcello Persico, *Naples*
Massimo Pinzani, *Firenze*
Giovanni Polimeni, *Messina*
Camillo Porta, *Pavia*
Piero Portincasa, *Bari*
Emilio Quaia, *Trieste*
Giuseppe Remuzzi, *Bergamo*
Domenico Ribatti, *Bari*
Massimo Roncalli, *Rozzano*
Carlo Sabbà, *Bari*
Orazio Schillaci, *Rome*
Gaetano Serviddio, *Foggia*
Aurelio Sonzogni, *Bergamo*
Paolo Sorrentino, *Salerno*
Enea Spada, *Roma*
Giovanni Tarantino, *Naples*
Luciano Tarantino, *Naples*
Claudio Tiribelli, *Trieste*
Pierluigi Toniutto, *Udine*
Pietro Vajro, *Naples*
Luca Vigano, *Torino*

Japan

Yuichiro Eguchi, *Saga*
Munechika Enjoji, *Fukuoka*
Jiro Fujimoto, *Osaka*
Atsushi Hosui, *Osaka*
Kazuo Ikeda, *Nagoya*
Toru Ishikawa, *Niigata*
Yoshiaki Iwasaki, *Okayama*
Satoru Kakizaki, *Gunma*
Naoya Kato, *Tokyo*
Takumi Kawaguchi, *Kurume*
Kiminori Kimura, *Tokyo*
Tsuneo Kitamura, *Chiba*
Keiichi Kubota, *Tochigi*
Masatoshi Kudo, *Osaka*
Yasuhiro Kuramitsu, *Yamaguchi*
Sabina Mahmood, *Okayama*
Hitoshi Maruyama, *Chiba*
Yasunobu Matsuda, *Niigata*
Sachiko Matsuhashi, *Saga*
Toshihiro Mitaka, *Sapporo*
Eiji Miyoshi, *Yamada-oka Suita*
Zenichi Morise, *Toyoake Aichi*
Ryuichi Morisihita, *Osaka*
MYoshiki Murakami, *Kyoto*
Satoru Murata, *Tokyo*
Atsushi Nakajima, *Kanagawa*
Yasuni Nakanuma, *Kanazawa*
Waka Ohishi, *Hiroshima*
Morikazu Onji, *Matsuyama*
Toshiji Saibara, *Nankoku*
Hiroaki Shiba, *Tokyo*
Ikuo Shoji, *Hyogo*
Ryo Sudo, *Yokohama*
Yoshio Sumida, *Nara*
Shinji Tanaka, *Tokyo*
Takuji Tanaka, *Gifu*
Akihiko Tsuchida, *Tokyo*
Takato Ueno, *Kurume*
Shinichi Ueno, *Kagoshima*
Kiyohito Yagi, *Osaka*
Yo-ichi Yamashita, *Hiroshima*
Teruyoshi Yanagita, *Saga*
Shuang-Qin Yi, *Kanazawa*
Hiroshi Yoshida, *Tokyo*
Hitoshi Yoshiji, *Nara*

Malaysia

Kamsiah Jaarin, *Kuala Lumpur*

Mexico

Norberto C Chavez-Tapia, *Tlalpan*
Javier Lizardi Cervera, *Tlalpan CP*
Saúl Villa-Treviño, *México DF*
Florencia V Vorackova, *México DF*

Pakistan

Syed Hamid Ali, *Karachi*
Huma IQ TI, *Islamabad*

Poland

Maria ES Lotowska, *Bialystok*

Portugal

Felix Dias Carvalho, *Porto*

Philippines

Janus P Ong, *Manila*

Romania

Eugen Georgescu, *Craiova*

Saudi Arabia

Ahmed Helmy, *Riyadh*

Singapore

Wei Ning Chen, *Singapore*
Si-Shen Feng, *Singapore*
Lang Zhuo, *Singapore*
Chun-Tao Wai, *Singapore*

South Korea

Sang Hoon Ahn, *Seoul*
Sun Pyo Hong, *Yongin*
Byung Ihn Choi, *Seoul*
Seok Joo Han, *Seoul*
Kyung Lib Jang, *Busan*
Bum-Joon Kim, *Seoul*
Dong Goo Kim, *Seoul*
Kyung Sik Kim, *Seoul*
Meehyein Kim, *Yongin*
Young Chul Kim, *Seoul*
Mi-Kyung Lee, *Jeonnam*
Young-Ik Lee, *Taejon*
Kwan-Kyu Park, *Daegu*
Hyunchul Rhim, *Seoul*
In Kyoung Lim, *Gyunggi-do*
Dae-Yeul Yu, *Daejeon*
Jong Won Yun, *Kyungbuk*

Spain

Jose AG Agundez, *Badajoz*
Maria Angeles, *Madrid*
Agustin Castiella, *Mendaro*
Ruben Ciria, *Cordoba*
Joan Clari, *Barcelona*
Maria Buti Ferret, *Barcelona*
Puri Fortes, *Pamplona*
Joan Genescà, *Barcelona*
María J Gómez-Lechón, *Valencia*
Arias Jaime, *Madrid*
Ángeles Pajares María, *Madrid*
Jordi Muntane, *Cordoba*
Jose JG Marin, *Salamanca*
Julia P Onsurbe, *Barcelona*
Albert Parés, *Barcelona*
Sonia Ramos, *Madrid*
Cristina Ripoll, *Madrid*
Isabel F Romero, *Barcelona*
Marta R Romero, *Salamanca*
Juan Macias Sanchez, *Sevilla*

Juan Sastre, *Valencia*
Manuel Vázquez-Carrera, *Barcelona*

Sri Lanka

EGD Shaman Rajindrajith, *Ragama*

Sudan

Hatim MY Mudawi, *Khartoum*

Switzerland

Beat Mullhaupt, *Zurich*
Brigitte M Frey-von Matt, *Berne*
Maurer A Christoph, *Liestal*

Thailand

Nattiya Hirankarn, *Bangkok*
Somchai Pinlaor, *Khon Kaen*
Yong Poovorawan, *Bangkok*
Abhasnee Sobhonslidsuk, *Bangkok*
Chanitra Thuwajit, *Bangkok*
Sopit Wongkham, *Khon Kaen*

The Gambia

Maimuna Ebirunkeh Mendy, *Banjul*

The Netherlands

Robert Jacobus de Knegt, *Rotterdam*
TU Hoogenraad, *Heidelberglaan*
Maarten E Tushuizen, *MB Amsterdam*
Robert C Verdonk, *RB Groningen*

Tunisia

Olfa Bahri, *Tunis-Belvedere*
Chadli Dziri, *Tunis*

Turkey

Inci Alican, *Istanbul*
Ahmet Atessahin, *Elazig*
Yasemin Hatice Balaban, *Ankara*
Hayrullah Derici, MD, *Izmir*
Cigdem Ulukaya Durakbasa, *Istanbul*
Muhsin MM Harputluoglu, *Malatya*
Abdurrahman Kadayifci, *Gaziantep*
Adnan Kadayifci, *Antalya*
Ali Sazci, *Kocaeli*
Ilker Tasci, *Ankara*
Mehmet Yalniz, *Elazig*
Serkan Yener, *Izmir*
Yusuf Yilmaz, *Istanbul*

United Kingdom

Alastair David Burt, *Newcastle*
David O Cosgrove, *London*
Anil Dhawan, *London*
Indra Neil Guha, *Nottingham*
Phillip M Harrison, *London*
Hübscher SG Hübscher, *Birmingham*
Long R Jiao, *London*
AT Koulaouzidis, *Edinburgh*
Patricia Lalor, *Birmingham*
David A Lomas, *Cambridge*
Rajeshwar P Mookerjee, *London*
Gareth J Morris-Stiff, *Wales*
Kathryn L Nash, *Southampton*
Derek Anthony O'Reilly,
Christian P Selinge, *Bolton*
Konstantinos Tziomalos, *London*
Feng Wu, *Oxford*

United States

Gary A Abrams, *Montgomery*
Hassan H A-Kader, *Tucson*
Hans-Olov Adami, *Massachusetts*
Joseph Ahn, *Maywood*
Shannon Marie Bailey, *Alabama*
Numan Cem Balci, *St Louis MO*
Edmund J Bini, *New York*
Victor E Buckwold, *Frederick*
Roniel Cabrera, *Gainesville*
Guoqing Cao, *Indiana*
Disaya Chavalitdhamrong, *New York*
Chien-Shing Chen, *Loma Linda*
Fei Chen, *Morgantown*
Su Chen, *San Antonio*
Youhai H Chen, *Philadelphia*
Jinah Choi, *Merced*
Anne M Covey, *New York*
Mark J Czaja, *New York*
Srikanta Dash, *New Orleans*
Anthony JB Demetris, *Pittsburgh*
Sridevi Devaraj, *California*
Lisa Ross Dixon, *Gainesville*
Terrence M Donohue, *Omaha*
Q Ping Dou, *Detroit*
Murray N Ehrinpreis, *Detroit*
Marwan Ghazi Fakih, *Buffalo*
Shengyun Fang, *Maryland*
Claus J Fimmel, *Illinois*
Robert Anthony Fisher, *Virginia*
Samuel W French, *Torrance*
Phillip A Furman, *Princeton*
M Eric Gershwin, *California*
Jalal K Ghali, *Michigan*
Grace Liejun Guo, *Kansas City*
Dieter Haemmerich, *Charleston*
Young S Hahn, *Charlottesville*
Stephen A Harrison, *Texas*
Dee Harrison-Findik, *Nebraska*
Sidhartha Hazari, *Louisiana*
Thomas S Helling, *Jackson*
Alan W Hemming, *Florida*
Iryna S Hepburn, *Evans*
Ai-Xuan L Holterman, *Chicago*
Ke-Qin Hu, *California*
Guangcun Huang, *Ohio*
Wendong Huang, *California*
Rachel M Hudacko, *New Brunswick*
Michael John Jacobs, *Michigan*
Hartmut W Jaeschke, *Kansas City*
Ravi Jhaveri, *North Carolina*
Lynt B Johnson, *Washington*
Neil Louis Julie, *Bethesda*
Sanjay Kakar, *San Francisco*
Sanjeeva P Kalva, *Boston*
Jing X Kang, *Massachusetts*
Hetal Karsan, *Georgia*
Emmet B Keeffe, *California*
Nancy Ellen Kemeny, *New York*
Andrew Scott Kennedy, *Cary*
Kusum K Kharbanda, *Omaha*
David H Kirn, *California*
Hyam Lerner Leffert, *La Jolla*
Stacee Marie Lerret, *Milwaukee*
Fengzhi Li, *New York*
Wei Li, *Houston*
Shuang Liu, *Indiana*
Su Hao Lo, *Davis*
Daniel G Maluf, *Richmond*
Jose E Manautou, *Storrs*
Richard S Mangus, *Indiana*
Mary Ko Manibusan, *Virginia*
Paul Martin, *Miami,*
Jochen Mattner, *Ohio*
James A McCubrey, *North Carolina*
Valentina Medici, *Sacramento*
George Michalopoulos, *Pittsburgh*
Smruti R Mohanty, *Illinois*
John T Moore, *GlaxoSmithKline*
Ravi Murthy, *Texas*
Laura E Nagy, *Cleveland*
Sagar U Nigwekar, *Rochester*
Eileen M O'Reilly, *New York*
Kevin FS O'Carroll, *Hershey*
Melissa Kay Osborn, *Atlanta*
Helieh Saatara Oz, *Kentucky*
Igor P Pogribny, *Arkansas*
Nicholas C Popescu, *Bethesda Maryland*
Daniel S Pratt, *Boston*
Ratna B Ray, *Louis*
Nancy Reau, *Chicago*
Janardan K Reddy, *Chicago*
Martin J Ronis, *Little Rock*
Phillip Ruiz, *Florida*
Tanios B Saab, *Columbus*
Adnan Said, *Madison*
Neeraj Saxena, *Georgia*
Raymund R Saxena, *Minnesota*
Ann Scheimann, *Baltimore*
Timothy M Schmitt, *Charlottesville*
Bernd Schnabl, *La Jolla*
Kunwar Shailubhai, *Pennsylvania*
Muhammad Y Sheikh, *California*
Perry Shen, *Winston-Salem*
Viji Shridhar, *Rochester*
Shivendra D Shukla, *Missouri*
Ashwani K Singal, *Galveston*
Keshav K Singh, *New York*
Omar Skalli, *Shreveport*
Byoung-Joon Song, *Maryland*
Branko Stefanovic, *Tallahassee*
Stephen Strom, *Pennsylvania*
Xiao Su, *San Francisco*
Wing-Kin Syn, *North Carolina*
Gyongyi Szabo, *Massachusetts*
Shinako Takada, *Houston*

WJH World Journal of Hepatology

Contents

Monthly Volume 1 Issue 1 October 31, 2009

EDITORIAL

1 What is the purpose of launching *World Journal of Hepatology*?
Ma LS

3 Recent insights on risk factors of hepatocellular carcinoma
Abdel-Hamid NM

RESEARCH FRONTIER

8 Future perspectives on the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma with cisplatin
Ishikawa T

GUIDELINES FOR BASIC SCIENCE

17 Activins and follistatins: Emerging roles in liver physiology and cancer
Kreidl E, Öztürk D, Metzner T, Berger W, Grusch M

28 Proteinases and their inhibitors in liver cancer
Puxbaum V, Mach L

35 Multistep carcinogenesis of perihilar cholangiocarcinoma arising in the intrahepatic large bile ducts
Nakanuma Y, Sasaki M, Sato Y, Ren X, Ikeda H, Harada K

GUIDELINES FOR CLINICAL PRACTICE

43 Combination treatment in HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B
Tziomalos K

REVIEW

48 Surveillance and diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with cirrhosis
Andreana L, Isgrò G, Pleguezuelo M, Germani G, Burroughs AK

62 Needle track seeding following percutaneous procedures for hepatocellular carcinoma
Cabibbo G, Craxì A

67 Hepatitis C virus and peripheral blood mononuclear cell reservoirs
Baré P

72 Oxidative stress signaling underlying liver disease and hepatoprotective mechanisms
Videla LA

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

79 Aggressive liver resection including major-vessel resection for colorectal liver metastases
Tanaka K, Matsuyama R, Takeda K, Matsuo K, Nagano Y, Endo I

90 Metabolic restaging of hepatocellular carcinoma using whole-body ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT
Sun L, Guan YS, Pan WM, Luo ZM, Wei JH, Zhao L, Wu H

Contents

World Journal of Hepatology
Volume 1 Issue 1 October 31, 2009

BRIEF ARTICLE

98 Partial blockage of hepatocyte maturation in hepatoma-derived growth factor transgenic mice
Enomoto H, Nakamura H, Komatsu-Kanatani N, Liu Y, Yoshida K, Okuda Y, Yamamoto T, Liu W, Nishiguchi S

CASE REPORT

103 Synchronous development of HCC and CCC in the same subsegment of the liver in a patient with type C liver cirrhosis
Watanabe T, Sakata J, Ishikawa T, Shirai Y, Suda T, Hirono H, Hasegawa K, Soga K, Shibasaki K, Saito Y, Umezu H

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I Acknowledgments to reviewers of *World Journal of Hepatology*

APPENDIX

I Meetings

I-V Instructions to authors

ABOUT COVER

Nakanuma Y, Sasaki M, Sato Y, Ren X, Ikeda H, Harada K. Multistep carcinogenesis of perihilar cholangiocarcinoma arising in the intrahepatic large bile ducts.
World J Hepatol 2009; 1(1): 35-42
http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v1/i1/35.htm

FLYLEAF

I-III Editorial Board

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Hepatology

LAUNCH DATE
October 31, 2009

SPONSOR
Beijing Baishideng BioMed Scientific Co., Ltd.,
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-8538-1892
Fax: +86-10-8538-1893
E-mail: baishideng@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

EDITING
Editorial Board of *World Journal of Hepatology,*
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-5908-0038
Fax: +86-10-8538-1893
E-mail: wjh@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com/wjh

PUBLISHING
Beijing Baishideng BioMed Scientific Co., Ltd.,
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-8538-1892
Fax: +86-10-8538-1893
E-mail: baishideng@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

SUBSCRIPTION
Beijing Baishideng BioMed Scientific Co., Ltd.,
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-8538-1892
Fax: +86-10-8538-1893
E-mail: baishideng@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

ONLINE SUBSCRIPTION
One-Year Price 216.00 USD

PUBLICATION DATE
October 31, 2009

CSSN
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Hai-Ning Zhang, Director
World Journal of Hepatology
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-5908-0038
Fax: +86-10-8538-1893
E-mail: wjh@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com/wjh

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/wjh/full/v1/i1/112.htm. If you do not have web access please contact the editorial office.

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/wjhoffice

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.1

World J Hepatol 2009 October 31; 1(1): 1-2
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

EDITORIAL

What is the purpose of launching *World Journal of Hepatology*?

Lian-Sheng Ma

Lian-Sheng Ma, Beijing Baishideng BioMed Scientific Co., Ltd., Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center, No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District, Beijing 100025, China
Author contributions: Ma LS solely contributed to this paper.
Correspondence to: Lian-Sheng Ma, President and Editor-in-Chief, Beijing Baishideng BioMed Scientific Co., Ltd., Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center, No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District, Beijing 100025, China. l.s.ma@wjgnet.com
Telephone: +86-10-59080036 Fax: +86-10-85381893
Received: July 2, 2009 Revised: August 17, 2009
Accepted: August 24, 2009
Published online: October 31, 2009

Abstract

The first issue of *World Journal of Hepatology* (*WJH*), whose preparatory work was initiated on September 23, 2008, will be published on October 31, 2009. The *WJH* Editorial Board has now been established and consists of 213 distinguished experts from 29 countries. Our purpose of launching *WJH* is to publish peer-reviewed, high-quality articles *via* an open-access online publishing model, thereby acting as a platform for communication between peers and the wider public, and maximizing the benefits to editorial board members, authors and readers.

Key words: Maximization of personal benefits; Editorial board members; Authors; Readers; Employees; *World Journal of Hepatology*

Peer reviewers: Dr. Melchiorre Cervello, Istituto di Biomedicina e Immunologia Molecolare "Alberto Monroy", Consiglio Nazionale delle Ricerche (CNR), Via Ugo La Malfa 153, Palermo 90146, Italy; Camillo Porta, MD, Medical Oncology and Laboratory of Pre-Clinical Oncology and Developmental Therapeutics, IRCCS San Matteo University Hospital Foundation, Piazzale C. Golgi 19, I-27100 Pavia, Italy

Ma LS. What is the purpose of launching *World Journal of Hepatology*? *World J Hepatol* 2009; 1(1): 1-2 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v1/i1/1.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.1

INTRODUCTION

I am very pleased to announce that the first issue of *World Journal of Hepatology* (*World J Hepatol*, *WJH*, ISSN 1948-5182, DOI: 10.4254) will be published on October 31, 2009. Originally, the journal was titled *Liver Cancer Review Letters* when preparatory work was initiated on September 23, 2008, and retitled *Liver Disease Review Letters* at a later date. The *WJH* Editorial Board has now been established and consists of 213 distinguished experts from 29 countries.

The role of academic journals is to exhibit the scientific levels of a country, a university, a center, a department, and even a scientist, and build an important bridge for communication between scientists and the public. As we all know, the significance of the publication of scientific articles lies not only in disseminating and communicating innovative scientific achievements and academic views, as well as promoting the application of scientific achievements, but also in formally recognizing the "priority" and "copyright" of innovative achievements published, as well as evaluating research performance and academic levels. To realize these desired attributes of a journal and create a well-recognized journal, the following four types of personal benefits should be maximized.

MAXIMIZATION OF PERSONAL BENEFITS

The maximization of personal benefits refers to the pursuit of the maximum personal benefits in a well-considered optimal manner without violation of the laws, ethical rules and the benefits of others.

Maximization of the benefits of editorial board members

The primary task of editorial board members is to give a peer review of an unpublished scientific article via online office system to evaluate its innovativeness, scientific and practical values and determine whether it should be published or not. During peer review, editorial board members can also obtain cutting-edge information in that field at first hand. As leaders in their field, they have priority to be invited to write articles and publish commentary articles. We will put peer reviewers' names and affiliations along with the article they reviewed in the journal to acknowledge their contribution.

Maximization of the benefits of authors

Since *WJH* is an open-access journal, readers around the world can immediately download and read, free of charge, high-quality, peer-reviewed articles from *WJH* official website, thereby realizing the goals and significance of the communication between authors and peers as well as public reading.

Maximization of the benefits of readers

Readers can read or use, free of charge, high-quality peer-reviewed articles without any limits, and cite the arguments, viewpoints, concepts, theories, methods, results, conclusion or facts and data of pertinent literature so as to validate the innovativeness, scientific and practical values of their own research achievements, thus ensuring that their articles have novel arguments or viewpoints, solid evidence and correct conclusion[1].

Maximization of the benefits of employees

It is an iron law that a first-class journal is unable to exist without first-class editors, and only first-class editors can create a first-class academic journal[2,3]. We insist on strengthening our team cultivation and construction so that every employee, in an open, fair and transparent environment, could contribute their wisdom to edit and publish high-quality articles, thereby realizing the maximization of the personal benefits of editorial board members, authors and readers, and yielding the greatest social and economic benefits.

CONTENTS OF PEER REVIEW

In order to guarantee the quality of articles published in the journal, *WJH* usually invites three experts to comment on the submitted papers. The contents of peer review include: (1) whether the contents of the manuscript are of great importance and novelty; (2) whether the experiment is complete and described clearly; (3) whether the discussion and conclusion are justified; (4) whether the citations of references are necessary and reasonable; and (5) whether the presentation and use of tables and figures are correct and complete.

SCOPE

The major task of *WJH* is to report rapidly the most recent results in basic and clinical research on hepatology, including: liver biology/pathology, cirrhosis and its complications, liver fibrosis, liver failure, portal hypertension, hepatitis B and C and inflammatory disorders, steatohepatitis and metabolic liver disease, hepatocellular carcinoma, biliary tract disease, autoimmune disease, cholestatic and biliary disease, transplantation, genetics, epidemiology, microbiology, molecular and cell biology, nutrition, geriatric and pediatric hepatology, diagnosis and screening, endoscopy, imaging, and advanced technology.

COLUMNS

The columns in *WJH* will include: (1) Editorial: to introduce and comment on major advances in rapidly developing areas and their importance; (2) Frontier: to review recent developments, comment on current research status in important fields, and propose directions for future research; (3) Topic Highlight: this column consists of three formats, including: (a) 10 invited review articles on a hot topic; (b) a commentary on common issues associated with this hot topic; and (c) a commentary on the 10 individual articles; (4) Observation: to update the development of old and new questions, highlight unsolved problems, and provide strategies for their resolution; (5) Guidelines for Basic Research: to provide Guidelines for basic research; (6) Guidelines for Clinical Practice: to provide guidelines for clinical diagnosis and treatment; (7) Review: to review systemically the most representative progress and unsolved problems, comment on current research status, and make suggestions for future work; (8) Original Article: to report original and innovative findings; (9) Brief Articles: to report briefly on novel and innovative findings; (10) Case Report: To report a rare or typical case; (11) Letters to the Editor: to discuss and reply to contributions published in *WJH*, or to introduce and comment on a controversial issue of general interest; (12) Book Reviews: to introduce and comment on quality monographs; and (13) Guidelines: To introduce consensuses and guidelines reached by international and national academic authorities on basic research and clinical practice.

REFERENCES

1 **Zhu DM**. What is the purpose of literature citation? Science Times, 2009-07-17. Available from: URL: http://www.sciencenet.cn/htmlnews/2009/7/221552.shtm
2 **Li ZX**. See the "sallying forth" of Chinese scientific and technical journals from the innovative business model of *WJG*. *Zhongguo Keji Qikan Yanjiu* 2008; **19**: 667-671
3 **Xiao H**. First-class publications can not do without first-class editorial talents. *Keji Yu Chuban* 2008; **(3)**: 192

S- Editor Zhang HN **L- Editor** Kerr C **E- Editor** Ma WH

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.3

World J Hepatol 2009 October 31; 1(1): 3-7
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

EDITORIAL

Recent insights on risk factors of hepatocellular carcinoma

Nabil Mohie Abdel-Hamid

Nabil Mohie Abdel-Hamid, Department of Biochemistry, College of Pharmacy, Minia University, Minia City 0862, Egypt
Author contributions: Abdel-Hamid NM solely contributed to this paper.
Correspondence to: Dr. Nabil Mohie Abdel-Hamid, Professor, Leader of HCC Research Team, Chairman of Department of Biochemistry, College of Pharmacy, Minia University, Minia City 0862, Egypt. nabilmohie@yahoo.com
Telephone: +20-50-6913997 Fax: +20-86-2369075
Received: December 29, 2008 Revised: March 8, 2009
Accepted: March 15, 2009
Published online: October 31, 2009

Abstract

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is a disease prevalent in many populations worldwide. It initiates many economic and health problems in management modalities and leads to increasing mortality rates. Worldwide, trials have attempted to discover specific early markers for detection and prediction of the disease, hoping to set a more precise strategy for liver cancer prevention. Unfortunately, many economic, cultural and disciplinary levels contribute to confounding preventive strategies. Many risk factors contribute to predisposition to HCC, which can present individually or simultaneously. Previous articles discussed many risk factors for hepatocellular carcinogenesis; however, most of them didn't consider collectively the most recent data relating to causes. In this article, the pathogenesis and risk factors of HCC are discussed. Most of the intermediary steps of HCC involve molecular and transcriptional events leading to hepatocyte malignant transformation. These steps are mainly triggered by hepatitis B, C or transfusion-transmitted virus, either alone, or with other factors. Diabetes seems to be a major contributing risk factor. Schistosomiasis, a blood infestation, mostly affects Nile basin inhabitants leading to bladder, renal and hepatic cancers. Alcoholism, food and water pollutants and some drugs can also lead to HCC. Additionally, some hereditary diseases, as hemochromatosis, α-1-antitrypsin deficiency and tyrosinaemia are known to lead to the development of HCC, if not well managed.

Key words: Hepatocellular carcinoma; Hepatitis C virus; Hepatitis B virus; Transfusion-transmitted virus; Schistosomiasis; Risk, Alcoholism and hereditary diseases

Peer reviewers: Pietro Andreone, Professore di Medicina Interna, Dipartimento Universitario di Medicina Clinica, Università di Bologna, DAI di Gastroenterologia e Medicina Interna, Azienda Ospedaliero-Universitaria di Bologna, Policlinico Sant'Orsola-Malpighi, Via Massarenti, 9, 40138 Bologna, Italy; Patricia Cristina Baré, PhD, Virology, Instituto de Investigaciones Hematológicas, Academia Nacional de Medicina, Pacheco de Melo 3081, Buenos Aires, 1425, Argentina

Abdel-Hamid NM. Recent insights on risk factors of hepatocellular carcinoma. *World J Hepatol* 2009; 1(1): 3-7 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v1/i1/3.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.3

INTRODUCTION

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is ranked to be the most common cancer in many countries[1]. Recently, HCC was reported to be the fifth most common cancer in males, the eighth common cancer in females and about 560 000 cases are discovered per year, more than 80% of which occur in the developing countries. Having very poor prognosis, it represents the third leading cause of cancer death worldwide; more than one-half of them in China. Generally, HCC is more frequent in men than in women and the incidence increases with age[2]. Like other cancers, it is a multistep process, involving many genetic alterations, which eventually lead to malignant transformation of hepatocytes. Most liver diseases lead to cirrhosis. Within 15-40 years, chronic hepatitis leads to cirrhosis. Mostly, HCC develops among 70%-90% of cirrhotic patients, while only 10% of HCC patients have a non-cirrhotic liver, or even have inflammatory lesions[2]. According to the WHO mortality database of the early 1980s, the highest rates were found in Mexico and Chile, France, Italy, Portugal, Austria,

Hungary and Romania. Unfortunately, figures are rising in many European countries, including, in the UK, Wales and Scotland, possibly due to increased consumption of alcohol[3]. Alcoholic liver diseases and hepatitis C infection, being primary etiologies for liver cirrhosis, are the major causes of the rising HCC mortality rates[4].

PATHOGENESIS OF HUMAN HCC

Being implicated in more than 70% of HCC cases world wide, liver cirrhosis is the major risk factor for HCC development. Liver carcinogenesis may last for decades, through progressive accumulation of different genetic alterations eventually leading to malignant transformation. Thus, chronic liver injury initiates increased liver cell turnover, triggering oxidative DNA damage and inflammatory events. This leads to formation of dysplastic and macroregenerative nodules, which are considered to be neoplastic[5].

A-MOLECULAR PATHWAYS AND THEIR POSSIBLE RELATIONSHIP TO HCC

The underlying steps in human hepatocarcinogenesis: there are at least four molecular pathways that regulate either proliferation or death.

1-Irregular expression of β-catenin

β-catenin is a nuclear protein that regulates the cell cycle. Its irregular expression, resulting from β-catenin gene mutations, is implicated in HCC. In addition, alteration to the Wnt signaling pathway plays a role in more than 50% of HCCs[6]. Wnt molecules are a large family of cysteine-rich secreted glycoproteins that control development in organisms, ranging from nematodes to mammals. Interestingly, accumulated intra-nuclear β-catenin form complexes with proteins such as Wnt ligands and Frizzled receptors, leading to unrestricted cell cycling[7].

2-Up-regulation of many growth factors

Insulin-like growth factor (IGF), insulin receptor substrate 1, hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) and transforming growth factor β (TGF-β) have been implicated in the development of HCC[8].

3-Transformation from pre-neoplastic to HCC nodules

HCC is a highly vascular tumor, always accompanied by neo-vascularization. Thus, overexpression of angiogenic factors, vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) and angiopoietin-2, is another pathway for HCC genesis[9,10].

4-Mutations in transcription factors controlling the cell cycle

Transcription factors such as phospho-retinoblastoma (pRb), P53, TGF-β and β-catenin participate in hepatocellular carcinogenesis[11]. Mutations in these factors deprive the cell control over the cell cycle, leading to uncontrolled mitosis and cancer.

B-RISK FACTORS THAT LEAD TO HCC

HBV infection

This DNA virus is the most frequent etiology of liver cancer. There is strong epidemiological evidence correlating HCC to HBV infection. This was shown by positive results in HCC patients for both HB surface antigen (HBs Ag) and HB core antibodies (HBc antibodies) or both together[12]. However, patients with negative hepatitis B serum markers, although showing symptoms of chronic hepatitis or cirrhosis, were proved to have active intrahepatic replicating virus. This is conventionally known as occult HBV infection[13].

HCV infection

In developing countries, the major concern in HCC is chronic HCV infection. Chronic HCV infection mostly leads to hepatic cirrhosis before developing HCC[14]. Additionally, occult HCV was also reported in patients with chronic un-explained hepatitis[15]. Thus, both occult HBV and HCV infections contribute to HCC prevalence. These can be detected by the invasive biopsy technique, which is the sole diagnostic tool in occult uncertain infections.

Generally, the prevalence of HCV-infection is accepted to be a major morbidity factor in hepatic carcinogenesis. In developing countries, the mode of transmission of HCV is diverse. Old habits of injection, shaving, circumcision, blood transfusion, labor and surgical viral transmission, frequently created many infected generations who carry the infection for many years, although the modes of transmission were greatly minimized by hygienic and cultural development. However, these old-infected populations constitute classic candidates for long standing infection, cirrhosis and HCC. HCV is a member of the Flaviviridae family of enveloped, positive-stranded RNA viruses, genus Hepacivirus. It is a completely cytoplasmic-replicating virus that induces oncogenic transformation[16]. An increasing body of evidence suggests that HCV has a direct pathway in promoting malignant hepatocyte transformation. However, it also now established that many viral proteins are implicated in malignant transformation and HCC development. Of these proteins, core proteins, NS3, NS4, were shown to have transformation potential in tissue culture[17-20]. These viral proteins, in addition to the viral RNA, interact with many host-cell factors, while still regulating the viral life cycle. They modulate host-cell activities such as cell signaling, transcription, transformation, apoptosis, membrane rearrangement, vesicular trafficking and protein translation. This ultimately misleads the host transcription factors, disturbing cell mitosis and protein synthesis, leading to carcinogenesis[2]. On the other hand, the HCV core has immunosuppressive activities through interaction with the complement receptor C1qR on the T cells leading to chronic infection[21].

Transfusion-transmitted virus

Another possible risk factor for HCC, found in patients

with HCV-related liver disorder is transfusion-transmitted virus. These viral DNA traces were only discovered by fine *in situ* PCR in liver biopsies, which could be described to be neither HBV nor HCV material[22,23].

Diabetes mellitus

Liver cirrhosis, which is a functional liver damage (characterized by a decrease in serum albumin level below 4 g/dL and increased prothrombin time), is always higher in HCC patients with diabetes, than among those without a history of diabetes. Thus, there is a positive correlation between the history of diabetes mellitus and HCC, which was not confounded by any other HCC risk factor, as observed by Lagiou and co-workers[24]. A number of possible mechanisms explained this association. Most non-insulin dependent diabetics show hyper-insulinemia. Thus, insulin or its precursors may interact with liver cells to stimulate mitogenesis or carcinogenesis[25,26]. Another possible pathway is that a p53 mutation (an apoptotic factor) was noticed frequently in HCC patients with diabetes rather than non-diabetics, this could provide an evidence for a molecular mechanism involving this common association[27].

Hereditary hemochromatosis

Hereditary hemochromatosis is an autosomal recessive condition characterized by excessive iron deposition in hepatocytes due to an increased intestinal absorption. Thus, liver disease is the commonest cause of death in patients with hereditary hemochromatosis[28]. Among hemochromatotic patients, 6% of men and 1.5% of women are at absolute risk of liver cancer[29]. However, a cross-sectional study showed that progression to HCC among hemochromatotic patients is mostly variable from one population to another, depending mainly on exposure to environmental factors that synergize the current underlying gene mutation[30].

Schistosomiasis among Egyptian Nile basin population

Many cross-sectional studies on wide Egyptian sectors frequently correlated HCV infection and intravenous treatment for schistosomiasis, which is a common parasitic infestation frequently constituting a serious predisposing factor for hepatic fibrosis[31]. Many HCC cases were also diagnosed among long standing bilharziasis.

Exposure to chemical carcinogens

Environmental pollutants such as aflatoxin B, a product of mold commonly contaminating badly stored foods, as well as insecticides, were reported to be classical sources for hepatocarcinogenesis[32]. Other known chemical carcinogens are chlorination byproducts in drinking water. Uncontrolled water chlorination converts many organic traces in water into dangerous intermediates, such as di-and tri- chloroacetic acids, which are experimentally known to induce HCC[33]. Additionally, a rarely encountered chemical contaminant to drinking water, the algal toxin, microcystin, which is found in pond-ditch waters, can induce primary liver cancer[34]. However, many other chemical contaminants, such as solvents, food additives, drugs and hormones, are thought to contribute to HCC. Recent studies strongly suggested that bile acids might be pro-inflammatory and oncogenic agents. Thus, chronic exposure to bile acids plays an important part in inflammation and hepato- and cholangiocellular carcinogenesis[35].

Alcoholism

Alcohol is a very common source for steatohepatitis (fatty liver), cirrhosis and eventually HCC[36]. In developed countries, alcohol drinking seems to be the most common source for HCC. Alcohol either directly initiates HCC after its oxidation into acetaldehyde, which is genotoxic, or indirectly through the development of cirrhosis[37]. Epidemiological studies suggested a strong synergistic effect of alcohol on both HBV and HCV infections in developing HCC[38].

Congenital disorders

Alpha-1-antitrypsin deficiency and tyrosinemia might be complicated by the development of HCC[39]. Thus, dietary or pharmacological management of hereditary tyrosinemia might offer a strategy for prevention of HCC in these cases[40]. On the other hand, alpha-1-antitrypsin is an acute-phase protein that is produced by liver cells. Hereditary deficiency of this protein is mostly due to liver production of the abnormal protein that cannot be released into the plasma. Accumulation of the protein in hepatocytes can lead to liver damage. This can trigger hepatitis in neonates, end-stage liver disease, cirrhosis and HCC in adults[41].

Recent insights on laboratory detection of HCC

Recently, I published a review of the laboratory markers useful in diagnosing HCC, either specific RNAs or serum proteins. These included molecular markers such as hepatoma specific alpha fetoprotein (HS-AFP) mRNA, hepatoma specific gamma glutamyl transferase (HS-GGT) mRNA, transforming growth factor β1 (TGF-β1) mRNA, insulin-like growth factor-Ⅱ (IGF-Ⅱ) mRNA, heat shock protein (HSP) and methylated apoptotic factors (such as p53-mRNA). Serum markers such as AFP, alpha-L-fucosidase (AFU), GGT, TGF-β1, IGF-Ⅱ, anti-p53 antibodies and des-gamma-carboxy prothrombin (DCP) in addition to less common markers such as r-glutamyl transpeptidase (r-GT), tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α), pancreatitis-associated protein (PAP), serine-threonine kinase 15 (STK-15) and plasma glutamate carboxypeptidase (PGCP) were also studied.

The most important conclusion was that the use of AFP, AFU and methylated p53-mRNA together could give a 100% early prediction of HCC development in risky subjects. This short panel of three markers is the recommended to ensure optimal HCC prediction with the highest priority to other studied markers[42].

CONCLUSION

Initiation of HCC is often mediated by complex mole-

cular and transcriptional cascades leading to hepatocyte malignant transformation. These molecular changes include, irregular expression of β-catenin, up-regulation of many growth factors, transformation from pre-neoplastic to HCC nodules and mutations in transcription factors controlling the cell cycle. This cascade is mostly triggered by individual or confounding risk factors. These risk factors include hepatitis B or C, blood transfusion transmitted viruses, diabetes, Schistosomiasis, alcohol intake/alcoholism, food and water pollutants, as well as exogenous and endogenous carcinogenic chemicals. Some hereditary diseases such as hemochromatosis, α-1-antitrypsin deficiency and tyrosinaemia might lead to the development of HCC if not properly managed.

REFERENCES

1 **Bosch FX**, Ribes J, Borras J. Epidemiology of primary liver cancer. *Semin Liver Dis* 1999; **19**: 271-285
2 **Levrero M**. Viral hepatitis and liver cancer: the case of hepatitis C. *Oncogene* 2006; **25**: 3834-3847
3 **Mendez-Sanchez N**, Villa AR, Zamora-Valdes D, Morales-Espinosa D, Uribe M. Worldwide mortality from cirrhosis. *Ann Hepatol* 2007; **6**: 194-195
4 **Bosetti C**, Levi F, Lucchini F, Zatonski WA, Negri E, La Vecchia C. Worldwide mortality from cirrhosis: an update to 2002. *J Hepatol* 2007; **46**: 827-839
5 **Terada T**, Ueda K, Nakanuma Y. Histopathological and morphometric analysis of atypical adenomatous hyperplasia of human cirrhotic livers. *Virchows Arch A Pathol Anat Histopathol* 1993; **422**: 381-388
6 **Ozturk M**. Genetic aspects of hepatocellular carcinogenesis. *Semin Liver Dis* 1999; **19**: 235-242
7 **Miyoshi Y**, Iwao K, Nagasawa Y, Aihara T, Sasaki Y, Imaoka S, Murata M, Shimano T, Nakamura Y. Activation of the beta-catenin gene in primary hepatocellular carcinomas by somatic alterations involving exon 3. *Cancer Res* 1998; **58**: 2524-2527
8 **Moradpour D**, Wands JR. Molecular pathogenesis of hepatocellular carcinoma. Philadelphia: W B Saunders, 2002: 1333-1354
9 **Yamaguchi R**, Yano H, Iemura A, Ogasawara S, Haramaki M, Kojiro M. Expression of vascular endothelial growth factor in human hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 1998; **28**: 68-77
10 **Mitsuhashi N**, Shimizu H, Ohtsuka M, Wakabayashi Y, Ito H, Kimura F, Yoshidome H, Kato A, Nukui Y, Miyazaki M. Angiopoietins and Tie-2 expression in angiogenesis and proliferation of human hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2003; **37**: 1105-1113
11 **Moradpour D**, Blum HE. Pathogenesis of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2005; **17**: 477-483
12 **Abe K**, Edamoto Y, Park YN, Nomura AM, Taltavull TC, Tani M, Thung SN. In situ detection of hepatitis B, C, and G virus nucleic acids in human hepatocellular carcinoma tissues from different geographic regions. *Hepatology* 1998; **28**: 568-572
13 **Cacciola I**, Pollicino T, Squadrito G, Cerenzia G, Orlando ME, Raimondo G. Occult hepatitis B virus infection in patients with chronic hepatitis C liver disease. *N Engl J Med* 1999; **341**: 22-26
14 **Donato F**, Tagger A, Chiesa R, Ribero ML, Tomasoni V, Fasola M, Gelatti U, Portera G, Boffetta P, Nardi G. Hepatitis B and C virus infection, alcohol drinking, and hepatocellular carcinoma: a case-control study in Italy. Brescia HCC Study. *Hepatology* 1997; **26**: 579-584
15 **Lerat H**, Hollinger FB. Hepatitis C virus (HCV) occult infection or occult HCV RNA detection? *J Infect Dis* 2004; **189**: 3-6
16 **Tellinghuisen TL**, Rice CM. Interaction between hepatitis C virus proteins and host cell factors. *Curr Opin Microbiol* 2002; **5**: 419-427
17 **Sakamuro D**, Furukawa T, Takegami T. Hepatitis C virus nonstructural protein NS3 transforms NIH 3T3 cells. *J Virol* 1995; **69**: 3893-3896
18 **Ray RB**, Lagging LM, Meyer K, Ray R. Hepatitis C virus core protein cooperates with ras and transforms primary rat embryo fibroblasts to tumorigenic phenotype. *J Virol* 1996; **70**: 4438-4443
19 **Gale M Jr**, Kwieciszewski B, Dossett M, Nakao H, Katze MG. Antiapoptotic and oncogenic potentials of hepatitis C virus are linked to interferon resistance by viral repression of the PKR protein kinase. *J Virol* 1999; **73**: 6506-6516
20 **Park JS**, Yang JM, Min MK. Hepatitis C virus nonstructural protein NS4B transforms NIH3T3 cells in cooperation with the Ha-ras oncogene. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2000; **267**: 581-587
21 **Kittlesen DJ**, Chianese-Bullock KA, Yao ZQ, Braciale TJ, Hahn YS. Interaction between complement receptor gC1qR and hepatitis C virus core protein inhibits T-lymphocyte proliferation. *J Clin Invest* 2000; **106**: 1239-1249
22 **Comar M**, Ansaldi F, Morandi L, Dal Molin G, Foschini PM, Croce SL, Bonin S, Stanta G, Tiribelli C, Campello C. In situ polymerase chain reaction detection of transfusion-transmitted virus in liver biopsy. *J Viral Hepat* 2002; **9**: 123-127
23 **Ozyurek E**, Ergunay K, Kuskonmaz B, Unal S, Cetin M, Ustacelebi S, Gurgey A, Gumruk F. Transfusion-transmitted virus prevalence in Turkish patients with thalassemia. *Pediatr Hematol Oncol* 2006; **23**: 347-353
24 **Lagiou P**, Kuper H, Stuver SO, Tzonou A, Trichopoulos D, Adami HO. Role of diabetes mellitus in the etiology of hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2000; **92**: 1096-1099
25 **Adami HO**, Chow WH, Nyren O, Berne C, Linet MS, Ekbom A, Wolk A, McLaughlin JK, Fraumeni JF Jr. Excess risk of primary liver cancer in patients with diabetes mellitus. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1996; **88**: 1472-1477
26 **Moore MA**, Park CB, Tsuda H. Implications of the hyperinsulinaemia-diabetes-cancer link for preventive efforts. *Eur J Cancer Prev* 1998; **7**: 89-107
27 **Hsu HC**, Peng SY, Lai PL, Sheu JC, Chen DS, Lin LI, Slagle BL, Butel JS. Allelotype and loss of heterozygosity of p53 in primary and recurrent hepatocellular carcinomas. A study of 150 patients. *Cancer* 1994; **73**: 42-47
28 **Fracanzani AL**, Conte D, Fraquelli M, Taioli E, Mattioli M, Losco A, Fargion S. Increased cancer risk in a cohort of 230 patients with hereditary hemochromatosis in comparison to matched control patients with non-iron-related chronic liver disease. *Hepatology* 2001; **33**: 647-651
29 **Elmberg M**, Hultcrantz R, Ekbom A, Brandt L, Olsson S, Olsson R, Lindgren S, Loof L, Stal P, Wallerstedt S, Almer S, Sandberg-Gertzen H, Askling J. Cancer risk in patients with hereditary hemochromatosis and in their first-degree relatives. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 1733-1741
30 **Willis G**, Bardsley V, Fellows IW, Lonsdale R, Wimperis JZ, Jennings BA. Hepatocellular carcinoma and the penetrance of HFE C282Y mutations: a cross sectional study. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2005; **5**: 17
31 **Bassily S**, Hyams KC, el-Masry NA, Hassan NF, Watts DM. Hepatitis C virus infection and hepatosplenic schistosomiasis. *Scand J Infect Dis* 1992; **24**: 687-688
32 **Abdel-Wahab M**, El-Ghawalby N, Mostafa M, Sultan A, El-Sadany M, Fathy O, Salah T, Ezzat F. Epidemiology of hepatocellular carcinoma in lower Egypt, Mansoura Gastroenterology Center. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2007; **54**: 157-162
33 **Ferreira-Gonzalez A**, DeAngelo AB, Nasim S, Garrett CT.

Ras oncogene activation during hepatocarcinogenesis in B6C3F1 male mice by dichloroacetic and trichloroacetic acids. *Carcinogenesis* 1995; **16**: 495-500
34 **Yu S**, Zhao N, Zi X. [The relationship between cyanotoxin (microcystin, MC) in pond-ditch water and primary liver cancer in China] *Zhonghua Zhongliu Zazhi* 2001; **23**: 96-99
35 **Jansen PL**. Endogenous bile acids as carcinogens. *J Hepatol* 2007; **47**: 434-435
36 **Donato F**, Tagger A, Gelatti U, Parrinello G, Boffetta P, Albertini A, Decarli A, Trevisi P, Ribero ML, Martelli C, Porru S, Nardi G. Alcohol and hepatocellular carcinoma: the effect of lifetime intake and hepatitis virus infections in men and women. *Am J Epidemiol* 2002; **155**: 323-331
37 **London WT**, McGlynn KA. Liver cancer. In: Schottenfield D, Fraumeni JF, editors. Cancer epidemiology and prevention. New York, NY: Oxford University Press, 1996: 772-793
38 **Brechot C**, Nalpas B, Feitelson MA. Interactions between alcohol and hepatitis viruses in the liver. *Clin Lab Med* 1996; **16**: 273-287
39 **Montalto G**, Cervello M, Giannitrapani L, Dantona F, Terranova A, Castagnetta LA. Epidemiology, risk factors, and natural history of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2002; **963**: 13-20
40 **Ashorn M**, Pitkanen S, Salo MK, Heikinheimo M. Current strategies for the treatment of hereditary tyrosinemia type I. *Paediatr Drugs* 2006; **8**: 47-54
41 **Kok KF**, Wahab PJ, Houwen RH, Drenth JP, de Man RA, van Hoek B, Meijer JW, Willekens FL, de Vries RA. Heterozygous alpha-I antitrypsin deficiency as a co-factor in the development of chronic liver disease: a review. *Neth J Med* 2007; **65**: 160-166
42 **Abdel-Hamid MN**. Priority considerations in early laboratory diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma. *IJIB* 2008; **3**: 196-201

S- Editor Li JL **L- Editor** Negro F **E- Editor** Ma WH

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi: 10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.8

World J Hepatol 2009 October 31; 1(1): 8-16
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

RESEARCH FRONTIER

Future perspectives on the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma with cisplatin

Toru Ishikawa

Toru Ishikawa, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Saiseikai Niigata Second Hospital, Niigata 950-1104, Japan
Author contributions: Ishikawa T solely contributed to this paper.
Correspondence to: Toru Ishikawa, MD, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Saiseikai Niigata Second Hospital, Teraji 280-7, Niigata 950-1104, Japan. toruishi@ngt.saiseikai.or.jp
Telephone: +81-25-2336161 Fax: +81-25-2338880
Received: August 4, 2009 Revised: September 9, 2009
Accepted: September 16, 2009
Published online: October 31, 2009

Abstract

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is the commonest primary liver malignancy. Its incidence is increasing worldwide. Surgery, including transplantation resection, is currently the most effective treatment for HCC. However, recurrence rates are high and long-term survival is poor. Conventional cytotoxic chemotherapy has not provided clinical benefit or prolonged survival for patients with advanced HCC. Cisplatin (CDDP) is a key drug for the standard regimens of various cancers in the respiratory, digestive and genitourinary organs. Recently, several encouraging results have been shown in using CDDP in the treatment of advanced HCC patients. This review examines current knowledge regarding the chemotherapeutic potential of CDDP.

Key words: Hepatocellular carcinoma; Hepatic arterial infusion; Cisplatin

Peer reviewer: Atsushi Nakajima, MD, Professor, Gastroenterology Division,Yokohama City University Hospital, 3-9 Fukuura, Kanazawaku, Yokohama 236 Kanagawa, Japan

Ishikawa T. Future perspectives on the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma with cisplatin. *World J Hepatol* 2009; 1(1): 8-16 Available from: URL: http: //www.wjgnet.com/wjh/full/v1/i1/8.htm DOI: http: //dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.8

INTRODUCTION

It has become possible to identify a group of patients with chronic liver disease who are at a high risk of developing hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC)[1]. In addition, advances in diagnostic imaging have allowed relatively early diagnosis of HCC. However, it is still not rare to find patients in whom HCC is diagnosed at an advanced stage of the disease. For the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma, various treatments, including hepatectomy, transcatheter hepatic arterial embolization (TAE), transcatheter hepatic arterial chemoembolization (TACE), percutaneous ethanol injection therapy (PEIT), percutaneous microwave coagulation therapy (PMCT) and percutaneous radiofrequency ablation (PRFA), were performed either singly or in combination. Thus, local control has been attempted taking into account the localization of the tumor, location of the lesion, and the hepatic reserve. On the other hand, it is necessary to apply effective chemotherapy to patients who develop recurrence after these treatments for local control of the disease, as also those with highly advanced disease. In most previous studies, either only a small number of patients were included or there was no control group, resulting in the difficulty of reaching a consensus in the establishment of a standard treatment. A group, led by Dr Makuuchi, was formed with the purpose of issuing guidelines for the diagnosis and treatment of liver cancer by "Development of Evidence-based Guideline Diagnosis and Treatment" of Ministry of Health, Labor and Welfare. "Evidence-based Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Treatment of Hepatocellular Carcinoma, version 2005"[2] were published in March 2005. These are the first established guidelines for the diagnosis and treatment of HCC based on the principle of evidence-based medicine. According to the guidelines, currently, and based on scientific evidence, there are no chemotherapies that can be recommended. HCC is resistant and relatively insensitive to chemotherapy, rarely showing response to treatment. Therefore, no standard regimens have been established yet.

This study is focused on cisplatin, which is now attracting much attention among anticancer drugs, used for solid cancers, as a powerful agent that can be used for the treatment of HCC by arterial infusion. Future perspectives in relation to the use of this agent are outlined, based on a review of all the studies reported to date in the literature.

OVERVIEW OF CISPLATIN

In 1965, a bacteriologist, Barnett Rosenberg, found that a platinum compound, eluted from platinum electrodes used in his experiments, had an inhibitory effect on the growth of *Escherichia coli*. Later, various platinum compounds were examined for their antitumor activity, hoping to find a drug that would inhibit the division of cancer cells, characterized by rapid proliferation. Subsequently, cisplatin (cis-diamminedichloroplatinum; CDDP) was identified as a compound with high antitumor activity.

In 1972, clinical research on CDDP was started at the US National Cancer Institute (NCI), and the usefulness of CDDP as an antineoplastic agent was first confirmed in the treatment of malignant tumors of the urinary system. Currently, CDDP is a key drug in standard regimens for the treatment of various cancers, including of the respiratory, digestive and genitourinary systems[3].

CDDP exerts its action through the following mechanism. After entering the target cells, CDDP binds to the cellular DNA to form a covalent complex. The drug causes reversible alkylation of guanine and adenine, and forms intra- and interstrand cross-links in the DNA, thereby inhibiting elongation of DNA by DNA polymerase (inhibition of DNA transcription and replication). In addition, the formation of intrastrand cross-links results in changes in the conformation of the cells. These changes induce apoptosis and necrosis of the cancer cells, and underlie the antitumor effect of the drug. The anticancer effect of CDDP is characterized by both concentration-dependent and time-dependent features.

CDDP is mainly excreted *via* the kidney. The percentage of cumulative 24-h urinary excretion relative to the dose administered has been reported to be 30%-40%. Pharmacokinetic studies have revealed that the CDDP in the plasma rapidly binds to plasma proteins practically irreversibly, to become inactivated. Free CDDP (unbound to proteins) has been found at a minimally detectable levels 2 h after the end of administration, to fall below the detection limit 2-4 h later. Free CDDP exerts antitumor activity and, at the same time, accumulates in the proximal renal tubules to cause tubular impairment. Therefore, it is important to take measures against potential acute renal damage occurring in the presence of free CDDP in the blood within 2 h of the end of administration. Prophylactic measures against renal damage include hydration and forced diuresis to decrease the urinary CDDP concentration, aimed at minimizing the period of contact between CDDP and the renal tubules. Furosemide and/or mannitol are the commonly used diuretics to induce forced diuresis. Premedication with an antiemetic, such as a $5HT_3$ receptor inhibitor, is necessary, because CDDP has a strong emetic action.

CDDP is also known as a modulator of 5-fluorouracil (5-FU). It is well-known that 5-FU forms a covalent ternary complex with thymidylate synthase (TS). FdUMP is converted into the active form inside the cell in the presence of tetrahydrofolate, and inhibits the catalytic function of TS, thereby inhibiting DNA synthesis, which underlies the antitumor effect of 5-FU. CDDP acts on the cell membrane and inhibits the entry of methionine into the cells, leading to a reduction of the intracellular methionine pool. It has been postulated that this results in homocysteine methylation for the synthesis of methionine inside the cells. In relation to this synthetic reaction, the tetrahydrofolate pool increases to promote the formation of the covalent ternary complex and enhances DNA synthesis inhibition by 5-FU. CDDP exerts this effect, regardless of whether it is bound or unbound to plasma proteins.

SYSTEMIC CHEMOTHERAPY

Advanced HCC patients who are candidates to chemotherapy are those who are unlikely to respond to hepatectomy, RFA and/or TACE, have well-maintained liver function (Child-Pugh A, B) and a stable general condition (PS 0-2). Such patients would include those with (1) severe vascular invasion, (2) multiple intrahepatic lesions, and (3) distant metastases. No chemotherapeutic agent has been shown to exert consistently satisfactory antitumor effect against HCC, and most potentially effective drugs have been examined in pilot studies conducted on only limited numbers of patients. Among such drugs, the response rate to CDDP, given as systemic monotherapy, has been reported to be 15%[4], and multidrug regimens containing this agent may be expected to yield higher response rates. Arterial infusion chemotherapy, which allows higher concentrations of the drug to be achieved inside the tumor and thereby higher antitumor effect, has been reported to yield higher antitumor efficacy than systemic administration, and the reported response rates to arterial infusion regimens containing CDDP range from 41%-61%[5,6]. High efficacy of systemic chemotherapy with CDDP for HCC has not been reported, similarly to various other anticancer drugs. According to the available results, the response rate is 9.3%-17% for the intravenous administration of CDDP alone, and 10%-20% for the combined therapy. Thus, no satisfactory survival effect has been shown for any of the various regimens[4,7-17] (Table 1). However, Ikeda *et al*[12,13], who used three drugs (5-FU, mitoxantrone, CDDP), achieved relatively favorable results: a response rate of 27% (14/51), median survival time (MST) of 11.6 mo, and median progression-free survival of 4.0 mo. This seems to be a promising treatment regimen for patients of HCC with extrahepatic metastases.

Table 1 Systemic chemotherapy

Author	Country and region	Publication year	Treatment schedule	*n*	RR (%)	PFS (M)	MST (M)	1yrs (%)
Falkson *et al*[7]	USA	1987	CDDP 75 mg/sq q3w	35	< 17	-	3.2	-
Okada *et al*[4]	Japan	1993	CDDP 80 mg/sq q4w	26	15.4	-	-	-
Nagahama *et al*[8]	Japan	1997	CDDP	43	9.3	-	-	-
Ji *et al*[9]	Korea	1996	CDDP 60 mg/sq q4w IFN-α 3MU im for 3 mo	30	13.3	-	7.6	23.5
Leung *et al*[10]	China	2002	CDDP 20 mg/sq, d1-4 DXR 40 mg/sq, d1 5-FU 400 mg/sq, d1-4 IFN-α 5MU SC d1-4 q3w	149	16.8	-	7.1	-
Yang *et al*[11]	Taiwan	2004	CDDP 80 mg/sq d1 Mitoxantrone 6mg/sq d1 5-FU 450 mg/sq d1-5 q4w	63	23.8	2.5	4.9	-
Ikeda *et al*[12,13]	Japan	2008 (2005)	CDDP 80 mg/sq d1 Mitoxantrone 6 mg/sq d1 5-FU 450 mg/sq d1-5 q4w	82	22.0	3.2	11.2	43.5
Parikh *et al*[14]	India	2005	CDDP 70 mg/sq d1 GEM 1250 mg/sq d1, 8 q3w	30	20.0	4.1	4.8	27.0
Yeo *et al*[15]	China	2005	CDDP 20 mg/sq, d1-4 DXR 40 mg/sq, d1 5-FU 400 mg/sq, d1-4 IFN-α 5MU. SC d1-4 q3w	94	20.9	-	8.7	39.0
Kim *et al*[16]	Korea	2006	CDDP 60 mg/sq d1 EPI 50 mg/sq d1 UFT 400-600 mg/d PO 3w leucovorin 75 mg/d PO 3w q4w	53	16.9	2.7	5.7	-
Park *et al*[17]	Korea	2006	CDDP 60 mg/sq, d1 DXR 60 mg/sq, d1 Capecitabine 2 g/sq per day 2w q3w	29	24.1	3.7	7.7	-

PO: Per os; SC: Subcutaneous injection; im: Intramuscular injection; CDDP: Cisplatin; DXR: Doxorubicin; EPI: Epirubicin; 5-FU: 5-fluorouracil; UFT: Tegaful-uracil; GEM: Gemcitabine; IFN: Interferon; RR: Response rate; PFS: Progression free survival; MST: Median survival time; 1yrs: 1 year survival rate.

HEPATIC ARTERIAL INFUSION CHEMOTHERAPY WITH CISPLATIN

Although systemic chemotherapy is technically simpler than hepatic arterial infusion (HAI) chemotherapy, it has the disadvantages that the proportion of the drug reaching the intrahepatic lesion is low, and that the incidence of systemic adverse reactions is higher. Patients with HCC show lower tolerance to anticancer drug therapy because of impaired liver function. Pancytopenia may already be present due to concomitant cirrhosis, and marrow suppression is likely to occur with chemotherapy. Because of these features, hepatic arterial infusion chemotherapy is not commonly used in Europe and North America for HCC. However, in cases where the vital prognosis is determined by the intrahepatic lesion, control of the intrahepatic lesion may improve the prognosis, even if there are extrahepatic metastases. Therefore, hepatic arterial infusion chemotherapy is used for these cases in Japan. Hepatic arterial infusion chemotherapy requires certain skilled procedures, including catheterization, and is associated with a risk of vascular disorders related to catheter placement and reservoir management. On the other hand, it is a useful therapeutic modality, because it allows higher concentrations of the anticancer drug to be achieved in the target lesion. In fact, the drug is administered directly into the liver, allowing enhanced antitumor effect while being associated with a lower incidence of systemic adverse reactions. The proportion of CDDP into the hepatic tumor by first-pass kinetics was reported to be less than 5% after intravenous administration, but that of HAI administration was reported to be 48.4% (34%-55%)[18]. The response rate of CDDP monotherapy administered by HAI ranges from 14% to 42%[18-21] (Table 2). The dose-limiting toxicities (DLT) of CDDP are hematologic toxicity and nephrotoxicity, while hepatotoxicity is less significant. Therefore, it seems that a high therapeutic efficacy can be expected from selective HAI using a high concentration of CDDP.

In Japan, CDDP preparations for arterial infusion were approved in 2004. At variance with the conventional CDDP injection solutions (CDDP concentration, 0.5 mg/mL), the microfine powder CDDP preparation, whose average particle size lies between about 20 and 30 μm (IA-call®; NIPPON KAYAKU CO., LTD), is able to dispense an approximately 3-fold more concentrated CDDP solution than used in arterial infusion.

A multi-center phase-Ⅱ study of patients with unresectable advanced HCC was carried out in Japan[19]. In this study, where a highly concentrated CDDP solution (1.43 mg/mL) in warmed saline was used, the drug was administered by HAI. The dose was 65 mg/m^2 every 4-6 wk at each course, and 80 patients were given two courses.

Among the treated patients, 87.5% had underlying cirrhosis, and 48 patients had recurrent disease (46 of

Table 2 Hepatic arterial infusion chemotherapy

Author	Country and region	Publication year	Treatment schedule	*n*	RR (%)	PFS (M)	MST (M)	1yrs (%)	2yrs (%)	3yrs (%)	5yrs (%)
Court *et al*[18]	USA	2002	CDDP 50 mg/sq (+Radiation) q4w	67	37.0	-	10.7	-	-	-	-
Yoshikawa *et al*[19]	Japan	2008	CDDP 65 mg/sq q6-8w	80	33.8	-	-	67.5	50.8	-	-
Carr[20]	USA	2000	CDDP 125-200 mg/sq q4-8w	26	42.3	-	19.5	-	-	-	-
Chung *et al*[21]	Korea	2000	CDDP 2 mg/kg q8w	23	14.0	-	2.5	9	-	-	-
			CDDP 2 mg/kg q8w IFN-α 3MU. SC. 3/w	19	33.0	-	4.4	27	-	-	-
Patt *et al*[22]	USA	1994	CDDP 100 mg/sq, d1 DXR 30-35 mg/sq, d1 FUDR 60 mg/sq, d1-4 Leucovorin 15 mg/sq, d1-4	29	41.0	-	15.0	-	-	-	-
Toyoda *et al*[23]	Japan	1995	CDDP 5-10 mg/24h, d1-7 5-FU 500 mg/24h, d1-7	21	14.0	-	-	61.1	-	-	-
Okuda *et al*[24]	Japan	1999	CDDP 10 mg/1h, d1-5 5-FU 250 mg/5h, d1-5 q3-6w	31	70.9	-	-	-	-	45.7	45.7
Takayasu *et al*[25]	Japan	2000	EPI 30 mg/sq, d1, 6 CDDP 50 mg/sq, d2,7 ETP 60 mg/sq, d3, 4, 5	30	42.9	-	-	-	-	-	-
Tanaka *et al*[26]	Japan	2000	CDDP 10 mg/1h, d1-5 5-FU 250 mg/5h, d1-5 q4w	77	45.5	-	-	55.8	27.6	18.3	-
Ando *et al*[27]	Japan	2002	CDDP 7 mg/sq 1h, d1-5 5-FU 170 mg/sq 5h, d1-5 x4w	48	47.9	-	10.2	-	-	-	-
Kaneko *et al*[28]	Japan	2002	CDDP 75 mg/sq, d1, 15 5-FU 750 mg/sq, d1, 8, 15, 22 MTX 30 mg/sq, d1, 8, 15, 22 leucovorin 30 mg/sq, d1, 8, 15, 22 IFN-α-2b 3MU. SC, 3/w q4w	34	45.0	-	-	24	-	-	-
Sumie *et al*[29]	Japan	2003	CDDP 10 mg/1h, d1-5 5-FU 250 mg/5h, d1-5 x4w	16	56.3	-	32.4	-	-	-	-
Tanioka *et al*[30]	Japan	2003	CDDP 3 mg/sq 0.5 h, d1-7 5-FU 170 mg/sq continuous d1-7 x4w q5w	38	47.4	-	6.1	-	-	-	-
Lin *et al*[31]	Taiwan	2004	CDDP 10 mg/sq d1-5 MMC 2 mg/sq d1-5 leucovorin 15 mg/sq d1-5 5-FU 100 mg/sq continuous d1-5 x2w q3-4w	53	28.3	-	13.2	-	-	-	-
Yamasaki *et al*[32]	Japan	2005	CDDP 10 mg/body d1-5 5-FU 250 mg/body d1-5 leucovorin 12 mg(or isovorin 12.5 or 6.25 mg) d1-5	29	48.3	-	11.8	-	-	-	-
Nagai *et al*[33]	Japan	2007	CDDP 10 mg/h d1-5 leucovorin 12 mg/h d1-5 5-FU 250 mg/sq (4 h *vs* 22 h) x4w	37 (15 *vs* 22)	6.7 *vs* 31.8	-	7.4 *vs* 16.3	-	-	-	-
Park *et al*[34]	Korea	2007	5-FU 500 mg/sq d1-3 q4w CDDP 60 mg/sq d2	41	22.0	7	12.0	-	-	-	-

SC: Subcutaneous injection; CDDP: Cisplatin; DXR: Doxorubicin; EPI: Epirubicin; 5-FU: 5-fluorouracil; ETP: Etoposide; MTX: Methotrexate; FUDR: floxuridine; IFN: Interferon; RR: Response rate; PFS: Progression free survival; MST: Median survival time; 1yrs: 1 year survival rate.

these patients had a history of previous chemotherapy). The response rate was 33.8% (27/80) (95% CI: 23.6%-45.2%), and PR was achieved in these 27 patients with a median of 28.0 d (25-71 d). Multivariate analysis of the response rates revealed that the presence/absence of vascular invasion was a significant factor influencing the therapeutic effect, whereas no such relation was found for a history of previous chemotherapy. In regard to other anticancer drugs, response rates of 15.1%, 26.1% and 20.0% have been reported for arterial infusion monotherapy using epirubicin[35], mitoxantrone[36] and mitomycin C[37], respectively. Thus, CDDP showed higher antitumor efficacy than other anticancer drugs when administered by HAI. Multivariate analysis also showed that the prognosis was significantly poor in patients with vascular invasion, but the survival tended to be prolonged in patients who responded to the therapy. In regard to the incidence of grade 3 or more severe adverse events, anorexia occurred in 22.5% of the patients, vomiting in 6.3%, and abdominal pain in 1.3%, and all of these tended to improve within 1 wk. Grade 3 or more severe laboratory abnormalities included thrombocytopenia (25.0%), neutropenia (13.0%), leukopenia (1.3%), hypochromia (1.3%), and AST elevation (32.5%).

Abnormal values were usually found within 1 wk after the drug administration, and were almost completely back to pretreatment levels 2 wk later.

In this study, the incidence of gastrointestinal symptoms, such as anorexia and vomiting, and hematologic toxicities, such as leucopenia, thrombocytopenia and hypochromia, following arterial infusion of CDDP were similar to those observed after intravenous administration. Nephropathy was milder than after intravenous infusion of CDDP. Although liver damage occurred at a rather high frequency, it never resulted in death. The higher concentrations of the drug in the non-cancerous lesions caused by HAI were at the origin of the liver toxicity.

Concerning the multidrug regimens containing CDDP for HAI therapy, low-dose CDDP combined with 5-FU (low-dose FP) has been intensively investigated in recent years[23,24,26,27,29,30,32,33] (Table 2). A response rate of about 40% and a median survival time of 6-12 mo have been reported for this treatment. However, the optimal administration time of 5-FU each day, the number of treatment cycles, and the modalities of the maintenance therapy, i.e. three factors constituting standard treatment, have not been established yet. In addition, low-dose FP is characterized by a problem represented by the prolonged hospitalization due to the long duration of treatment. Park *et al*[34] administered FP therapy using a three-day treatment schedule, and reported favorable results with a median survival time of 12 mo. This schedule allows the treatment administration with a short-term hospitalization, and is therefore considered as cost effective.

Combined regimens containing three or more drugs, including the anticancer drug anthracycline, have also been studied. The response rates for these regimens have been reported to be in the range of 28%-45%[22,25,28,31] (Table 2).

EXPECTATIONS FOR CDDP USE *VIA* TRANSCATHETER HEPATIC ARTERIAL CHEMOEMBOLIZATION

Transcatheter hepatic arterial chemoembolization (TACE) is a therapeutic modality that comprises a combination of hepatic arterial infusion and embolization. Some recent reports concluded that TACE impacted on the survival rate of HCC patients[38,39]. Anthracyclines are commonly used for TACE, and these agents are usually mixed with lipiodol (lipiodolization).

The antitumor effect of lipiodolization has not been validated because necrotic areas in the diagnostic images have been dealt with according to different standards among the studies. However, combined regimens containing CDDP and lipiodol have been reported to yield response rates of 15%-57%, while corresponding rates of 45%-73% have been reported for the treatment combined with embolization using gelatin sponge particles. Thus, the response rates of TACE tend to be higher than other chemotherapies[5,6,20,40-50] (Table 3). Two relevant randomized controlled studies have been reported. A study, conducted by a French group and published in 1995[51], reported that the 1-year and 2-year survival rates following this therapy were better than those following conservative treatment, while no significant difference in the overall survival was observed. However, Lo *et al*[39] reported a significantly better overall survival despite using a relatively low dose of CDDP (median 10 mg/20 mL) (Table 4). This difference may be explained by the improved catheter management and other technical advances related to the vascular route of dosing.

In Japan, arterial infusion of micropulverized CDDP directly suspended in lipiodol has been investigated since the 1980s. Fundamental studies of CDDP/Lipiodol suspensions (lipiodol platinum suspension, LPS) have confirmed the extended-release nature of CDDP[44,52-56]. It is also considered that the lipiodol suspension prevents inactivation by protein binding of the drug, allowing a higher concentration of the drug to be maintained inside the tumor. LPS can be prepared conveniently if micropulverized preparations are used. LPS is prepared by directly mixing micropulverized CDDP with lipiodol (10-20 mg/mL), followed by adequate stirring until the powder is evenly dispersed. In regard to the precautions that must be followed for administration, LPS should be infused slowly into the hepatic artery *via* a microcatheter, without mixing with physiological saline. Since a fine powder is infused directly, occlusion is likely to occur in the infused blood vessels, and caution related to the infusion volume is necessary whenever TACE is employed. Similarly to the usual intravenous administration, hydration is necessary as a prophylaxis against nephropathy. Adverse reactions may be tolerable when pretreatment fluid infusion is employed. Therefore, TACE with LPS is considered to improve therapeutic results in advanced HCC patients. As for the usefulness of TACE using LPS, randomized controlled studies are warranted to compare with anthracyclines.

FUTURE PERSPECTIVES OF HEPATIC ARTERIAL INFUSION CHEMOTHERAPY

The advent of CDDP has resulted in a certain level of therapeutic efficacy of HAI. However, the response rate is still inadequate. Further studies of the optimal dosing schedule and optimal combinations, including new drugs, are awaited.

The treatment modality for HCC is determined by the stage of cancer and the hepatic functional reserve. It is also important not to cause reduction of the hepatic reserve during treatment, because this is a critical prognostic factor. Therefore, combined use of supportive treatment with liver-protective drugs, ramified amino acids, or other agents that improve or maintain hepatic function should also be considered.

In Asian countries, it has been speculated that HCC

Table 3 Transcatheter arterial chemoembolization (inc. transcatheter arterial infusion with lipiodol)

Author	Country	Publication year	Treatment schedule	Root	*n*	RR (%)	MST (M)	1yrs (%)	2yrs (%)	3yrs (%)	5yrs (%)
Ikeda *et al*[40]	Japan	1992	DXR/Lip 10.5 mg[1] MMC/Lip 7.8 mg[1] Lip 3.7 mL[1] CDDP 135.7 mg[1]	Lip-TAI	76	23.7	-	68.0	41.0	24.0	-
Yodono *et al*[41]	Japan	1992	CDDP 20 mg/sq, d1-5 ETP 30-40 mg/sq, d1-5 5-FU 250 mg/body, d1-26 + CDDP/Lip + GS	TAI +Lip-TACE	14	46.2	27.6	50.0	43.0	34.0	-
			CDDP 50 mg/sq, d2,8 ETP 50-60 mg/sq, d4-6 DXR 20 mg/sq, d1,7 + CDDP/Lip + GS	TAI +Lip-TACE	31	48.4	21.7	77.0	42.0	-	-
Hatanaka *et al*[42]	Japan	1995	CDDP 50-100 mg DXR 20-40 mg FUDR 3-5 g + GS	TACE	60	-	-	80.4	65.2	48.6	-
			CDDP 50-100 mg DXR 20-40 mg Lip 4.8 mL[1] FUDR 3-5 g + GS	Lip-TACE	78	-	-	86.3	55.3	34.8	-
			CDDP 50-100 mg DXR 20-40 mg Lip 4.9 mL[1] FUDR 3-5 g	Lip-TAI	159	-	-	65.9	50.3	36.2	-
Raoul *et al*[43]	France	1997	CDDP 70 mg (saline 140 mL)/Lip 10 mL + GS	Lip-TACE	64	57.0	-	42.2	22.1	2.8	-
Carr[20]	USA	2002	CDDP 125-200 mg/sq q4-8w + GS	TACE	31	58.1	30.7	-	-	-	-
Shibata *et al*[44]	Japan	1989	CDDP 20-150 mg (CDDP/Lip: 20 mg/mL)	Lip-TAI	71	46.5	-	55.0	-	-	-
Kawakami *et al*[45]	Japan	1993	CDDP 50 mg (CDDP/Lip: 10 mg/mL)	Lip-TAI	12	12.5	7.0	-	-	-	-
			CDDP 50 mg (CDDP/Lip: 10 mg/mL) + GS	Lip-TACE	30	45.5	25	81.3	56.8	-	-
Ono *et al*[46]	Japan	2000	CDDP 50 mg[1] (CDDP/Lip: 10 mg/mL) + GS	Lip-TACE	38	45.0	-	-	49.0	-	19.0
			DXR 43 mg[1] (20-50 mg)/Lip + GS	Lip-TACE	46	38.0	-	-	31.0	-	6.0
Kamada *et al*[47]	Japan	2001	CDDP 41 mg[1] (15-70 mg)/Lip + GS (CDDP/Lip: 10 mg/mL)	Lip-TACE or Lip-TAI	108	15.0	24.0	81.0	-	41.0	19.0
			DXR 57mg[1] (20-100 mg)/Lip + GS	Lip-TACE or Lip-TAI	26	4.0	17.0	67.0	-	18.0	0.0
Maeda *et al*[48]	Japan	2003	CDDP 70.5 mg[1]/Lip (CDDP/Lip: 20 mg/mL)	Lip-TAI	143	57.3	-	89.2	65.3	48.8	29.6
			CDDP 78.4 mg[1]/Lip + GS (CDDP/Lip: 20 mg/mL)	Lip-TACE	96	62.5	-	85.2	67.0	48.7	24.2
Ikeda *et al*[5,6]	Japan	2009 -2004	CDDP 50 mg[1] (20-150 mg)/Lip (CDDP/Lip: 20 mg/mL)	Lip-TAI	94	51.1	30.0	81.6	65.2	39.8	18.3
			CDDP 70 mg[1] (30-150 mg)/Lip + GS (CDDP/Lip: 20mg/mL)	Lip-TACE	74	73.0	37.2	87.8	-	52.2	25.0
Uyama *et al*[49]	Japan	2008	CDDP80 mg[1] /Lip (40-100mg) + GS (CDDP/Lip: 20 mg/mL)	Lip-TACE	24	45.8	-	-	-	-	-
Yamashita *et al*[50]	Japan	2009	CDDP 35 mg/sq (CDDP/Lip: 10-20 mg/mL)	Lip-TAI	35	57.1	-	-	-	-	-

CDDP: Cisplatin, DXR: Doxorubicin; EPI: Epirubicin; ETP: Etoposide; 5-FU: 5-fluorouracil; FUDR: Floxuridine; MMC: Mitomycin C; GS: Gelatin sponge; Lip: Lipiodol; TAI: Trasctheter arterial infusion; TACE: Trasctheter arterial chemoembolization; RR: Response rate; MST: Median survival time; 1yrs: 1 year survival rate. [1]Mean.

Table 4 Randomized control trial (TACE)

Author	Country and region	Publication year	Treatment schedule	Root	*n*	RR (%)	1yrs (%)	2yrs (%)	3yrs (%)
Group d'Etude et de Traitment du Carcinome Hepatocellulaire[51]	France	1995	CDDP/Lip (70 mg/10 mL) + GS	Lip-TACE	50	16.3	62.0	37.8	-
			Conservative management	-	46	5.0	43.5	26.0	-
Lo *et al*[39]	Hong Kong	2002	CDDP/saline + Lip (1:1), (median: 10 mg/20 mL/body max: 30 mg/60 mL/body) + GS	Lip-TACE	40	39.0	57.0	31.0	26.0
			conservative management	-	39	6.0	32.0	11.0	3.0

CDDP: Cisplatin; GS: Gelatin sponge; Lip: Lipiodol; TACE: Trasctheter arterial chemoembolization; RR: Response rate; MST: Median survival time; 1yrs: 1 year survival rate.

mostly arises from mutations induced by hepatitis B virus and cirrhosis due to persistent infection with hepatitis C virus. Therefore, when these viruses are present, most patients will have recurrent disease within several

years, even if the disease is detected at an early stage and treated by resection or radical local treatment (e.g. RFA). In cases of early recurrence, i.e. within 2 years from radical treatment, it is highly likely that minute cancer cells were already present at the time of the previous treatment, leading to intrahepatic metastases or multinodular disease[57]. Therefore, to prevent early recurrence after hepatectomy or radical local treatment, we can anticipate a role of hepatic arterial infusion chemotherapy as adjuvant therapy. In addition, control of the hepatitis viral infection and prevention of carcinogenesis by interferon therapy are considered important factors to prevent recurrence occurring more than two years after the radical treatment[58].

Currently, the efficacy of anti-cancer drugs, as evaluated by the sensitivity of individual cancers, is being evaluated. Subsequently, tailor-made treatments for HCC will rapidly become available.

REFERENCES

1 **Ishikawa T**, Ichida T, Yamagiwa S, Sugahara S, Uehara K, Okoshi S, Asakura H. High viral loads, serum alanine aminotransferase and gender are predictive factors for the development of hepatocellular carcinoma from viral compensated liver cirrhosis. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2001; **16**: 1274-1281

2 **Makuuchi M**, Kokudo N. Clinical practice guidelines for hepatocellular carcinoma: the first evidence based guidelines from Japan. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 828-829

3 **Go RS**, Adjei AA. Review of the comparative pharmacology and clinical activity of cisplatin and carboplatin. *J Clin Oncol* 1999; **17**: 409-422

4 **Okada S**, Okazaki N, Nose H, Shimada Y, Yoshimori M, Aoki K. A phase 2 study of cisplatin in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. *Oncology* 1993; **50**: 22-26

5 **Ikeda M**, Maeda S, Shibata J, Muta R, Ashihara H, Tanaka M, Fujiyama S, Tomita K. Transcatheter arterial chemotherapy with and without embolization in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. *Oncology* 2004; **66**: 24-31

6 **Ikeda M**, Maeda S, Ashihara H, Nagahama H, Tanaka M, Sasaki Y. Transcatheter arterial infusion chemotherapy with cisplatin-lipiodol suspension in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Gastroenterol* 2009; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 19655081]

7 **Falkson G**, Ryan LM, Johnson LA, Simson IW, Coetzer BJ, Carbone PP, Creech RH, Schutt AJ. A random phase II study of mitoxantrone and cisplatin in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. An ECOG study. *Cancer* 1987; **60**: 2141-2145

8 **Nagahama H**, Okada S, Okusaka T, Ishii H, Ikeda M, Nakasuka H, Yoshimori M. Predictive factors for tumor response to systemic chemotherapy in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. *Jpn J Clin Oncol* 1997; **27**: 321-324

9 **Ji SK**, Park NH, Choi HM, Kim YW, Lee SH, Lee KH, Ahn SY, Lee SU, Han BH, Park BC. Combined cis-platinum and alpha interferon therapy of advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *Korean J Intern Med* 1996; **11**: 58-68

10 **Leung TW**, Tang AM, Zee B, Yu SC, Lai PB, Lau WY, Johnson PJ. Factors predicting response and survival in 149 patients with unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma treated by combination cisplatin, interferon-alpha, doxorubicin and 5-fluorouracil chemotherapy. *Cancer* 2002; **94**: 421-427

11 **Yang TS**, Chang HK, Chen JS, Lin YC, Liau CT, Chang WC. Chemotherapy using 5-fluorouracil, mitoxantrone, and cisplatin for patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: an analysis of 63 cases. *J Gastroenterol* 2004; **39**: 362-369

12 **Ikeda M**, Okusaka T, Ueno H, Takezako Y, Morizane C. A phase II trial of continuous infusion of 5-fluorouracil, mitoxantrone, and cisplatin for metastatic hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer* 2005; **103**: 756-762

13 **Ikeda M**, Okusaka T, Ueno H, Morizane C, Kojima Y, Iwasa S, Hagihara A. Predictive factors of outcome and tumor response to systemic chemotherapy in patients with metastatic hepatocellular carcinoma. *Jpn J Clin Oncol* 2008; **38**: 675-682

14 **Parikh PM**, Fuloria J, Babu G, Doval DC, Awasthy BS, Pai VR, Prabhakaran PS, Benson AB. A phase II study of gemcitabine and cisplatin in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *Trop Gastroenterol* 2005; **26**: 115-118

15 **Yeo W**, Mok TS, Zee B, Leung TW, Lai PB, Lau WY, Koh J, Mo FK, Yu SC, Chan AT, Hui P, Ma B, Lam KC, Ho WM, Wong HT, Tang A, Johnson PJ. A randomized phase III study of doxorubicin versus cisplatin/interferon alpha-2b/doxorubicin/fluorouracil (PIAF) combination chemotherapy for unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2005; **97**: 1532-1538

16 **Kim SJ**, Seo HY, Choi JG, Sul HR, Sung HJ, Park KH, Choi IK, Oh SC, Yoon SY, Seo JH, Choi CW, Kim BS, Shin SW, Kim YH, Kim JS. Phase II study with a combination of epirubicin, cisplatin, UFT, and leucovorin in advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer Chemother Pharmacol* 2006; **57**: 436-442

17 **Park SH**, Lee Y, Han SH, Kwon SY, Kwon OS, Kim SS, Kim JH, Park YH, Lee JN, Bang SM, Cho EK, Shin DB, Lee JH. Systemic chemotherapy with doxorubicin, cisplatin and capecitabine for metastatic hepatocellular carcinoma. *BMC Cancer* 2006; **6**: 3

18 **Court WS**, Order SE, Siegel JA, Johnson E, DeNittis AS, Principato R, Martz K, Zeiger LS. Remission and survival following monthly intraarterial cisplatinum in nonresectable hepatoma. *Cancer Invest* 2002; **20**: 613-625

19 **Yoshikawa M**, Ono N, Yodono H, Ichida T, Nakamura H. Phase II study of hepatic arterial infusion of a fine-powder formulation of cisplatin for advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatol Res* 2008; **38**: 474-483

20 **Carr BI**. Hepatic artery chemoembolization for advanced stage HCC: experience of 650 patients. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2002; **49**: 79-86

21 **Chung YH**, Song IH, Song BC, Lee GC, Koh MS, Yoon HK, Lee YS, Sung KB, Suh DJ. Combined therapy consisting of intraarterial cisplatin infusion and systemic interferon-alpha for hepatocellular carcinoma patients with major portal vein thrombosis or distant metastasis. *Cancer* 2000; **88**: 1986-1991

22 **Patt YZ**, Charnsangavej C, Yoffe B, Smith R, Lawrence D, Chuang V, Carrasco H, Roh M, Chase J, Fischer H. Hepatic arterial infusion of floxuridine, leucovorin, doxorubicin, and cisplatin for hepatocellular carcinoma: effects of hepatitis B and C viral infection on drug toxicity and patient survival. *J Clin Oncol* 1994; **12**: 1204-1211

23 **Toyoda H**, Nakano S, Kumada T, Takeda I, Sugiyama K, Osada T, Kiriyama S, Suga T, Takahashi M. The efficacy of continuous local arterial infusion of 5-fluorouracil and cisplatin through an implanted reservoir for severe advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *Oncology* 1995; **52**: 295-299

24 **Okuda K**, Tanaka M, Shibata J, Ando E, Ogata T, Kinoshita H, Eriguchi N, Aoyagi S, Tanikawa K. Hepatic arterial infusion chemotherapy with continuous low dose administration of cisplatin and 5-fluorouracil for multiple recurrence of hepatocellular carcinoma after surgical treatment. *Oncol Rep* 1999; **6**: 587-591

25 **Takayasu Y**, Yamamoto S, Ikeda J. [Hepatic arterial infusion chemotherapy using totally implantable port system] *Gan To Kagaku Ryoho* 2000; **27**: 1516-1520

26 **Tanaka M**, Ando E, Yutani S, Fukumori K, Kuromatsu R,

Shimauchi Y, Nagamatsu H, Matsugaki S, Itano S, Ono N, Sakisaka S, Sata M. Phase II trial of hepatic arterial infusion chemotherapy using cisplatin and 5-fluorouracil in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. Progress in hepatocellular carcinoma treatment, 2000: 49-55

27 **Ando E**, Tanaka M, Yamashita F, Kuromatsu R, Yutani S, Fukumori K, Sumie S, Yano Y, Okuda K, Sata M. Hepatic arterial infusion chemotherapy for advanced hepatocellular carcinoma with portal vein tumor thrombosis: analysis of 48 cases. *Cancer* 2002; **95**: 588-595

28 **Kaneko S**, Urabe T, Kobayashi K. Combination chemotherapy for advanced hepatocellular carcinoma complicated by major portal vein thrombosis. *Oncology* 2002; **62** Suppl 1: 69-73

29 **Sumie S**, Yamashita F, Ando E, Tanaka M, Yano Y, Fukumori K, Sata M. Interventional radiology for advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: comparison of hepatic artery infusion chemotherapy and transcatheter arterial lipiodol chemoembolization. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2003; **181**: 1327-1334

30 **Tanioka H**, Tsuji A, Morita S, Horimi T, Takamatsu M, Shirasaka T, Mizushima T, Ochi K, Kiura K, Tanimoto M. Combination chemotherapy with continuous 5-fluorouracil and low-dose cisplatin infusion for advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *Anticancer Res* 2003; **23**: 1891-1897

31 **Lin CP**, Yu HC, Cheng JS, Lai KH, Lo GH, Hsu PI, Lin CK, Chen HH, Lo CC, Liang HL, Tseng HH. Clinical effects of intra-arterial infusion chemotherapy with cisplatin, mitomycin C, leucovorin and 5-flourouracil for unresectable advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Chin Med Assoc* 2004; **67**: 602-610

32 **Yamasaki T**, Kimura T, Kurokawa F, Aoyama K, Ishikawa T, Tajima K, Yokoyama Y, Takami T, Omori K, Kawaguchi K, Tsuchiya M, Terai S, Sakaida I, Okita K. Prognostic factors in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma receiving hepatic arterial infusion chemotherapy. *J Gastroenterol* 2005; **40**: 70-78

33 **Nagai H**, Kanayama M, Higami K, Momiyama K, Ikoma A, Okano N, Matsumaru K, Watanabe M, Ishii K, Sumino Y, Miki K. Twenty-four hour intra-arterial infusion of 5-fluorouracil, cisplatin, and leucovorin is more effective than 6-hour infusion for advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 280-284

34 **Park JY**, Ahn SH, Yoon YJ, Kim JK, Lee HW, Lee do Y, Chon CY, Moon YM, Han KH. Repetitive short-course hepatic arterial infusion chemotherapy with high-dose 5-fluorouracil and cisplatin in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer* 2007; **110**: 129-137

35 **Nagasue N**, Yukaya H, Okamura J, Kuroda C, Kubo Y, Hirai K, Tanikawa K, Okita K, Ando K, Tamura K. [Intra-arterial administration of epirubicin in the treatment of non-resectable hepatocellular carcinoma. Epirubicin Study Group for Hepatocellular Carcinoma] *Gan To Kagaku Ryoho* 1986; **13**: 2786-2792

36 **Shepherd FA**, Evans WK, Blackstein ME, Fine S, Heathcote J, Langer B, Taylor B, Habal F, Kutas G, Pritchard KI. Hepatic arterial infusion of mitoxantrone in the treatment of primary hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Clin Oncol* 1987; **5**: 635-640

37 **Makela J**, Tikkakoski T, Leinonen A, Siniluoto T, Karttunen A, Kairaluoma MI. Superselective intra-arterial chemotherapy with mitomycin C in hepatic neoplasms. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 1993; **19**: 348-354

38 **Llovet JM**, Real MI, Montana X, Planas R, Coll S, Aponte J, Ayuso C, Sala M, Muchart J, Sola R, Rodes J, Bruix J. Arterial embolisation or chemoembolisation versus symptomatic treatment in patients with unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2002; **359**: 1734-1739

39 **Lo CM**, Ngan H, Tso WK, Liu CL, Lam CM, Poon RT, Fan ST, Wong J. Randomized controlled trial of transarterial lipiodol chemoembolization for unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2002; **35**: 1164-1171

40 **Ikeda K**, Inoue H, Yano T, Kobayashi H, Nakajo M. Comparison of the anticancer effect of ADMOS alone and ADMOS with CDDP in the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma by intra-arterial injection. *Cancer Chemother Pharmacol* 1992; **31** Suppl: S65-S68

41 **Yodono H**, Sasaki T, Tarusawa K, Midorikawa H, Saito Y, Takekawa SD. Arterial infusion chemotherapy for advanced hepatocellular carcinoma using EPF and EAP therapies. *Cancer Chemother Pharmacol* 1992; **31** Suppl: S89-S92

42 **Hatanaka Y**, Yamashita Y, Takahashi M, Koga Y, Saito R, Nakashima K, Urata J, Miyao M. Unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma: analysis of prognostic factors in transcatheter management. *Radiology* 1995; **195**: 747-752

43 **Raoul JL**, Guyader D, Bretagne JF, Heautot JF, Duvauferrier R, Bourguet P, Bekhechi D, Deugnier YM, Gosselin M. Prospective randomized trial of chemoembolization versus intra-arterial injection of 131I-labeled-iodized oil in the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 1997; **26**: 1156-1161

44 **Shibata J**, Fujiyama S, Sato T, Kishimoto S, Fukushima S, Nakano M. Hepatic arterial injection chemotherapy with cisplatin suspended in an oily lymphographic agent for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer* 1989; **64**: 1586-1594

45 **Kawakami A**, Yoshioka H, Ohkusa Okafuji T, Ono Y, Shindon K, Arita S, Ishida O, Yamazoe Y, Matsuoka H, Ishida S. Effects of intrahepatic arterial injection of cisplatin suspended lipiodol on hepatocellular carcinoma *J Jpn Soc Cancer Ther* 1993; **28**: 794-803

46 **Ono Y**, Yoshimasu T, Ashikaga R, Inoue M, Shindou H, Fuji K, Araki Y, Nishimura Y. Long-term results of lipiodol-transcatheter arterial embolization with cisplatin or doxorubicin for unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma. *Am J Clin Oncol* 2000; **23**: 564-568

47 **Kamada K**, Nakanishi T, Kitamoto M, Aikata H, Kawakami Y, Ito K, Asahara T, Kajiyama G. Long-term prognosis of patients undergoing transcatheter arterial chemoembolization for unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma: comparison of cisplatin lipiodol suspension and doxorubicin hydrochloride emulsion. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 2001; **12**: 847-854

48 **Maeda S**, Shibata J, Fujiyama S, Tanaka M, Noumaru S, Sato K, Tomita K. Long-term follow-up of hepatic arterial chemoembolization with cisplatin suspended in iodized oil for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2003; **50**: 809-813

49 **Uyama N**, Hatano E, Maetani Y, Isoda H, Shibata T, Taura K, Oe S, Naito M, Yasuchika K, Fujii H, Ikai I, Uemoto S. [Efficacy and toxicity of transcatheter arterial chemoembolization with Cisplatin suspended in lipiodol for unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma] *Gan To Kagaku Ryoho* 2008; **35**: 775-780

50 **Yamashita YI**, Taketomi A, Itoh S, Harimoto N, Morita K, Fukuhara T, Ueda S, Sanefuji K, Sugimachi K, Tajima T, Maehara Y. Phase I/II study of the lipiodolization using DDP-H (CDDP powder; IA-call((R))) in patients with unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer Chemother Pharmacol* 2009; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 19495755]

51 **A comparison of lipiodol chemoembolization and conservative treatment for unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma.** Groupe d'Etude et de Traitement du Carcinome Hepatocellulaire. *N Engl J Med* 1995; **332**: 1256-1261

52 **Fukushima S**, Kishimoto S, Hayashi Y, Kaneko M, Nakano M, Shibata J, Fujiyama S, Sato T. [Intra-hepatic artery infusional chemotherapy with cisplatin suspension in lipiodol (LPS) of hepatocellular carcinoma (I)--Preparation of LPS and its anticancer effect on a rabbit liver cancer model after injection into the hepatic artery] *Nippon Gan Chiryo Gakkai Shi* 1988; **23**: 2743-2749

53 **Sonoda A**, Nitta N, Ohta S, Itoh R, Takahashi M, Murata K,

Morikawa S, Inubushi T, Miyagawa Y, Takamori M, Oonaka Y. [Plasma platinum concentration and anti-tumor effects after intra-arterial infusion of lipiodol-CDDP suspension evaluation with VX 2 rabbit liver cancer model and 7.0 Tesla MRI system] *Gan To Kagaku Ryoho* 2006; **33**: 951-957

54 **Morimoto K**, Sakaguchi H, Tanaka T, Yamamoto K, Anai H, Hayashi T, Satake M, Kichikawa K. Transarterial chemoembolization using cisplatin powder in a rabbit model of liver cancer. *Cardiovasc Intervent Radiol* 2008; **31**: 981-985

55 **Sahara S**, Tanihata H, Sato M, Kawai N, Takasaka I, Minamiguchi H, Nakai M, Sonomura T. Effects of hepatic artery chemoembolization using cisplatin-lipiodol suspension with gelatin sponge particles on swine liver. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 2009; **20**: 1359-1364

56 **Takaki Y**, Kaminou T, Shabana M, Ihaya T, Otsubo K, Ogawa T. Suitable blending method of lipiodol-cisplatin in transcatheter arterial embolization for hepatocellular carcinoma: evaluation of sustained release and accumulation nature. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2008; **55**: 202-206

57 **Sakon M**, Umeshita K, Nagano H, Eguchi H, Kishimoto S, Miyamoto A, Ohshima S, Dono K, Nakamori S, Gotoh M, Monden M. Clinical significance of hepatic resection in hepatocellular carcinoma: analysis by disease-free survival curves. *Arch Surg* 2000; **135**: 1456-1459

58 **Ishikawa T**. Secondary prevention of recurrence by interferon therapy after ablation therapy for hepatocellular carcinoma in chronic hepatitis C patients. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 6140-6144

S- Editor Zhang HN **L- Editor** Negro F **E- Editor** Ma WH

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.17

World J Hepatol 2009 October 31; 1(1): 17-27
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

GUIDELINES FOR BASIC SCIENCE

Activins and follistatins: Emerging roles in liver physiology and cancer

Emanuel Kreidl, Deniz Öztürk, Thomas Metzner, Walter Berger, Michael Grusch

Emanuel Kreidl, Deniz Öztürk, Thomas Metzner, Walter Berger, Michael Grusch, Institute of Cancer Research, Department of Medicine I, Medical University of Vienna, Borschkegasse 8a, Vienna A-1090, Austria
Author contributions: Kreidl E, Öztürk D, Metzner T and Grusch M performed the literature search; Kreidl E and Grusch M wrote the manuscript and prepared the figures; Öztürk D, Metzner T and Berger W read, discussed and improved the manuscript.
Supported by Herzfelder Foundation
Correspondence to: Michael Grusch, PhD, Institute of Cancer Research, Department of Medicine I, Medical University of Vienna, Borschkegasse 8a, Vienna A-1090, Austria. michael.grusch@meduniwien.ac.at
Telephone: +43-1-427765144 Fax: +43-1-42779651
Received: June 16, 2009 Revised: September 10, 2009
Accepted: September 17, 2009
Published online: October 31, 2009

Abstract

Activins are secreted proteins belonging to the TGF-β family of signaling molecules. Activin signals are crucial for differentiation and regulation of cell proliferation and apoptosis in multiple tissues. Signal transduction by activins relies mainly on the Smad pathway, although the importance of crosstalk with additional pathways is increasingly being recognized. Activin signals are kept in balance by antagonists at multiple levels of the signaling cascade. Among these, follistatin and FLRG, two members of the emerging family of follistatin-like proteins, can bind secreted activins with high affinity, thereby blocking their access to cell surface-anchored activin receptors. In the liver, activin A is a major negative regulator of hepatocyte proliferation and can induce apoptosis. The functions of other activins expressed by hepatocytes have yet to be more clearly defined. Deregulated expression of activins and follistatin has been implicated in hepatic diseases including inflammation, fibrosis, liver failure and primary cancer. In particular, increased follistatin levels have been found in the circulation and in the tumor tissue of patients suffering from hepatocellular carcinoma as well as in animal models of liver cancer. It has been argued that up-regulation of follistatin protects neoplastic hepatocytes from activin-mediated growth inhibition and apoptosis. The use of follistatin as biomarker for liver tumor development is impeded, however, due to the presence of elevated follistatin levels already during preceding stages of liver disease. The current article summarizes our evolving understanding of the multi-faceted activities of activins and follistatins in liver physiology and cancer.

Key words: Activin; Inhibin; Follistatin; Follistatin-like protein; Transforming growth factor β; Liver cancer

Peer reviewer: Inci Alican, MD, PhD, Professor of Physiology, Marmara University School of Medicine, Department of Physiology, 34668, Haydarpasa, Istanbul, Turkey

Kreidl E, Öztürk D, Metzner T, Berger W, Grusch M. Activins and follistatins: Emerging roles in liver physiology and cancer. *World J Hepatol* 2009; 1(1): 17-27 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v1/i1/17.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.17

INTRODUCTION

The activin family

Activins are cytokines belonging to the TGF-β family of growth and differentiation factors[1] and were named according to their first identification as activators of follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) release from pituitary cells[2,3]. Like TGF-β, activins are formed *via* the covalent dimerization of two subunits[4]. So far, five different subunits participating in the formation of activins have been identified. The subunits activin beta A, beta B, beta

C and beta E were found in humans as well as other mammalian species, while activin beta D has only been identified in Xenopus laevis[5]. The four mammalian beta subunits are each encoded by a single gene, called INHBA, INHBB, INHBC and INHBE respectively[6]. INHBC and INHBE are closely linked in several species and are thought to have arisen from tandem duplication of an ancestral gene[7].

The different activin subunits can form homo- as well as heterodimers. A homodimer of two beta A subunits is called activin A, while a heterodimer of a beta A and a beta B subunit is called activin AB. The nomenclature for dimers of the other subunits follows the same scheme. While activins AB and AC have been described under physiological conditions *in vivo*[8,9], we and others have demonstrated the formation of activins AE, BC and CE after ectopic expression of the respective cDNAs in various cell lines[10-12]. Activin subunits are synthesized as pro-proteins of 350 to 426 amino acids[6]. The proteins are glycosylated in the pro-domain region, but addition of the carbohydrate group seems to be dispensable for secretion. This is in contrast to the related inhibin alpha subunit, a member of the TGF-β family and dimerization partner of activin subunits (see below)[13]. Dimers are created by intermolecular disulphide bond formation between the sixth of nine conserved cysteines in the mature proteins. The other cysteines are involved in the formation of intramolecular disulphide bonds, creating the so-called cysteine knot, typical for members of the TGF-β family and required for their biological activity[14].

Following dimerization, the protein is cleaved by pro-protein convertases of the subtilisin/kexin family in the ER and Golgi, producing a mature peptide chain of 115 or 116 amino acids. While the biologically active protein is secreted as a dimer of the mature peptides only, it has been suggested that the pro-region is required for correct folding, dimer formation and secretion[15]. Unprocessed, dimeric activin A was found to be biologically inactive[16]. Monomers have been reported to retain some affinity for the receptors of dimeric activin A but do not cause activation[17]. In addition to dimerization with another beta subunit, activin beta A and activin beta B can form heterodimers with the inhibin alpha subunit, giving rise to inhibins A and B, both inhibiting FSH release[18]. It remains uncertain if inhibin C exists, as there was evidence for the formation of a dimer between activin beta C and inhibin alpha in some[19] but not all reports[10].

Activin signal transduction

Like other members of the TGF-β family, activins are believed to signal *via* single-pass transmembrane receptors with an intracellular Ser-Thr kinase domain. This has been proven for activins A, B and AB. Activin A first binds to dimers of the type Ⅱ receptors ActR-Ⅱ (aka ACVR2) or ActR-ⅡB (aka ACVR2B), leading to the (preferential) recruitment and phosphorylation of dimers of the type I receptor ALK4 (aka ActR-IB/ACVR1B)[20]. While binding to the same type Ⅱ receptors, activins B and AB preferentially recruit ALK7 (ACVR1C) as type I receptor[21]. Upon ligand binding, receptors are typically internalized[22]. It has been questioned however, if this internalization is generally necessary for signal transduction[23]. As a consequence of activation, receptor-regulated Smads (R-Smads) are recruited to the receptor complex and phosphorylated by the type I receptor. This process is supported by accessory proteins like SARA and the motor protein kinesin-1. Depending on the identity of the receptor, either Smad 2 and Smad 3 (ALK4, ALK5, ALK7) or Smad 1, Smad 5 and Smad 8 (ALK1, ALK2, ALK3, ALK6) are recruited and activated[4]. For TGF-β it has been shown that the ligand can recruit different type I receptors, activating different subsets of Smads depending on the cell type[24]. So far, activins have only been shown to signal through Smad 2 and Smad 3[25]. R-Smads then form complexes with the common mediator Smad 4 and translocate to the nucleus where, together with cofactors, they are directly involved in regulation of gene expression.

In addition, recent evidence suggests Smad independent signaling of activin A *via* MAP kinases ERK 1/2 and p38[26] as well as the phosphatidylinositol 3'-kinase (PI3K)/Akt pathway[27]. Rho and JNK were also found to be stimulated by activin A[28].

ACTIVINS IN HEPATIC FUNCTION AND DYSFUNCTION

Beta A and beta B

Activin A represents the most extensively investigated activin. Multiple biological functions of activin A in a variety of cells and tissues have been described, including involvement in mesoderm induction[29], stem cell biology[30], reproductive biology[31], erythroid differentiation[32], systemic inflammation[33], cell death induction[34], wound healing[35], and fibrosis[36]. Knock-out mice for activin beta A show severe defects in craniofacial development and die shortly after birth[37]. Activin A potently inhibits mitogen-induced DNA synthesis in the liver and induces hepatocyte apoptosis *in vivo* and *in vitro*[38-40]. Activin beta A antisense oligonucleotides stimulated cell proliferation in the human hepatoma cell line HLF suggesting a growth inhibitory function of endogenous activin A[41]. In regenerating liver, activin beta A gene expression was reduced at time points when hepatocyte replication took place and was increased at time points when liver regeneration terminated[42]. Other studies, however, have described increased expression of beta A at earlier time points after partial hepatectomy[43,44].

Beside its effects on DNA synthesis and cell growth, activin A also regulates restoration of liver architecture after partial hepatectomy by stimulating collagen production in hepatic stellate cells (HSC) and tubulogenesis of sinusoidal endothelial cells[45,46]. Stimulation of HSC may also

contribute to liver fibrosis and several investigations have found elevated levels of activin beta A in fibrotic and cirrhotic rat livers[47-50]. In hepatocytes, activin A was also demonstrated to stimulate the expression of connective tissue growth factor (CCTF/CCN2), an important regulator of liver fibrosis[51]. Elevated levels of circulating activin A were found in patients with acute liver failure, chronic viral hepatitis, alcohol induced liver cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC)[52-57]. Elevated serum activin A was also reported in a study with patients suffering from non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD), with particularly high levels in the subgroup with non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH)[58]. These patients also had an increased activin beta A/follistatin mRNA ratio in liver tissue. In the same study activin A was shown in Huh7 hepatoma cells to promote collagen Ⅲ and TGF-β 1 expression, matrix metalloproteinase (MMP) activity, induce mitochondrial beta-oxidation and down-regulate fatty acid synthase (FAS) activity. Together these findings suggest an involvement of activin A not only in fibrosis but also in lipid accumulation. A study from our group in contrast, has found reduced expression of activin beta A transcripts in tumor tissue from chemically-induced rat liver tumors[59]. In addition to a pro-apoptotic and a pro-fibrotic effect, activin A has also been linked to hepatic neoangiogenesis *via* stimulation of VEGF expression in human hepatoma cells[60]. With respect to hepatic differentiation, it has been shown that a gradient of activin/TGF-β signaling controls differentiation of hepatoblasts into hepatocytes and biliary cells in the mouse, with high signaling activity required for development into biliary cells[61]. The contributing activin/TGF-β ligands, however, have not been fully identified. Several studies have used activin A as part of protocols to differentiate human embryonic stem cells (hESC) into hepatocyte-like cells[62-65].

Like activin beta A, the beta B subunit is expressed in multiple tissues and organs[11,66]. Knock-out mice for beta B are viable but show defects in eyelid development and female reproduction[67]. When the coding region of the mature peptide of the beta A subunit gene was replaced with the corresponding region of the beta B subunit, the developmental defects of the beta A knock-out mice were only partially rescued indicating differences in receptor activation or downstream signals[68]. In the liver, the function of the beta B subunit is not well characterized. One reason for this might be the low expression level in normal rat liver, where we observed the beta B subunit to be the only activin subunit undetectable by RNAse protection assay[11]. By immunohistochemistry, however, weak staining of beta B was detected in hepatocytes of normal rat livers and in connective tissue septa in fibrotic livers[47]. Activin beta B mRNA was induced in stellate cells of CCl_4 treated rat livers[47] and exposure to the peroxisome proliferator di-n-butyl phthalate led to a transient surge of beta B mRNA expression 6 h after treatment[69]. With respect to biological activities, recombinant activin B, in contrast to activins A and AB, did not inhibit EGF induced DNA synthesis in primary rat hepatocytes[70]. In contrast to the rat, beta A and beta B transcripts are expressed to similar levels in human liver (Rodgarkia-Dara, unpublished observation). Ectopic expression of ALK7, the preferred type two receptor for activins B and AB induced apoptosis in hepatoma cell lines in a Smad and MAPK- dependent manner[71]. Both activin B and ALK7 have been linked to obesity and diabetes, two well-known risk factors for HCC, *via* participation in regulatory circuits in adipose tissue and the pancreas[72-74].

Beta C and beta E

In contrast to beta A and beta B, whose expression level is the highest in reproductive organs, the liver is the organ where the beta C and the beta E subunit reach by far their highest expression levels. The activin beta C subunit was cloned from liver cDNA and demonstrated to be predominantly expressed in hepatocytes by Northern blot analysis and RNAse protection assays[11,44,75,76]. By immunohistochemistry, significant activin beta C expression has been detected in cells from additional organs, including the prostate, ovary, testes, and pituitary gland[10,77]. After partial hepatectomy, a transient down-regulation of activin beta C expression was observed by several studies[42,44,78,79]. We have found reduced activin beta C expression in HepG2 and Hep3B hepatoma cells versus normal liver tissue[80] and a drop of beta C expression was also described in rat hepatocytes during primary culture with and without EGF treatment[44]. In contrast, increased activin beta C expression was reported in rat liver during the development of CCl_4-induced cirrhosis[48,81] and in response to treatment with the peroxisome proliferator bi-n-butyl phthalate[69]. The functions of the activin beta C subunit are controversial. Activin beta C knock-out mice developed normally and liver regeneration after partial hepatectomy proceeded similar in knock-out animals and wild-type littermates[82]. Studies from our group showed that ectopic expression of activin beta C induced apoptosis in human (HepG2, Hep3B) and rat (H4IIEC3) hepatoma cells and delayed liver regeneration in mice[80,83]. In contrast, in AML12 cells, an immortalized mouse hepatocyte cell line, and in primary rat hepatocytes activin beta C increased DNA synthesis[84]. Adenovirus-mediated expression of activin beta C accelerated liver regeneration after partial hepatectomy in rats[85] and association of activin beta C immunoreactivity with mitotic hepatocytes was observed in regenerating liver after partial hepatectomy[42]. Activin C does not activate activin A-responsive promoters and it was suggested that the beta C subunit down-regulates the levels of bioactive activin A *via* the formation of signaling-incompetent activin AC heterodimers in PC3 human prostate cancer cells[9,86]. In a recent study from the same group, it was shown that homodimeric activin C inhibited activin A-induced Smad2 phosphorylation and growth inhibition, and that activin beta C transgenic mice develop prostate, testis and liver pathologies

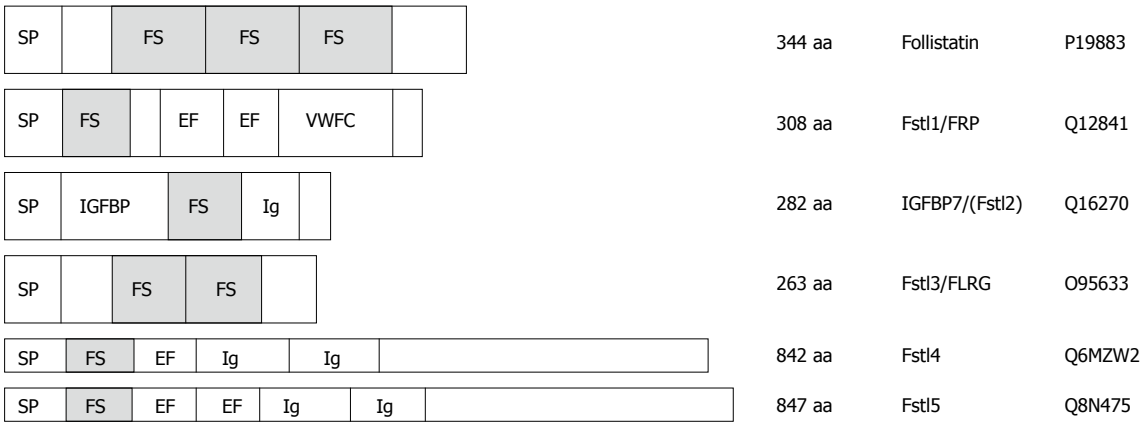


Figure 1 Number and arrangement of follistatin/Kazal-like domains in follistatin-like proteins. SP: Signal peptide; FS: Follistatin/Kazal-like domain; EF: EF-hand domain; VWFC: von Willebrand factor type C repeat; IGFBP: IGF-binding protein N-terminal domain; Ig: Immunoglobulin-like domain. Text to the right shows the number of amino acids (aa), most common name(s) and Uniprot accession number.

suggestive of an activin A antagonistic effect[87]. In line with these observations, elevated beta C immunoreactivity was found in human prostate, testis and liver cancers[87].

Like beta C, also the beta E subunit is highly expressed in the liver, but has been detected at lower levels in several other tissues as well[7,11,88,89]. In the liver of the developing mouse, activin beta E expression could not be detected until the very late stages of embryonic development and peaked at birth[82]. The biological functions and molecular interaction partners of activin beta E remain largely unknown. Like beta C, beta E knock-out (as well as beta C, beta E double knock-out) mice developed normally and showed no impairment of liver function or regeneration[82]. In vitro, overexpression of activin beta E in the human hepatoma cell lines HepG2 and Hep3B, as well as in the murine hepatocyte cell line AML12, caused decreased proliferation and induced apoptosis[12,80]. *In vivo*, transient overexpression of activin beta E inhibited regenerative DNA synthesis in mouse liver[83], while mice constitutively overexpressing the protein showed impaired growth of pancreatic exocrine cells[90]. Following partial hepatectomy, activin beta E mRNA increased rapidly and decreased to near-basal levels after 48 h[82]. We observed a diurnal variation of beta E mRNA depending on food consumption in the rat liver and a surge of beta E expression in response to bacterial lipopolysaccharide (LPS) stimulation was also described[1,89]. Additionally, beta E expression was found and confirmed to be elevated in HepG2 cells as a consequence of phospholipidosis, a lipid storage disorder[91,92]. Expression of activin beta E was also significantly increased in the lung following airway inflammation[93] and in brains of rats infected with Borna disease virus[94]. Interestingly, a neuronal component has also been implied by recent work describing reduced anxiety-related behavior in mice overexpressing activin beta E[95]. Overexpression of the tumor suppressor RASSF1A stimulated expression of beta E, while knock-down of endogenous RASSF1A in nasopharyngeal epithelial cells resulted in beta E downregulation[96]. Finally, in gene chip analysis, mRNA levels from INHBE were found to be altered in HepG2 in response to hypoxia[97]. One possible mode of action for activin beta E was described by Chow *et al*[96], who demonstrated that the expression of Inhibitor of DNA binding 2 (Id2) protein is down-regulated in response to overexpression of activin beta E. Id2 is a known target of TGF-β and a potential oncogene[98]. Large scale analysis identified mutations in the INHBE gene in breast cancer[99]. An evaluation of single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) in genes coding for activins in testicular cancer showed a correlation for the risk of disease and mutations in INHBA but not in INHBB, INHBC or INHBE[100].

FOLLISTATINS AND THEIR ROLE IN ACTIVIN ANTAGONISM AND LIVER DISEASE

Follistatin was discovered as antagonist of activin activity with respect to FSH release from pituitary cells[101]. Sequence analysis of follistatin revealed no homology to the TGF-β family, but the presence of three domains with a similar architecture, namely 10 cysteines spaced in a conserved fashion resulting in a characteristic pattern of intramolecular disulphide bond formation[102]. Accordingly, this domain was termed follistatin domain and bears resemblance to the Kazal domain of serine proteinase inhibitors. Follistatin domains have been identified in a number of additional extracellular proteins and some of these have been filed as follistatin-related proteins or follistatin-like proteins[103-105] (Figure 1). The connection of follistatin and follistatin-like proteins with activin signaling and their involvement in hepatic functions is discussed below. Additional regulation of activin signal transduction takes place at the receptor level by co-receptors, such as cripto, nodal, betaglycan, or BAMBI and intracellularly, for instance by the inhibitory Smad 6 and 7, and has been reviewed elsewhere[106,107].

Follistatin

The biological activities described for follistatin seem to depend largely on its interaction with activins and other members of the TGF-β family. Follistatin, which is expressed in most organs expressing activins[66,108], binds mature secreted activin A with high affinity[109-111]. Complex formation with follistatin completely abolished receptor binding of activin A, thus blocking activin signaling[110,112]. Two follistatin molecules embrace one activin dimer and bury one-third of its residues and its receptor binding sites[113]. Alternative splicing and protein processing of a single follistatin gene results in secretion of three major isoforms containing 288, 303, and 315 amino acids[109]. Of the three follistatin domains present in all follistatin isoforms[114], the first two, but not the third, are necessary for activin A binding[111,115]. Follistatin 288 binds to heparan sulfates, whereas this binding is blocked by an acidic tail in follistatin 315[109]. In addition to binding activins A, B, AB, and E, follistatin was also shown to bind and antagonize myostatin as well as BMPs 2, 4, 6, and 7[88,116-119]. Follistatin administration by intraportal infusion or adenovirus-mediated overexpression caused DNA synthesis and liver growth in the rat, presumably by antagonizing tonic inhibition of hepatocyte proliferation by activin A[120,121]. Following partial hepatectomy, follistatin expression was up-regulated after 24-48 h, the time period in which hepatocyte replication was increased[42]. Administration of exogenous follistatin after partial hepatectomy accelerated liver regeneration but led to impaired restoration of normal tissue architecture and compromised liver function[122-124]. Administration of follistatin in CCl_4-treated rats attenuated the formation of liver fibrosis[125]. These results likely reflect the ability of follistatin to antagonize both growth-inhibitory and pro-fibrotic activities of activin A.

In mouse and rat models of chemically induced liver tumors, we found follistatin expression to be up-regulated in about 60% of tumor tissue samples[59,126]. Moreover, we demonstrated that administration of follistatin stimulated DNA synthesis in preneoplastic rat hepatocytes in an *ex vivo* system, whereas hepatoma cell lines were unresponsive to exogenous follistatin possibly due to autocrine production of follistatin or other activin antagonists[59,126-128]. Knock-out mice for parkin, an E3 ubiquitin ligase implicated in Parkinson's disease and frequently deleted in HCC and hepatoma cell lines[129], develop liver tumors in a follistatin upregulation-dependent fashion[130]. In human HCC elevated follistatin levels were found in the tumor tissue and the circulation of patients[53,59,131]. However, follistatin had no benefit as surveillance biomarker for HCC development in patients with alcoholic and non-alcoholic liver disease (ALD and NAFLD) due to the already elevated levels in the underlying liver pathologies[131]. Whether or not, interaction of follistatin with TGF-β family members other than activins (myostatin, BMP, GDFs) or with angiogenin[132] plays a role in liver tumorigenesis remains to be explored.

Follistatin-like proteins

Follistatin-like 1 (fstl1, also called follistatin-related protein, FRP or Tsc-36) contains only a single follistatin domain and no activin-binding activity has been reported. In fact, the interaction partners of fstl1 on a molecular level have not been identified and its function is far from clear. Fstl1 itself was identified as a TGF-β inducible gene[133] and has been implicated in inflammation and cardioprotection[134-136]. It has been suggested to act as a potential tumor suppressor in epithelial cancers[137-140] but is over-expressed in astrocytic brain tumors[141]. Considering hepatoma cells, we recently demonstrated that the expression of fstl1 is low in HepG2 cells, which show an epithelial morphology/proteome pattern and high in Hep3B cells with fibroblastoid characteristics. These observations suggest fstl1 as potential indicator of epithelial-mesenchymal transition (EMT)[142].

The term follistatin-like 2 (fstl2) is only rarely used. It refers to a protein described to have IGF- (insulin-like growth factor) as well as activin-binding activity and sequence homology with follistatin[143,144]. This protein was also termed mac25 and angiomodulin but is better known as IGFBP7 (IGF binding protein 7) or IGFBP-rP1 (IGF binding protein-related protein 1)[145]. It has been suggested to act as tumor suppressor, because its expression is reduced in neoplastic tissues of different cancer types including liver tumors from SV40T/t antigen transgenic mice[146]. However, the biological relevance of IGFBP7 binding to activin is still unclear. In the course of evolution fish went through whole genome duplication and the term fstl2 has also been used (synonymously with fstl1b) to denote the second zebrafish orthologue of mammalian fstl1.

Among the follistatin like proteins follistatin-like 3 (fstl3), encoded by follistatin-related gene (FLRG), has the highest overall similarity with follistatin and shares its ability to bind TGF-β family proteins, but contains only two instead of three follistatin domains[147]. The FLRG gene was originally identified as a target of chromosomal rearrangement in leukemia[148]. The highest tissue expression of FLRG was found in placenta, whereas highest follistatin expression was found in ovary, testis, and pituitary[147,149]. In HepG2 hepatoma cells, expression of both FLRG and follistatin was induced in response to activin A treatment suggesting that they participate in a feedback loop to restrict activin A signals[150]. FLRG knock-out mice developed increased pancreatic islet number and size, beta cell hyperplasia, decreased visceral fat mass, and hepatic steatosis. This is in line with a physiological role of fstl3 in antagonizing activin and myostatin activity in the pancreas, adipose tissue and liver[151]. Elevated expression of FLRG has been linked to breast cancer[152] and we have found increased FLRG transcript levels in chemically induced rat liver tumors but not in human liver tumor specimens[59].

Recently follistatin-like 4 and 5 were identified as two additional follistatin-related proteins[153], but their expression pattern and function have yet to be worked

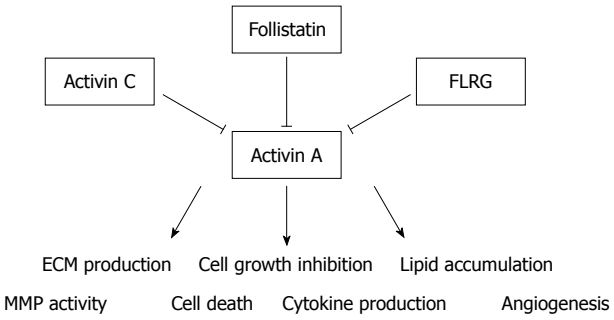


Figure 2 Reported effects of activin A on liver cells and inhibition by activin and follistatin family members. A potential function of the other family members, as agonists or antagonists of hepatic activin signal transduction or as regulators of activin A-independent activities in the liver, remains to be elucidated. ECM: Extracellular matrix; MMP: Matrix metalloproteinase.

out. In addition to the follistatin-like proteins, SPARC, agrin, tomoregulin and others contain one or more follistatin domains, but none of these have so far been connected to activin signal transduction[103,104].

CONCLUSION

Despite the apparent gaps in our knowledge, it is becoming increasingly clear that tightly regulated activin signals are of fundamental importance for the maintenance of liver architecture and cellular homeostasis. While still much has to be learned, especially about the less explored members of the activin and follistatin families, the pace of progress has appreciably sped up in recent years. Deregulated expression of activin A and/or follistatin has been consistently observed in liver cancer in human patients and in a growing number of animal models, and was shown to causally contribute to the inflammatory and fibrotic conditions that promote carcinogenesis (Figure 2). The picture that emerges is that inflammation-associated elevated activin A levels contribute to fibrotic tissue remodelling and cell death of normal hepatocytes, whereas preneoplastic and neoplastic hepatocytes become resistant to activin A-induced growth control, at least in part through overexpression of follistatin. Conditional and liver cell type-specific knock-out of activin beta A and follistatin in mouse hepatocarcinogenesis models could shed further light on the contribution of the activin-follistatin axis to liver cancer development. For the two activin subunits with predominant expression in hepatocytes, namely beta C and beta E, as well as for fstl1, 4 and 5 future efforts should be directed at elucidating their molecular interaction with cell surface receptors or secreted proteins as a prerequisite to better understand their biological activities. Although the complexity of the system may sometimes seem daunting, the hope is well founded that in the not-too-far future, the increasing knowledge on activins and follistatins will translate into improved diagnostic or therapeutic opportunities for patients suffering from chronic liver disease and HCC.

REFERENCES

1 **Rodgarkia-Dara C**, Vejda S, Erlach N, Losert A, Bursch W, Berger W, Schulte-Hermann R, Grusch M. The activin axis in liver biology and disease. *Mutat Res* 2006; **613**: 123-137
2 **Ling N**, Ying SY, Ueno N, Shimasaki S, Esch F, Hotta M, Guillemin R. A homodimer of the beta-subunits of inhibin A stimulates the secretion of pituitary follicle stimulating hormone. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1986; **138**: 1129-1137
3 **Ling N**, Ying SY, Ueno N, Shimasaki S, Esch F, Hotta M, Guillemin R. Pituitary FSH is released by a heterodimer of the beta-subunits from the two forms of inhibin. *Nature* 1986; **321**: 779-782
4 **Schmierer B**, Hill CS. TGFbeta-SMAD signal transduction: molecular specificity and functional flexibility. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2007; **8**: 970-982
5 **Oda S**, Nishimatsu S, Murakami K, Ueno N. Molecular cloning and functional analysis of a new activin beta subunit: a dorsal mesoderm-inducing activity in Xenopus. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1995; **210**: 581-588
6 **Grusch M**, Rodgarkia-Dara C, Bursch W, Schulte-Hermann R. Activins and the liver. In: Jakowlew S, editor. TGF-β Superfamily Members in Normal and Tumor Biology. Totowa: Humana Press, 2008
7 **Fang J**, Wang SQ, Smiley E, Bonadio J. Genes coding for mouse activin beta C and beta E are closely linked and exhibit a liver-specific expression pattern in adult tissues. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1997; **231**: 655-661
8 **Evans LW**, Muttukrishna S, Knight PG, Groome NP. Development, validation and application of a two-site enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay for activin-AB. *J Endocrinol* 1997; **153**: 221-230
9 **Mellor SL**, Ball EM, O'Connor AE, Ethier JF, Cranfield M, Schmitt JF, Phillips DJ, Groome NP, Risbridger GP. Activin betaC-subunit heterodimers provide a new mechanism of regulating activin levels in the prostate. *Endocrinology* 2003; **144**: 4410-4419
10 **Mellor SL**, Cranfield M, Ries R, Pedersen J, Cancilla B, de Kretser D, Groome NP, Mason AJ, Risbridger GP. Localization of activin beta(A)-, beta(B)-, and beta(C)-subunits in humanprostate and evidence for formation of new activin heterodimers of beta(C)-subunit. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2000; **85**: 4851-4858
11 **Vejda S**, Cranfield M, Peter B, Mellor SL, Groome N, Schulte-Hermann R, Rossmanith W. Expression and dimerization of the rat activin subunits betaC and betaE: evidence for the ormation of novel activin dimers. *J Mol Endocrinol* 2002; **28**: 137-148
12 **Wada W**, Medina JJ, Kuwano H, Kojima I. Comparison of the function of the beta(C) and beta(E) subunits of activin in AML12 hepatocytes. *Endocr J* 2005; **52**: 169-175
13 **Antenos M**, Stemler M, Boime I, Woodruff TK. N-linked oligosaccharides direct the differential assembly and secretion of inhibin alpha- and betaA-subunit dimers. *Mol Endocrinol* 2007; **21**: 1670-1684
14 **Mason AJ**. Functional analysis of the cysteine residues of activin A. *Mol Endocrinol* 1994; **8**: 325-332
15 **Gray AM**, Mason AJ. Requirement for activin A and transforming growth factor--beta 1 pro-regions in homodimer assembly. *Science* 1990; **247**: 1328-1330
16 **Mason AJ**, Farnworth PG, Sullivan J. Characterization and determination of the biological activities of noncleavable high molecular weight forms of inhibin A and activin A. *Mol Endocrinol* 1996; **10**: 1055-1065
17 **Husken-Hindi P**, Tsuchida K, Park M, Corrigan AZ, Vaughan JM, Vale WW, Fischer WH. Monomeric activin A retains high receptor binding affinity but exhibits low biological activity. *J Biol Chem* 1994; **269**: 19380-19384
18 **Mason AJ**, Hayflick JS, Ling N, Esch F, Ueno N, Ying SY,

Guillemin R, Niall H, Seeburg PH. Complementary DNA sequences of ovarian follicular fluid inhibin show precursor structure and homology with transforming growth factor-beta. *Nature* 1985; **318**: 659-663
19 **Ushiro Y**, Hashimoto O, Seki M, Hachiya A, Shoji H, Hasegawa Y. Analysis of the function of activin betaC subunit using recombinant protein. *J Reprod Dev* 2006; **52**: 487-495
20 **Attisano L**, Wrana JL, Montalvo E, Massague J. Activation of signalling by the activin receptor complex. *Mol Cell Biol* 1996; **16**: 1066-1073
21 **Tsuchida K**, Nakatani M, Yamakawa N, Hashimoto O, Hasegawa Y, Sugino H. Activin isoforms signal through type I receptor serine/threonine kinase ALK7. *Mol Cell Endocrinol* 2004; **220**: 59-65
22 **Dore JJ Jr**, Yao D, Edens M, Garamszegi N, Sholl EL, Leof EB. Mechanisms of transforming growth factor-beta receptor endocytosis and intracellular sorting differ between fibroblasts and epithelial cells. *Mol Biol Cell* 2001; **12**: 675-684
23 **Zhou Y**, Scolavino S, Funderburk SF, Ficociello LF, Zhang X, Klibanski A. Receptor internalization-independent activation of Smad2 in activin signaling. *Mol Endocrinol* 2004; **18**: 1818-1826
24 **Lee NY**, Ray B, How T, Blobe GC. Endoglin promotes transforming growth factor beta-mediated Smad 1/5/8 signaling and inhibits endothelial cell migration through its association with GIPC. *J Biol Chem* 2008; **283**: 32527-32533
25 **Harrison CA**, Gray PC, Fischer WH, Donaldson C, Choe S, Vale W. An activin mutant with disrupted ALK4 binding blocks signaling via type II receptors. *J Biol Chem* 2004; **279**: 28036-28044
26 **Murase Y**, Okahashi N, Koseki T, Itoh K, Udagawa N, Hashimoto O, Sugino H, Noguchi T, Nishihara T. Possible involvement of protein kinases and Smad2 signaling pathways on osteoclast differentiation enhanced by activin A. *J Cell Physiol* 2001; **188**: 236-242
27 **Dupont J**, McNeilly J, Vaiman A, Canepa S, Combarnous Y, Taragnat C. Activin signaling pathways in ovine pituitary and LbetaT2 gonadotrope cells. *Biol Reprod* 2003; **68**: 1877-1887
28 **Zhang L**, Deng M, Parthasarathy R, Wang L, Mongan M, Molkentin JD, Zheng Y, Xia Y. MEKK1 transduces activin signals in keratinocytes to induce actin stress fiber formation and migration. *Mol Cell Biol* 2005; **25**: 60-65
29 **McDowell N**, Gurdon JB. Activin as a morphogen in Xenopus mesoderm induction. *Semin Cell Dev Biol* 1999; **10**: 311-317
30 **Beattie GM**, Lopez AD, Bucay N, Hinton A, Firpo MT, King CC, Hayek A. Activin A maintains pluripotency of human embryonic stem cells in the absence of feeder layers. *Stem Cells* 2005; **23**: 489-495
31 **de Kretser DM**, Hedger MP, Loveland KL, Phillips DJ. Inhibins, activins and follistatin in reproduction. *Hum Reprod Update* 2002; **8**: 529-541
32 **Maguer-Satta V**, Bartholin L, Jeanpierre S, Ffrench M, Martel S, Magaud JP, Rimokh R. Regulation of human erythropoiesis by activin A, BMP2, and BMP4, members of the TGFbeta family. *Exp Cell Res* 2003; **282**: 110-120
33 **Jones KL**, de Kretser DM, Patella S, Phillips DJ. Activin A and follistatin in systemic inflammation. *Mol Cell Endocrinol* 2004; **225**: 119-125
34 **Chen YG**, Wang Q, Lin SL, Chang CD, Chuang J, Ying SY. Activin signaling and its role in regulation of cell proliferation, apoptosis, and carcinogenesis. *Exp Biol Med* (Maywood) 2006; **231**: 534-544
35 **Munz B**, Smola H, Engelhardt F, Bleuel K, Brauchle M, Lein I, Evans LW, Huylebroeck D, Balling R, Werner S. Overexpression of activin A in the skin of transgenic mice reveals new activities of activin in epidermal morphogenesis, dermal fibrosis and wound repair. *EMBO J* 1999; **18**: 5205-5215
36 **Werner S**, Alzheimer C. Roles of activin in tissue repair, fibrosis, and inflammatory disease. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev* 2006; **17**: 157-171
37 **Matzuk MM**, Kumar TR, Vassalli A, Bickenbach JR, Roop DR, Jaenisch R, Bradley A. Functional analysis of activins during mammalian development. *Nature* 1995; **374**: 354-356
38 **Hully JR**, Chang L, Schwall RH, Widmer HR, Terrell TG, Gillett NA. Induction of apoptosis in the murine liver with recombinant human activin A. *Hepatology* 1994; **20**: 854-862
39 **Schwall RH**, Robbins K, Jardieu P, Chang L, Lai C, Terrell TG. Activin induces cell death in hepatocytes in vivo and in vitro. *Hepatology* 1993; **18**: 347-356
40 **Yasuda H**, Mine T, Shibata H, Eto Y, Hasegawa Y, Takeuchi T, Asano S, Kojima I. Activin A: an autocrine inhibitor of initiation of DNA synthesis in rat hepatocytes. *J Clin Invest* 1993; **92**: 1491-1496
41 **Takabe K**, Lebrun JJ, Nagashima Y, Ichikawa Y, Mitsuhashi M, Momiyama N, Ishikawa T, Shimada H, Vale WW. Interruption of activin A autocrine regulation by antisense oligodeoxynucleotides accelerates liver tumor cell proliferation. *Endocrinology* 1999; **140**: 3125-3132
42 **Gold EJ**, Zhang X, Wheatley AM, Mellor SL, Cranfield M, Risbridger GP, Groome NP, Fleming JS. betaA- and betaC-activin, follistatin, activin receptor mRNA and betaC-activin peptide expression during rat liver regeneration. *J Mol Endocrinol* 2005; **34**: 505-515
43 **Date M**, Matsuzaki K, Matsushita M, Tahashi Y, Sakitani K, Inoue K. Differential regulation of activin A for hepatocyte growth and fibronectin synthesis in rat liver injury. *J Hepatol* 2000; **32**: 251-260
44 **Zhang YQ**, Shibata H, Schrewe H, Kojima I. Reciprocal expression of mRNA for inhibin betaC and betaA subunits in hepatocytes. *Endocr J* 1997; **44**: 759-764
45 **Wada W**, Kuwano H, Hasegawa Y, Kojima I. The dependence of transforming growth factor-beta-induced collagen production on autocrine factor activin A in hepatic stellate cells. *Endocrinology* 2004; **145**: 2753-2759
46 **Endo D**, Kogure K, Hasegawa Y, Maku-uchi M, Kojima I. Activin A augments vascular endothelial growth factor activity in promoting branching tubulogenesis in hepatic sinusoidal endothelial cells. *J Hepatol* 2004; **40**: 399-404
47 **De Bleser PJ**, Niki T, Xu G, Rogiers V, Geerts A. Localization and cellular sources of activins in normal and fibrotic rat liver. *Hepatology* 1997; **26**: 905-912
48 **Gold EJ**, Francis RJ, Zimmermann A, Mellor SL, Cranfield M, Risbridger GP, Groome NP, Wheatley AM, Fleming JS. Changes in activin and activin receptor subunit expression in rat liver during the development of CCl4-induced cirrhosis. *Mol Cell Endocrinol* 2003; **201**: 143-153
49 **Huang X**, Li DG, Wang ZR, Wei HS, Cheng JL, Zhan YT, Zhou X, Xu QF, Li X, Lu HM. Expression changes of activin A in the development of hepatic fibrosis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2001; **7**: 37-41
50 **Sugiyama M**, Ichida T, Sato T, Ishikawa T, Matsuda Y, Asakura H. Expression of activin A is increased in cirrhotic and fibrotic rat livers. *Gastroenterology* 1998; **114**: 550-558
51 **Gressner OA**, Lahme B, Siluschek M, Rehbein K, Weiskirchen R, Gressner AM. Intracrine signalling of activin A in hepatocytes upregulates connective tissue growth factor (CTGF/CCN2) expression. *Liver Int* 2008; **28**: 1207-1216
52 **Patella S**, Phillips DJ, de Kretser DM, Evans LW, Groome NP, Sievert W. Characterization of serum activin-A and follistatin and their relation to virological and histological determinants in chronic viral hepatitis. *J Hepatol* 2001; **34**: 576-583

53 **Yuen MF**, Norris S, Evans LW, Langley PG, Hughes RD. Transforming growth factor-beta 1, activin and follistatin in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma and patients with alcoholic cirrhosis. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2002; **37**: 233-238

54 **Pirisi M**, Fabris C, Luisi S, Santuz M, Toniutto P, Vitulli D, Federico E, Del Forno M, Mattiuzzo M, Branca B, Petraglia F. Evaluation of circulating activin-A as a serum marker of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer Detect Prev* 2000; **24**: 150-155

55 **Elsammak MY**, Amin GM, Khalil GM, Ragab WS, Abaza MM. Possible contribution of serum activin A and IGF-1 in the development of hepatocellular carcinoma in Egyptian patients suffering from combined hepatitis C virus infection and hepatic schistosomiasis. *Clin Biochem* 2006; **39**: 623-629

56 **Hughes RD**, Evans LW. Activin A and follistatin in acute liver failure. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2003; **15**: 127-131

57 **Lin SD**, Kawakami T, Ushio A, Sato A, Sato S, Iwai M, Endo R, Takikawa Y, Suzuki K. Ratio of circulating follistatin and activin A reflects the severity of acute liver injury and prognosis in patients with acute liver failure. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2006; **21**: 374-380

58 **Yndestad A**, Haukeland JW, Dahl TB, Bjoro K, Gladhaug IP, Berge C, Damas JK, Haaland T, Loberg EM, Linnestad P, Birkeland K, Konopski Z, Halvorsen B, Berge RK, Aukrust P. A complex role of activin A in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2009; **104**: 2196-2205

59 **Grusch M**, Drucker C, Peter-Vorosmarty B, Erlach N, Lackner A, Losert A, Macheiner D, Schneider WJ, Hermann M, Groome NP, Parzefall W, Berger W, Grasl-Kraupp B, Schulte-Hermann R. Deregulation of the activin/follistatin system in hepatocarcinogenesis. *J Hepatol* 2006; **45**: 673-680

60 **Wagner K**, Peters M, Scholz A, Benckert C, Ruderisch HS, Wiedenmann B, Rosewicz S. Activin A stimulates vascular endothelial growth factor gene transcription in human hepatocellular carcinoma cells. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126**: 1828-1843

61 **Clotman F**, Jacquemin P, Plumb-Rudewiez N, Pierreux CE, Van der Smissen P, Dietz HC, Courtoy PJ, Rousseau GG, Lemaigre FP. Control of liver cell fate decision by a gradient of TGF beta signaling modulated by Onecut transcription factors. *Genes Dev* 2005; **19**: 1849-1854

62 **Basma H**, Soto-Gutierrez A, Yannam GR, Liu L, Ito R, Yamamoto T, Ellis E, Carson SD, Sato S, Chen Y, Muirhead D, Navarro-Alvarez N, Wong RJ, Roy-Chowdhury J, Platt JL, Mercer DF, Miller JD, Strom SC, Kobayashi N, Fox IJ. Differentiation and transplantation of human embryonic stem cell-derived hepatocytes. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **136**: 990-999

63 **Cai J**, Zhao Y, Liu Y, Ye F, Song Z, Qin H, Meng S, Chen Y, Zhou R, Song X, Guo Y, Ding M, Deng H. Directed differentiation of human embryonic stem cells into functional hepatic cells. *Hepatology* 2007; **45**: 1229-1239

64 **Hay DC**, Fletcher J, Payne C, Terrace JD, Gallagher RC, Snoeys J, Black JR, Wojtacha D, Samuel K, Hannoun Z, Pryde A, Filippi C, Currie IS, Forbes SJ, Ross JA, Newsome PN, Iredale JP. Highly efficient differentiation of hESCs to functional hepatic endoderm requires ActivinA and Wnt3a signaling. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2008; **105**: 12301-1236

65 **Hay DC**, Zhao D, Fletcher J, Hewitt ZA, McLean D, Urruticoechea-Uriguen A, Black JR, Elcombe C, Ross JA, Wolf R, Cui W. Efficient differentiation of hepatocytes from human embryonic stem cells exhibiting markers recapitulating liver development in vivo. *Stem Cells* 2008; **26**: 894-902

66 **Tuuri T**, Eramaa M, Hilden K, Ritvos O. The tissue distribution of activin beta A- and beta B-subunit and follistatin messenger ribonucleic acids suggests multiple sites of action for the activin-follistatin system during human development. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 1994; **78**: 1521-1524

67 **Vassalli A**, Matzuk MM, Gardner HA, Lee KF, Jaenisch R. Activin/inhibin beta B subunit gene disruption leads to defects in eyelid development and female reproduction. *Genes Dev* 1994; **8**: 414-427

68 **Brown CW**, Houston-Hawkins DE, Woodruff TK, Matzuk MM. Insertion of Inhbb into the Inhba locus rescues the Inhba-null phenotype and reveals new activin functions. *Nat Genet* 2000; **25**: 453-457

69 **Kobayashi T**, Niimi S, Fukuoka M, Hayakawa T. Regulation of inhibin beta chains and follistatin mRNA levels during rat hepatocyte growth induced by the peroxisome proliferator di-n-butyl phthalate. *Biol Pharm Bull* 2002; **25**: 1214-1216

70 **Niimi S**, Horikawa M, Seki T, Ariga T, Kobayashi T, Hayakawa T. Effect of activins AB and B on DNA synthesis stimulated by epidermal growth factor in primary cultured rat hepatocytes. *Biol Pharm Bull* 2002; **25**: 437-440

71 **Kim BC**, van Gelder H, Kim TA, Lee HJ, Baik KG, Chun HH, Lee DA, Choi KS, Kim SJ. Activin receptor-like kinase-7 induces apoptosis through activation of MAPKs in a Smad3-dependent mechanism in hepatoma cells. *J Biol Chem* 2004; **279**: 28458-28465

72 **Bertolino P**, Holmberg R, Reissmann E, Andersson O, Berggren PO, Ibanez CF. Activin B receptor ALK7 is a negative regulator of pancreatic beta-cell function. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2008; **105**: 7246-7251

73 **Carlsson LM**, Jacobson P, Walley A, Froguel P, Sjostrom L, Svensson PA, Sjoholm K. ALK7 expression is specific for adipose tissue, reduced in obesity and correlates to factors implicated in metabolic disease. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2009; **382**: 309-314

74 **Sjoholm K**, Palming J, Lystig TC, Jennische E, Woodruff TK, Carlsson B, Carlsson LM. The expression of inhibin beta B is high in human adipocytes, reduced by weight loss, and correlates to factors implicated in metabolic disease. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2006; **344**: 1308-1314

75 **Hoetten G**, Neidhardt H, Schneider C, Pohl J. Cloning of a new member of the TGF-beta family: a putative new activin beta C chain. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1995; **206**: 608-613

76 **Schmitt J**, Hotten G, Jenkins NA, Gilbert DJ, Copeland NG, Pohl J, Schrewe H. Structure, chromosomal localization, and expression analysis of the mouse inhibin/activin beta C (Inhbc) gene. *Genomics* 1996; **32**: 358-366

77 Gold EJ, O'Bryan MK, Mellor SL, Cranfield M, Risbridger GP, Groome NP, Fleming JS. Cell-specific expression of betaC-activin in the rat reproductive tract, adrenal and liver. *Mol Cell Endocrinol* 2004; **222**: 61-69

78 **Esquela AF**, Zimmers TA, Koniaris LG, Sitzmann JV, Lee SJ. Transient down-regulation of inhibin-betaC expression following partial hepatectomy. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1997; **235**: 553-556

79 **Takamura K**, Tsuchida K, Miyake H, Tashiro S, Sugino H. Activin and activin receptor expression changes in liver regeneration in rat. *J Surg Res* 2005; **126**: 3-11

80 **Vejda S**, Erlach N, Peter B, Drucker C, Rossmanith W, Pohl J, Schulte-Hermann R, Grusch M. Expression of activins C and E induces apoptosis in human and rat hepatoma cells. *Carcinogenesis* 2003; **24**: 1801-1809

81 **Huang X**, Li D, Lu H, Wang Z, Wei H, Wang Y, Zhang J, Xu Q. [Expression of activins, follistatin mRNA in the development of hepatic fibrosis] *Zhonghua Ganzangbing Zazhi* 2002; **10**: 85-88

82 **Lau AL**, Kumar TR, Nishimori K, Bonadio J, Matzuk MM. Activin betaC and betaE genes are not essential for mouse liver growth, differentiation, and regeneration. *Mol Cell Biol* 2000; **20**: 6127-6137

83 **Chabicovsky M**, Herkner K, Rossmanith W. Overexpression of activin beta(C) or activin beta(E) in the mouse liver inhibits regenerative deoxyribonucleic acid synthesis of hepatic cells. *Endocrinology* 2003; **144**: 3497-3504

84 **Wada W**, Maeshima A, Zhang YQ, Hasegawa Y, Kuwano H, Kojima I. Assessment of the function of the betaC-subunit of activin in cultured hepatocytes. *Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab* 2004; **287**: E247-E54

85 **Wada W**, Medina J, Hasegawa Y, Kuwano H, Kojima I. Adenovirus-mediated overexpression of the activin betaC subunit accelerates liver regeneration in partially hepatectomized rats. *J Hepatol* 2005; **43**: 823-828

86 **Butler CM**, Gold EJ, Risbridger GP. Should activin betaC be more than a fading snapshot in the activin/TGFbeta family album? *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev* 2005; **16**: 377-385

87 **Gold E**, Jetly N, O'Bryan MK, Meachem S, Srinivasan D, Behuria S, Sanchez-Partida LG, Woodruff T, Hedwards S, Wang H, McDougall H, Casey V, Niranjan B, Patella S, Risbridger G. Activin C antagonizes activin A in vitro and overexpression leads to pathologies in vivo. *Am J Pathol* 2009; **174**: 184-195

88 **Hashimoto O**, Tsuchida K, Ushiro Y, Hosoi Y, Hoshi N, Sugino H, Hasegawa Y. cDNA cloning and expression of human activin betaE subunit. *Mol Cell Endocrinol* 2002; **194**: 117-122

89 **O'Bryan MK**, Sebire KL, Gerdprasert O, Hedger MP, Hearn MT, de Kretser DM. Cloning and regulation of the rat activin betaE subunit. *J Mol Endocrinol* 2000; **24**: 409-418

90 **Hashimoto O**, Ushiro Y, Sekiyama K, Yamaguchi O, Yoshioka K, Mutoh K, Hasegawa Y. Impaired growth of pancreatic exocrine cells in transgenic mice expressing human activin betaE subunit. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2006; **341**: 416-424

91 **Atienzar F**, Gerets H, Dufrane S, Tilmant K, Cornet M, Dhalluin S, Ruty B, Rose G, Canning M. Determination of phospholipidosis potential based on gene expression analysis in HepG2 cells. *Toxicol Sci* 2007; **96**: 101-114

92 **Sawada H**, Takami K, Asahi S. A toxicogenomic approach to drug-induced phospholipidosis: analysis of its induction mechanism and establishment of a novel in vitro screening system. *Toxicol Sci* 2005; **83**: 282-292

93 **Rosendahl A**, Checchin D, Fehniger TE, ten Dijke P, Heldin CH, Sideras P. Activation of the TGF-beta/activin-Smad2 pathway during allergic airway inflammation. *Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol* 2001; **25**: 60-68

94 **Nishino Y**, Ooishi R, Kurokawa S, Fujino K, Murakami M, Madarame H, Hashimoto O, Sugiyama K, Funaba M. Gene expression of the TGF-beta family in rat brain infected with Borna disease virus. *Microbes Infect* 2009; **11**: 737-743

95 **Sekiyama K**, Hashimoto O, Ushiro Y, Adachi C, Kikusui T, Tanemura K, Hasegawa Y. Abnormalities in aggression and anxiety in transgenic mice overexpressing activin E. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2009; **385**: 319-323

96 **Chow LS**, Lam CW, Chan SY, Tsao SW, To KF, Tong SF, Hung WK, Dammann R, Huang DP, Lo KW. Identification of RASSF1A modulated genes in nasopharyngeal carcinoma. *Oncogene* 2006; **25**: 310-316

97 **Fisher TS**, Etages SD, Hayes L, Crimin K, Li B. Analysis of ARD1 function in hypoxia response using retroviral RNA interference. *J Biol Chem* 2005; **280**: 17749-17757

98 **Lasorella A**, Uo T, Iavarone A. Id proteins at the cross-road of development and cancer. *Oncogene* 2001; **20**: 8326-8333

99 **Sjoblom T**, Jones S, Wood LD, Parsons DW, Lin J, Barber TD, Mandelker D, Leary RJ, Ptak J, Silliman N, Szabo S, Buckhaults P, Farrell C, Meeh P, Markowitz SD, Willis J, Dawson D, Willson JK, Gazdar AF, Hartigan J, Wu L, Liu C, Parmigiani G, Park BH, Bachman KE, Papadopoulos N, Vogelstein B, Kinzler KW, Velculescu VE. The consensus coding sequences of human breast and colorectal cancers. *Science* 2006; **314**: 268-274

100 **Purdue MP**, Graubard BI, Chanock SJ, Rubertone MV, Erickson RL, McGlynn KA. Genetic variation in the inhibin pathway and risk of testicular germ cell tumors. *Cancer Res* 2008; **68**: 3043-3048

101 **Ueno N**, Ling N, Ying SY, Esch F, Shimasaki S, Guillemin R. Isolation and partial characterization of follistatin: a single-chain Mr 35,000 monomeric protein that inhibits the release of follicle-stimulating hormone. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1987; **84**: 8282-8286

102 **Esch FS**, Shimasaki S, Mercado M, Cooksey K, Ling N, Ying S, Ueno N, Guillemin R. Structural characterization of follistatin: a novel follicle-stimulating hormone release-inhibiting polypeptide from the gonad. *Mol Endocrinol* 1987; **1**: 849-855

103 **Phillips DJ**, de Kretser DM. Follistatin: a multifunctional regulatory protein. *Front Neuroendocrinol* 1998; **19**: 287-322

104 **Ullman CG**, Perkins SJ. The Factor I and follistatin domain families: the return of a prodigal son. *Biochem J* 1997; **326** (Pt 3): 939-941

105 **Patthy L**, Nikolics K. Functions of agrin and agrin-related proteins. *Trends Neurosci* 1993; **16**: 76-81

106 **Deli A**, Kreidl E, Santifaller S, Trotter B, Seir K, Berger W, Schulte-Hermann R, Rodgarkia-Dara C, Grusch M. Activins and activin antagonists in hepatocellular carcinoma. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 1699-1709

107 **Harrison CA**, Gray PC, Vale WW, Robertson DM. Antagonists of activin signaling: mechanisms and potential biological applications. *Trends Endocrinol Metab* 2005; **16**: 73-78

108 **Michel U**, Rao A, Findlay JK. Rat follistatin: ontogeny of steady-state mRNA levels in different tissues predicts organ-specific functions. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1991; **180**: 223-230

109 **Sugino K**, Kurosawa N, Nakamura T, Takio K, Shimasaki S, Ling N, Titani K, Sugino H. Molecular heterogeneity of follistatin, an activin-binding protein. Higher affinity of the carboxyl-terminal truncated forms for heparan sulfate proteoglycans on the ovarian granulosa cell. *J Biol Chem* 1993; **268**: 15579-15587

110 **Schneyer AL**, Rzucidlo DA, Sluss PM, Crowley WF Jr. Characterization of unique binding kinetics of follistatin and activin or inhibin in serum. *Endocrinology* 1994; **135**: 667-674

111 **Harrington AE**, Morris-Triggs SA, Ruotolo BT, Robinson CV, Ohnuma S, Hyvonen M. Structural basis for the inhibition of activin signalling by follistatin. *EMBO J* 2006; **25**: 1035-1045

112 **de Winter JP**, ten Dijke P, de Vries CJ, van Achterberg TA, Sugino H, de Waele P, Huylebroeck D, Verschueren K, van den Eijnden-van Raaij AJ. Follistatins neutralize activin bioactivity by inhibition of activin binding to its type II receptors. *Mol Cell Endocrinol* 1996; **116**: 105-114

113 **Thompson TB**, Lerch TF, Cook RW, Woodruff TK, Jardetzky TS. The structure of the follistatin:activin complex reveals antagonism of both type I and type II receptor binding. *Dev Cell* 2005; **9**: 535-543

114 **Shimasaki S**, Koga M, Esch F, Cooksey K, Mercado M, Koba A, Ueno N, Ying SY, Ling N, Guillemin R. Primary structure of the human follistatin precursor and its genomic organization. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1988; **85**: 4218-4222

115 **Keutmann HT**, Schneyer AL, Sidis Y. The role of follistatin domains in follistatin biological action. *Mol Endocrinol* 2004; **18**: 228-240

116 **Schneyer A**, Schoen A, Quigg A, Sidis Y. Differential binding and neutralization of activins A and B by follistatin and follistatin like-3 (FSTL-3/FSRP/FLRG). *Endocrinology* 2003; **144**: 1671-1674

117 **Iemura S**, Yamamoto TS, Takagi C, Uchiyama H, Natsume T, Shimasaki S, Sugino H, Ueno N. Direct binding of follistatin to a complex of bone-morphogenetic protein and its receptor inhibits ventral and epidermal cell fates in early Xenopus embryo. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1998; 95: 9337-9342

118 **Amthor H**, Nicholas G, McKinnell I, Kemp CF, Sharma M, Kambadur R, Patel K. Follistatin complexes Myostatin and antagonises Myostatin-mediated inhibition of myogenesis. *Dev Biol* 2004; **270**: 19-30

119 **Glister C**, Kemp CF, Knight PG. Bone morphogenetic protein (BMP) ligands and receptors in bovine ovarian follicle cells: actions of BMP-4, -6 and -7 on granulosa cells and differential modulation of Smad-1 phosphorylation by follistatin. *Reproduction* 2004; **127**: 239-254

120 **Kogure K**, Zhang YQ, Maeshima A, Suzuki K, Kuwano H, Kojima I. The role of activin and transforming growth factor-beta in the regulation of organ mass in the rat liver. *Hepatology* 2000; **31**: 916-921

121 **Takabe K**, Wang L, Leal AM, Macconell LA, Wiater E, Tomiya T, Ohno A, Verma IM, Vale W. Adenovirus-mediated overexpression of follistatin enlarges intact liver of adult rats. *Hepatology* 2003; **38**: 1107-1115

122 **Kogure K**, Omata W, Kanzaki M, Zhang YQ, Yasuda H, Mine T, Kojima I. A single intraportal administration of follistatin accelerates liver regeneration in partially hepatectomized rats. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **108**: 1136-1142

123 **Kogure K**, Zhang YQ, Shibata H, Kojima I. Immediate onset of DNA synthesis in remnant rat liver after 90% hepatectomy by an administration of follistatin. *J Hepatol* 1998; **29**: 977-984

124 **Endo D**, Maku-Uchi M, Kojima I. Activin or follistatin: which is more beneficial to support liver regeneration after massive hepatectomy? *Endocr J* 2006; **53**: 73-78

125 **Patella S**, Phillips DJ, Tchongue J, de Kretser DM, Sievert W. Follistatin attenuates early liver fibrosis: effects on hepatic stellate cell activation and hepatocyte apoptosis. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2006; **290**: G137-G144

126 **Rossmanith W**, Chabicovsky M, Grasl-Kraupp B, Peter B, Schausberger E, Schulte-Hermann R. Follistatin over-expression in rodent liver tumors: a possible mechanism to overcome activin growth control. *Mol Carcinog* 2002; **35**: 1-5

127 **Fuwii M**, Ishikawa M, Iuchi M, Tashiro S. Effect of follistatin on rat liver regeneration and tumor growth after portal occlusion. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2005; **52**: 833-838

128 **Mashima H**, Kanzaki M, Nobusawa R, Zhang YQ, Suzuki M, Mine T, Kojima I. Derangements in the activin-follistatin system in hepatoma cells. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **108**: 834-840

129 **Wang F**, Denison S, Lai JP, Philips LA, Montoya D, Kock N, Schule B, Klein C, Shridhar V, Roberts LR, Smith DI. Parkin gene alterations in hepatocellular carcinoma. Genes Chromosomes *Cancer* 2004; **40**: 85-96

130 **Fujiwara M**, Marusawa H, Wang HQ, Iwai A, Ikeuchi K, Imai Y, Kataoka A, Nukina N, Takahashi R, Chiba T. Parkin as a tumor suppressor gene for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Oncogene* 2008; **27**: 6002-6011

131 **Beale G**, Chattopadhyay D, Gray J, Stewart S, Hudson M, Day C, Trerotoli P, Giannelli G, Manas D, Reeves H. AFP, PIVKAII, GP3, SCCA-1 and follisatin as surveillance biomarkers for hepatocellular cancer in non-alcoholic and alcoholic fatty liver disease. *BMC Cancer* 2008; **8**: 200

132 **Gao X**, Hu H, Zhu J, Xu Z. Identification and characterization of follistatin as a novel angiogenin-binding protein. *FEBS Lett* 2007; **581**: 5505-5510

133 **Shibanuma M**, Mashimo J, Mita A, Kuroki T, Nose K. Cloning from a mouse osteoblastic cell line of a set of transforming-growth-factor-beta 1-regulated genes, one of which seems to encode a follistatin-related polypeptide. *Eur J Biochem* 1993; **217**: 13-19

134 **Kawabata D**, Tanaka M, Fujii T, Umehara H, Fujita Y, Yoshifuji H, Mimori T, Ozaki S. Ameliorative effects of follistatin-related protein/TSC-36/FSTL1 on joint inflammation in a mouse model of arthritis. *Arthritis Rheum* 2004; **50**: 660-668

135 **Miyamae T**, Marinov AD, Sowders D, Wilson DC, Devlin J, Boudreau R, Robbins P, Hirsch R. Follistatin-like protein-1 is a novel proinflammatory molecule. *J Immunol* 2006; **177**: 4758-4762

136 **Oshima Y**, Ouchi N, Sato K, Izumiya Y, Pimentel DR, Walsh K. Follistatin-like 1 is an Akt-regulated cardioprotective factor that is secreted by the heart. *Circulation* 2008; **117**: 3099-3108

137 **Mashimo J**, Maniwa R, Sugino H, Nose K. Decrease in the expression of a novel TGF beta1-inducible and ras-recision gene, TSC-36, in human cancer cells. *Cancer Lett* 1997; **113**: 213-219

138 **Sumitomo K**, Kurisaki A, Yamakawa N, Tsuchida K, Shimizu E, Sone S, Sugino H. Expression of a TGF-beta1 inducible gene, TSC-36, causes growth inhibition in human lung cancer cell lines. *Cancer Lett* 2000; **155**: 37-46

139 **Hodgson G**, Hager JH, Volik S, Hariono S, Wernick M, Moore D, Nowak N, Albertson DG, Pinkel D, Collins C, Hanahan D, Gray JW. Genome scanning with array CGH delineates regional alterations in mouse islet carcinomas. *Nat Genet* 2001; **29**: 459-464

140 **Chan QK**, Ngan HY, Ip PP, Liu VW, Xue WC, Cheung AN. Tumor suppressor effect of follistatin-like 1 in ovarian and endometrial carcinogenesis: a differential expression and functional analysis. *Carcinogenesis* 2009; **30**: 114-121

141 **Reddy SP**, Britto R, Vinnakota K, Aparna H, Sreepathi HK, Thota B, Kumari A, Shilpa BM, Vrinda M, Umesh S, Samuel C, Shetty M, Tandon A, Pandey P, Hegde S, Hegde AS, Balasubramaniam A, Chandramouli BA, Santosh V, Kondaiah P, Somasundaram K, Rao MR. Novel glioblastoma markers with diagnostic and prognostic value identified through transcriptome analysis. *Clin Cancer Res* 2008; **14**: 2978-2987

142 **Slany A**, Haudek VJ, Zwickl H, Gundacker NC, Grusch M, Weiss TS, Seir K, Rodgarkia-Dara C, Hellerbrand C, Gerner C. Cell Characterization by Proteome Profiling Applied to Primary Hepatocytes and Hepatocyte Cell Lines Hep-G2 and Hep-3B. *J Proteome Res* 2009; Epub ahead of print

143 **Kato MV**, Sato H, Tsukada T, Ikawa Y, Aizawa S, Nagayoshi M. A follistatin-like gene, mac25, may act as a growth suppressor of osteosarcoma cells. *Oncogene* 1996; **12**: 1361-1364

144 **Kato MV**. A secreted tumor-suppressor, mac25, with activin-binding activity. *Mol Med* 2000; **6**: 126-135

145 **Hwa V**, Oh Y, Rosenfeld RG. The insulin-like growth factor-binding protein (IGFBP) superfamily. *Endocr Rev* 1999; **20**: 761-787

146 **Komatsu S**, Okazaki Y, Tateno M, Kawai J, Konno H, Kusakabe M, Yoshiki A, Muramatsu M, Held WA, Hayashizaki Y. Methylation and downregulated expression of mac25/insulin-like growth factor binding protein-7 is associated with liver tumorigenesis in SV40T/t antigen transgenic mice, screened by restriction landmark genomic scanning for methylation (RLGS-M). *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2000; **267**: 109-117

147 **Tsuchida K**, Arai KY, Kuramoto Y, Yamakawa N, Hasegawa Y, Sugino H. Identification and characterization of a novel follistatin-like protein as a binding protein for the TGF-beta family. *J Biol Chem* 2000; **275**: 40788-40796

148 **Hayette S**, Gadoux M, Martel S, Bertrand S, Tigaud I, Magaud JP, Rimokh R. FLRG (follistatin-related gene), a new target of chromosomal rearrangement in malignant blood disorders. *Oncogene* 1998; **16**: 2949-2954

149 **Tortoriello DV**, Sidis Y, Holtzman DA, Holmes WE,

Schneyer AL. Human follistatin-related protein: a structural homologue of follistatin with nuclear localization. *Endocrinology* 2001; **142**: 3426-3434

150 **Bartholin L**, Maguer-Satta V, Hayette S, Martel S, Gadoux M, Corbo L, Magaud JP, Rimokh R. Transcription activation of FLRG and follistatin by activin A, through Smad proteins, participates in a negative feedback loop to modulate activin A function. *Oncogene* 2002; **21**: 2227-2235

151 **Mukherjee A**, Sidis Y, Mahan A, Raher MJ, Xia Y, Rosen ED, Bloch KD, Thomas MK, Schneyer AL. FSTL3 deletion reveals roles for TGF-beta family ligands in glucose and fat homeostasis in adults. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2007; **104**: 1348-1353

152 **Razanajaona D**, Joguet S, Ay AS, Treilleux I, Goddard-Leon S, Bartholin L, Rimokh R. Silencing of FLRG, an antagonist of activin, inhibits human breast tumor cell growth. *Cancer Res* 2007; **67**: 7223-7229

153 **Glusman G**, Kaur A, Hood L, Rowen L. An enigmatic fourth runt domain gene in the fugu genome: ancestral gene loss versus accelerated evolution. *BMC Evol Biol* 2004; **4**: 43

S- Editor Zhang HN **L- Editor** Negro F **E- Editor** Ma WH

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.28

World J Hepatol 2009 October 31; 1(1): 28-34
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

Proteinases and their inhibitors in liver cancer

Verena Puxbaum, Lukas Mach

Verena Puxbaum, Lukas Mach, Department of Applied Genetics and Cell Biology, University of Natural Resources and Applied Life Sciences, Muthgasse 18, Vienna A-1190, Austria
Author contributions: Puxbaum V and Mach L co-wrote the manuscript.
Supported by The Austrian Science Fund (FWF), Project 16925 (awarded to Lukas Mach)
Correspondence to: Dr. Lukas Mach, Associate Professor, Department of Applied Genetics and Cell Biology, University of Natural Resources and Applied Life Sciences, Muthgasse 18, Vienna A-1190, Austria. lukas.mach@boku.ac.at
Telephone: +43-1-360066360 Fax: +43-1-360066392
Received: July 2, 2009 Revised: September 5, 2009
Accepted: September 12, 2009
Published online: October 31, 2009

Abstract

Proteinases are known to be involved in many cancer-related processes, particularly in the breakdown of extracellular matrix barriers in the course of tumor invasion and metastasis. In this review we summarize the current knowledge about the role of the most important matrix-degrading proteinases (cathepsins, matrix metalloproteinases, plasmin/plasminogen activators) and their respective inhibitors in liver cancer progression and metastasis.

Key words: Cathepsin; Cystatin; Hepatocellular carcinoma; Metalloproteinase; Plasminogen activator; Tumor invasion; Metastasis

Peer reviewers: Erich Gulbins, MD, Professor, Department of Molecular Biology, University of Duisburg-Essen, Hufelandstrasse 55, 45122 Essen, Germany; Andrea Nicolini, Professor, Department of Internal Medicine, University of Pisa, via Roma 67, 56126 Pisa, Itlay

Puxbaum V, Mach L. Proteinases and their inhibitors in liver cancer. *World J Hepatol* 2009; 1(1): 28-34 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v1/i1/28.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.28

INTRODUCTION

Liver cancer represents the seventh most frequent malignancy, as manifested by more than 50.000 new cases per year. This corresponds to 6% of all cancers diagnosed in the year 2000[1]. The most common primary liver tumors are hepatocellular carcinomas (HCCs). Although many improvements have been made in terms of diagnosis and treatment, HCCs are usually associated with poor clinical prognosis, with a mean life expectancy of less than 6 mo. Surgical resection is only possible in 10%-20% of incidences and cures less than 5% of the patients. Tumor recurrence as well as intrahepatic and vascular metastasis severely affect the clinical outcome of this disease[2]. Interestingly, HCCs develop mainly in chronically injured tissue and are frequently associated with liver fibrosis. As a consequence of the development of fibrosis, HCC cells are often embedded in a stroma rich in extracellular matrix (ECM) proteins, which may culminate in the formation of a capsule surrounding the cancerous tissue[3]. However, aggressive HCCs have the capacity to penetrate such ECM barriers and spread into the surrounding parenchyma, leading to intrahepatic metastasis and portal venous invasion[4].

Various proteinases appear to be involved in the breakdown of ECM components during tumor invasion and metastasis, including plasmin and plasminogen activators, matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs), and cathepsins[5-7]. It has been shown that the synthesis of matrix-degrading proteinases is frequently upregulated in tumors. Cancer cells can also increase the proteolytic load in their environment by mobilization of proteinases from intracellular stores, and by acquisition and activation of proteinases released by stromal cells[8]. The degree of local ECM proteolysis is regulated by the concomitant secretion of endogenous proteinase inhibitors. The intricate balance between individual proteinases and their respective inhibitors implies that invasive tumor cells precisely coordinate ECM proteolysis with other cellular events required for effective invasion, such as cell-matrix attachment, detachment and migration[9].

Hepatocytes produce only a limited array of protein-

Table 1 Liver proteinases implicated in tumor progression and metastasis

Name	Type	Inhibitors	Localization	Physiological function
Cathepsin B	Cysteine	Cystatins (A-E)	Lysosomal	General protein turnover
Cathepsin D	Aspartic	-	Lysosomal	General protein turnover
Cathepsin L	Cysteine	Cystatins (A-F)	Lysosomal	General protein turnover
MMP-2	Metallo	TIMPs (1-4)	Extracellular	Matrix remodelling
MMP-3	Metallo	TIMPs (1-4)	Extracellular	Matrix remodelling
MMP-7	Metallo	TIMPs (1-4)	Extracellular	Matrix remodelling
MMP-9	Metallo	TIMPs (1-4)	Extracellular	Matrix remodelling
uPA	Serine	PAI-1, PAI-2	Extracellular	Fibrinolysis
tPA	Serine	PAI-1	Extracellular	Fibrinolysis

ases with matrix-degrading potential under normal, quiescent conditions. Besides plasminogen, the constitutively expressed enzymes most relevant to ECM degradation are the lysosomal proteinases cathepsin B, cathepsin D and cathepsin L[10-12] (Table 1). Other important matrix-degrading proteinases such as matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) as well as plasminogen activators are usually undetectable. However, it has been reported that fetal rat hepatocytes can be stimulated to synthesize a selected range of MMPs and plasminogen activators[13]. Furthermore, expression of certain MMPs and plasminogen activators is enhanced during liver regeneration[14,15]. Nevertheless, even in the regenerating liver, ECM proteolysis is a tightly controlled process due to the concomitantly increased synthesis of proteinase inhibitors[14].

In the following sections, we review the current knowledge about the relevance of the balance between cathepsins, matrix metalloproteinases, plasminogen activators and their respective inhibitors for HCC progression and metastasis.

LYSOSOMAL PROTEINASES (CATHEPSINS)

In recent years, significant progress has been made in the biochemical and structural characterization of lysosomal proteinases. It has been shown that these enzymes participate in physiological processes other than bulk proteolysis in the lysosomes. Three proteinases appear to be present in all mammalian lysosomes: the aspartic proteinase cathepsin D, and the cysteine proteinases cathepsin B and cathepsin L[16]. Lysosomal cysteine cathepsins belong to the papain superfamily of cysteine proteinases, whereas cathepsin D is closely related to the major digestive enzyme pepsin[17,18].

Cathepsins are usually delivered in their zymogen forms to lysosomes. The acidic internal milieu of these compartments then triggers the largely autocatalytic proteolytic maturation of the latent proenzymes[19]. The rate-limiting factor in lysosomal targeting is the capacity of the endogenous sorting receptors, which results in the secretion of varying amounts of newly-synthesized proteinase precursors[20]. Under normal circumstances, these secreted forms exhibit only insignificant proteolytic activity. However, it was shown that at least secreted procathepsin B can be seen as a latent enzyme pool, which, upon (auto)activation in the acidic microenvironment around tumor cells, may cause local proteolysis[21].

Cathepsins can promote tumor invasion in different ways: (1) by direct cleavage of ECM/basement membrane components; (2) by activation of other proteinases[22-24] which in turn degrade ECM components; or (3) by cleavage of cell adhesion proteins on the cell surface, thus initiating the disruption of intercellular junctions[25].

CYSTEINE CATHEPSINS AND LIVER CANCER

The human genome encodes 11 cysteine cathepsins (B, C, F, H, L, K, O, S, V, X and W), all structurally closely related to the prototypic plant cysteine proteinase papain[26]. Cysteine cathepsins are often upregulated in various human cancers, and have been implicated in distinct tumorigenic processes such as angiogenesis, proliferation, apoptosis and invasion[7,25]. Using cathepsin knock-out mice, various groups have recently provided strong evidence for distinct functions of individual cathepsins in tumor progression and metastasis[27-29]. To date, the lysosomal cysteine proteinase most thoroughly studied in the context of cancer is cathepsin B, which has been reported to promote tumorigenesis in multiple ways[27,29,30].

So far, very little is known about cysteine cathepsins in liver cancer. However, there is some evidence that cathepsin B (CB) contributes to the invasive potential of hepatoma cells. Early studies reported differences between the subcellular distributions of CB in highly invasive murine Hepa cl9 hepatoma cells and normal hepatocytes, with significantly more CB associated with non-lysosomal membranes/vesicles in the tumor cells. This was attributed to transformation-induced changes to intracellular CB trafficking[31], a hypothesis further substantiated by subsequent morphological studies. While the enzyme was found to be restricted to perinuclear (presumably lysosomal) vesicles in an embryonic liver cell line, it was detected in vesicles adjacent to the cell membrane and in localized regions (possibly caveolae) of the surface of Hepa cl9 cells[32]. Evidence for the association of CB with caveolae in

tumor cells has been provided[33]. Moreover, it was found that CB synthesis and activity is significantly higher in Hepa cl9 cells than in normal liver cells[34]. Hence, these findings support the notion that alterations in the expression and subcellular distribution of CB contribute to the invasiveness and the metastatic potential of HCCs.

A detailed analysis of the biosynthesis and intracellular transport of another cysteine cathepsin, cathepsin C, in rat Morris hepatoma 7777 cells also revealed unusual features[35]. This can be at least partially explained by the deficiency of these cells in the main lysosomal sorting receptor, the mannose 6-phosphate/insulin-like growth factor Ⅱ receptor (M6P/IGF2R), a protein frequently absent and/or mutated in HCCs[36-38]. Intracellular sorting of cathepsin C in Morris hepatoma 7777 cells appears to involve MPR46, the second mammalian M6P receptor[39]. However, there is also evidence for M6P-independent membrane association and lysosomal delivery of cathepsin C in these cells[40].

In healthy tissue, the endogenous activities of cysteine cathepsins are tightly regulated by specific protein inhibitors, the cystatins. Type I cystatins (stefins) are located in the cytosol, whereas type Ⅱ cystatins are secretory proteins[41]. Alterations to the balance between cysteine cathepsins and cystatins have been postulated to contribute to tumor growth and malignant progression in various cancers[42]. Indeed, ectopic expression of cystatin C has been shown to reduce the tumorigenic and invasive potential of cancer cells[43,44]. Conversely, genetic ablation of this cystatin accelerated angiogenesis and tumor proliferation in a pancreatic cancer model[28]. Only very few reports have dealt so far with the role of cystatins in liver cancer. In one study, no obvious differences were found between the subcellular localizations of stefin A, stefin B and cystatin C in murine Hep cl9 hepatoma and embryonic liver cells[32]. However, a unique membrane-associated form of stefin A has been isolated from Hep cl9 tumors[45]. An intriguing novel cystatin, cystatin F, was identified in a screen for genes associated with liver metastasis[46]. The subcellular localization of cystatin F is highly unusual since this proteinase inhibitor is delivered to endosomal and lysosomal compartments[47,48]. It remains to be established whether the presence of cystatin F in lysosomes relates rather to the pro- than anti-invasive activity of this cystatin in malignant tumor cells.

CATHEPSIN D AND LIVER CANCER

The aspartic proteinase most extensively investigated in the context of cancer is cathepsin D (CD), with a particular emphasis on its role in breast cancer[49]. Comparatively little information is available on the relevance of this proteinase for liver cancer. CD was found to display a higher activity in hepatoma tissue than in normal human liver tissue. Interestingly, this coincided with an elevated M6P content of hepatoma cathepsin D[50]. Furthermore, the secretion of CD was markedly elevated in M6P/IGF2R-deficient rat Morris hepatoma 7777 cells when compared with normal hepatocytes. These cell types also differed in their ability to process CD into its mature forms. Remarkably, intracellular retention of CD in Morris hepatoma 7777 cells was largely insensitive to treatment with lysosomotropic bases, which are known to perturb M6P-dependent transport to lysosomes[51]. A similar observation was made for M6/IGF2R-positive human HepG2 hepatoma cells[52], thus ruling out that this phenomenon is linked to the M6P/IGF2R status of the cells. For HepG2 cells, evidence has been provided that biosynthetic transport of CD to lysosomes can occur in a M6P-independent manner[53]. This could be at least partially due to the transient association of procathepsin D with prosaposin[54]. It has been shown that prosaposin can undergo lysosomal delivery in the absence of a functional M6P receptor system, possibly via interaction with sortilin[55,56].

MMPS, TIMPS AND LIVER CANCER

More than 25 human proteins and plenty of homologues from other species are known to make up the MMP (matrix metalloproteinase) family. MMPs are classified into five subgroups regarding their preferential degradation of different matrix substrates: interstitial collagenases, type Ⅳ collagenases/gelatinases, matrilysins, stromelysins and membrane-type MMPs (MT-MMPs). Most MMPs contain several conserved functional domains, including a catalytic domain containing a highly conserved zinc-binding site and a hemopexin-like domain involved in substrate recognition[57-59]. All MMPs are initially synthesized as latent precursors. Conversion into the respective active species requires proteolytic removal of the inhibitory prodomain by other MMPs, serine proteinases or cathepsins[24,60-62].

MMPs are suggested as key regulators of tumor growth and metastasis. Based on their enzymatic properties, the MMPs most relevant to tumor invasion and metastasis are the type Ⅳ collagenases/gelatinases. The most prominent gelatinases, MMP-2 (gelatinase A) and MMP-9 (gelatinase B), are able to degrade type Ⅳ collagen and other components of the basement membrane, which is the first barrier tumor cells have to break through during metastatic dissemination[63]. Studies in transgenic mice have highlighted the importance of MMP-2 and MMP-9 for cancer progression and tumor invasion[64-66]. However, it should be pointed out that certain MMPs such as MMP-8 can also exhibit anti-invasive properties[67].

The biological activities of MMPs are controlled by TIMPs (tissue inhibitors of metalloproteinases), which act through the formation of a tight, noncovalent complex with their cognate enzymes. TIMP-1, TIMP-2 and TIMP-4 are soluble proteins, whereas TIMP-3 is membrane-bound[60,63].

Several MMPs have been implicated in liver cancer.

The induction/upregulation of various MMPs (e.g. MMP-2, MMP-3, MMP-7 and/or MMP-9) has been detected in tumorous liver tissue obtained from HCC patients[4,68,69]. Furthermore, synthesis of MMP-2 was observed in several malignant HCC cell lines, whereas their benign counterparts appear to lack this proteinase[70]. Moreover, the production of MMP-9 in transformed murine hepatocytes can be triggered by induction of epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition, concomitant with the acquisition of invasive properties[71]. Interestingly, hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) has been found to induce the synthesis of several MMPs in hepatoma cells. In particular, stromelysin-1 (MMP-3) became clearly detectable upon HGF stimulation of human HepG2 hepatoma cells. Intriguingly, invasion of HGF-treated HepG2 cells could be blocked by a synthetic MMP inhibitor as well as by antibodies to MMP-3. These results suggest that transformation-associated changes in MMP expression contribute to the invasive activity of malignant HCC cells[69].

Metastatic dissemination of tumor cells is also facilitated by reduced endogenous TIMP levels. It has been observed that the serum and tissue levels of hepatic TIMP-2 are significantly higher in HCC patients without metastasis than in those with metastatic disease. In the latter cases, both primary HCC tissues and intrahepatic metastases displayed low TIMP-2 levels. This qualifies TIMP-2 as an important prognostic factor in HCC patients[2].

It has been reported that antisense-mediated reduction of TIMP-1 accelerates tumor formation and disease progression in a mouse model of HCC. Conversely, ectopic overexpression of hepatic TIMP-1 interferes with oncogene-induced tumorigenesis. High TIMP-1 levels were found to inhibit tumor initiation as well as the progression to later stages in HCC development[72]. Using the same transgenic mouse strains, further studies revealed that TIMP-1 overexpression inhibits oncogene-induced hepatocarcinogenesis largely by reducing hepatocellular proliferation and tumor vascularization[73]. This was found to be due to the reduced levels of bioactive insulin-like growth factor Ⅱ (IGF-Ⅱ) in TIMP-1 overexpressing animals. It was postulated that the presence of ectopic TIMP-1 leads to reduced proteolysis of IGF-binding protein-3 (IGFBP-3) and thus elevated IGFBP-3 levels, which in turn lower the bioavailability of IGF-Ⅱ[74].

Collectively, these findings suggest that imbalances between MMPs and TIMPs may enhance the proteolytic load in HCC tissues and thus promote HCC progression and metastasis.

THE PLASMINOGEN ACTIVATING SYSTEM (UPA, UPAR, PAI-1) AND LIVER CANCER

Plasminogen activation plays an important role in tumor invasion and metastasis. This proteinase precursor circulates in the pericellular environment, waiting to be activated by proteolytic maturation. Plasminogen can be activated by either of two types of plasminogen activators: tissue-type plasminogen activator (tPA), or urokinase-type plasminogen activator (uPA). The precursor forms of tPA and uPA display significant enzymatic activity, but the catalytic efficiency of uPA is strongly increased by plasmin-mediated proteolytic processing[75,76]. The biological activities of uPA and tPA are controlled by two plasminogen activator inhibitors, PAI-1 and PAI-2. uPA is the enzyme of higher relevance for tumor biology, which is at least partially due to the occurrence of a cellular uPA receptor (uPAR). uPAR is a glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI)-anchored protein located at the cell surface where it binds uPA, which in turn interacts with plasminogen and activates the latter. In tumors, uPA is concentrated at focal adhesion points through association with uPAR, which is enriched in these regions. Thus, the highly specific ternary interaction of plasminogen, uPA and uPAR permits strictly regulated local proteolysis of ECM components at the contact sites between tumor cells and the basement membrane[77]. Studies in uPA-deficient mice have provided evidence for a decisive role of this proteinase in tumor progression and metastasis[78].

The expression of tPA in normal, quiescent liver is low or undetectable. However, stimulation of tPA synthesis is observed during hepatocyte proliferation[79]. Within normal quiescent liver tissue, uPA synthesis appears to be mainly due to the presence of non-parenchymal cells such as hepatic stellate cells and Kupffer cells. However, hepatocytes have the capacity to produce uPA when induced to proliferate[80]. In this context, it should be noted that uPA, via its capacity to trigger HGF activation[81], appears to play a crucial role in liver regeneration[82].

Interestingly, both plasminogen activators and uPAR are readily detectable in HCC tissues[83,84]. Among the components of the plasminogen activation system, uPA appears to be the most useful diagnostic indicator for intra-hepatic metastasis and a reliable prognostic factor for HCC recurrence[85]. Furthermore, the cumulative presence of uPA, uPAR and PAI-1 is a good predictor of HCC invasion and metastasis[84]. The cellular source of uPA and uPAR in HCC is still unresolved, since the expression of uPA and uPAR in HCC tissues appears to be largely confined to stromal and inflammatory cells[86]. However, human hepatoma cells produce uPA upon stimulation with HGF[87]. Furthermore, the invasiveness of HGF-treated HepG2 cells could be reduced by pharmacological uPA inhibition[88]. This suggests that uPA is a promising target for HCC therapy.

CONCLUSION

HCC is a severe and common disease all over the world. Novel drugs for HCC treatment are urgently needed. In the last decades, considerable information has been

gained about the role of matrix-degrading proteinases and their inhibitors in this disease. A number of proteinases and proteinase inhibitors have been identified as new markers for the prediction of HCC outcome. The available data suggest that synthetic proteinase inhibitors could be used to prevent HCC progression and metastasis. Given this knowledge, it appears possible that both HCC diagnosis and, hopefully, also its therapy, can be improved in the near future.

REFERENCES

1 **Peto J**. Cancer epidemiology in the last century and the next decade. *Nature* 2001; **411**: 390-395
2 **Giannelli G**, Bergamini C, Marinosci F, Fransvea E, Quaranta M, Lupo L, Schiraldi O, Antonaci S. Clinical role of MMP-2/TIMP-2 imbalance in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Int J Cancer* 2002; **97**: 425-431
3 **Ooi LP**, Crawford DH, Gotley DC, Clouston AD, Strong RW, Gobe GC, Halliday JW, Bridle KR, Ramm GA. Evidence that "myofibroblast-like" cells are the cellular source of capsular collagen in hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Hepatol* 1997; **26**: 798-807
4 **Yamamoto H**, Itoh F, Adachi Y, Sakamoto H, Adachi M, Hinoda Y, Imai K. Relation of enhanced secretion of active matrix metalloproteinases with tumor spread in human hepatocellular carcinoma. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **112**: 1290-1296
5 **Sidenius N**, Blasi F. The urokinase plasminogen activator system in cancer: recent advances and implication for prognosis and therapy. *Cancer Metastasis Rev* 2003; **22**: 205-222
6 **Deryugina EI**, Quigley JP. Matrix metalloproteinases and tumor metastasis. *Cancer Metastasis Rev* 2006; **25**: 9-34
7 **Mohamed MM**, Sloane BF. Cysteine cathepsins: multifunctional enzymes in cancer. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2006; **6**: 764-775
8 **Liotta LA**, Kohn EC. The microenvironment of the tumour-host interface. *Nature* 2001; **411**: 375-379
9 **Ray JM**, Stetler-Stevenson WG. Gelatinase A activity directly modulates melanoma cell adhesion and spreading. *EMBO J* 1995; **14**: 908-917
10 **Nishimura Y**, Amano J, Sato H, Tsuji H, Kato K. Biosynthesis of lysosomal cathepsins B and H in cultured rat hepatocytes. *Arch Biochem Biophys* 1988; **262**: 159-170
11 **Nishimura Y**, Furuno K, Kato K. Biosynthesis and processing of lysosomal cathepsin L in primary cultures of rat hepatocytes. *Arch Biochem Biophys* 1988; **263**: 107-116
12 **Nishimura Y**, Kato K, Furuno K, Himeno M. Biosynthesis and processing of lysosomal cathepsin D in primary cultures of rat hepatocytes. *Biol Pharm Bull* 1995; **18**: 825-828
13 **Callejas NA**, Casado M, Diaz-Guerra MJ, Bosca L, Martin-Sanz P. Expression of cyclooxygenase-2 promotes the release of matrix metalloproteinase-2 and -9 in fetal rat hepatocytes. *Hepatology* 2001; **33**: 860-867
14 **Bisgaard HC**, Santoni-Rugiu E, Nagy P, Thorgeirsson SS. Modulation of the plasminogen activator/plasmin system in rat liver regenerating by recruitment of oval cells. *Lab Invest* 1998; **78**: 237-246
15 **Kim TH**, Mars WM, Stolz DB, Michalopoulos GK. Expression and activation of pro-MMP-2 and pro-MMP-9 during rat liver regeneration. *Hepatology* 2000; **31**: 75-82
16 **Turk B**, Turk D, Turk V. Lysosomal cysteine proteases: more than scavengers. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2000; **1477**: 98-111
17 **Rawlings ND**, Barrett AJ. Evolutionary families of peptidases. *Biochem J* 1993; **290** (Pt 1): 205-218
18 **Rawlings ND**, Morton FR, Barrett AJ. MEROPS: the peptidase database. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2006; **34**: D270-D272
19 **Mach L**, Mort JS, Glossl J. Maturation of human procathepsin B. Proenzyme activation and proteolytic processing of the precursor to the mature proteinase, in vitro, are primarily unimolecular processes. *J Biol Chem* 1994; **269**: 13030-13035
20 **Mach L**, Stuwe K, Hagen A, Ballaun C, Glossl J. Proteolytic processing and glycosylation of cathepsin B. The role of the primary structure of the latent precursor and of the carbohydrate moiety for cell-type-specific molecular forms of the enzyme. *Biochem J* 1992; **282** (Pt 2): 577-582
21 **Mach L**, Mort JS, Glossl J. Noncovalent complexes between the lysosomal proteinase cathepsin B and its propeptide account for stable, extracellular, high molecular mass forms of the enzyme. *J Biol Chem* 1994; **269**: 13036-13040
22 **Kobayashi H**, Schmitt M, Goretzki L, Chucholowski N, Calvete J, Kramer M, Gunzler WA, Janicke F, Graeff H. Cathepsin B efficiently activates the soluble and the tumor cell receptor-bound form of the proenzyme urokinase-type plasminogen activator (Pro-uPA). *J Biol Chem* 1991; **266**: 5147-5152
23 **Goretzki L**, Schmitt M, Mann K, Calvete J, Chucholowski N, Kramer M, Gunzler WA, Janicke F, Graeff H. Effective activation of the proenzyme form of the urokinase-type plasminogen activator (pro-uPA) by the cysteine protease cathepsin L. *FEBS Lett* 1992; **297**: 112-118
24 **Murphy G**, Ward R, Gavrilovic J, Atkinson S. Physiological mechanisms for metalloproteinase activation. *Matrix Suppl* 1992; **1**: 224-230
25 **Gocheva V**, Joyce JA. Cysteine cathepsins and the cutting edge of cancer invasion. *Cell Cycle* 2007; **6**: 60-64
26 **Turk V**, Turk B, Turk D. Lysosomal cysteine proteases: facts and opportunities. *EMBO J* 2001; **20**: 4629-4633
27 **Gocheva V**, Zeng W, Ke D, Klimstra D, Reinheckel T, Peters C, Hanahan D, Joyce JA. Distinct roles for cysteine cathepsin genes in multistage tumorigenesis. *Genes Dev* 2006; **20**: 543-556
28 **Wang B**, Sun J, Kitamoto S, Yang M, Grubb A, Chapman HA, Kalluri R, Shi GP. Cathepsin S controls angiogenesis and tumor growth via matrix-derived angiogenic factors. *J Biol Chem* 2006; **281**: 6020-6029
29 **Vasiljeva O**, Papazoglou A, Kruger A, Brodoefel H, Korovin M, Deussing J, Augustin N, Nielsen BS, Almholt K, Bogyo M, Peters C, Reinheckel T. Tumor cell-derived and macrophage-derived cathepsin B promotes progression and lung metastasis of mammary cancer. *Cancer Res* 2006; **66**: 5242-5250
30 **Vasiljeva O**, Korovin M, Gajda M, Brodoefel H, Bojic L, Kruger A, Schurigt U, Sevenich L, Turk B, Peters C, Reinheckel T. Reduced tumour cell proliferation and delayed development of high-grade mammary carcinomas in cathepsin B-deficient mice. *Oncogene* 2008; **27**: 4191-4199
31 **Sloane BF**, Rozhin J, Hatfield JS, Crissman JD, Honn KV. Plasma membrane-associated cysteine proteinases in human and animal tumors. *Exp Cell Biol* 1987; **55**: 209-224
32 **Calkins CC**, Sameni M, Koblinski J, Sloane BF, Moin K. Differential localization of cysteine protease inhibitors and a target cysteine protease, cathepsin B, by immuno-confocal microscopy. *J Histochem Cytochem* 1998; **46**: 745-751
33 **Cavallo-Medved D**, Mai J, Dosescu J, Sameni M, Sloane BF. Caveolin-1 mediates the expression and localization of cathepsin B, pro-urokinase plasminogen activator and their cell-surface receptors in human colorectal carcinoma cells. *J Cell Sci* 2005; **118**: 1493-1503
34 **Moin K**, Rozhin J, McKernan TB, Sanders VJ, Fong D, Honn KV, Sloane BF. Enhanced levels of cathepsin B mRNA in murine tumors. *FEBS Lett* 1989; **244**: 61-64
35 **Mainferme F**, Wattiaux R, von Figura K. Synthesis, transport and processing of cathepsin C in Morris hepatoma 7777 cells and rat hepatocytes. *Eur J Biochem* 1985; **153**: 211-216
36 **De Souza AT**, Hankins GR, Washington MK, Orton TC, Jirtle RL. M6P/IGF2R gene is mutated in human hepatocellular

carcinomas with loss of heterozygosity. *Nat Genet* 1995; **11**: 447-449
37 **Yamada T**, De Souza AT, Finkelstein S, Jirtle RL. Loss of the gene encoding mannose 6-phosphate/insulin-like growth factor II receptor is an early event in liver carcinogenesis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1997; **94**: 10351-10355
38 **Oka Y**, Waterland RA, Killian JK, Nolan CM, Jang HS, Tohara K, Sakaguchi S, Yao T, Iwashita A, Yata Y, Takahara T, Sato S, Suzuki K, Masuda T, Jirtle RL. M6P/IGF2R tumor suppressor gene mutated in hepatocellular carcinomas in Japan. *Hepatology* 2002; **35**: 1153-1163
39 **Stein M**, Zijderhand-Bleekemolen JE, Geuze H, Hasilik A, von Figura K. Mr 46,000 mannose 6-phosphate specific receptor: its role in targeting of lysosomal enzymes. *EMBO J* 1987; **6**: 2677-2681
40 **Burge V**, Mainferme F, Wattiaux R. Transient membrane association of the precursors of cathepsin C during their transfer into lysosomes. *Biochem J* 1991; **275** (Pt 3): 797-800
41 **Turk V**, Bode W. The cystatins: protein inhibitors of cysteine proteinases. *FEBS Lett* 1991; **285**: 213-219
42 **Calkins CC**, Sloane BF. Mammalian cysteine protease inhibitors: biochemical properties and possible roles in tumor progression. *Biol Chem Hoppe Seyler* 1995; **376**: 71-80
43 **Coulibaly S**, Schwihla H, Abrahamson M, Albini A, Cerni C, Clark JL, Ng KM, Katunuma N, Schlappack O, Glossl J, Mach L. Modulation of invasive properties of murine squamous carcinoma cells by heterologous expression of cathepsin B and cystatin C. *Int J Cancer* 1999; **83**: 526-531
44 **Konduri SD**, Yanamandra N, Siddique K, Joseph A, Dinh DH, Olivero WC, Gujrati M, Kouraklis G, Swaroop A, Kyritsis AP, Rao JS. Modulation of cystatin C expression impairs the invasive and tumorigenic potential of human glioblastoma cells. *Oncogene* 2002; **21**: 8705-8712
45 **Moin K**, Emmert LT, Sloane BF. A membrane-associated cysteine protease inhibitor from murine hepatoma. *FEBS Lett* 1992; **309**: 279-282
46 **Morita M**, Yoshiuchi N, Arakawa H, Nishimura S. CMAP: a novel cystatin-like gene involved in liver metastasis. *Cancer Res* 1999; **59**: 151-158
47 **Langerholc T**, Zavasnik-Bergant V, Turk B, Turk V, Abrahamson M, Kos J. Inhibitory properties of cystatin F and its localization in U937 promonocyte cells. *FEBS J* 2005; **272**: 1535-1545
48 **Hamilton G**, Colbert JD, Schuettelkopf AW, Watts C. Cystatin F is a cathepsin C-directed protease inhibitor regulated by proteolysis. *EMBO J* 2008; **27**: 499-508
49 **Liaudet-Coopman E**, Beaujouin M, Derocq D, Garcia M, Glondu-Lassis M, Laurent-Matha V, Prebois C, Rochefort H, Vignon F. Cathepsin D: newly discovered functions of a long-standing aspartic protease in cancer and apoptosis. *Cancer Lett* 2006; **237**: 167-179
50 **Maguchi S**, Taniguchi N, Makita A. Elevated activity and increased mannose-6-phosphate in the carbohydrate moiety of cathepsin D from human hepatoma. *Cancer Res* 1988; **48**: 362-367
51 **Isidoro C**, Demoz M, De Stefanis D, Mainferme F, Wattiaux R, Baccino FM. Altered intracellular processing and enhanced secretion of procathepsin D in a highly deviated rat hepatoma. *Int J Cancer* 1995; **60**: 61-64
52 **Isidoro C**, Baccino FM, Hasilik A. Mis-sorting of procathepsin D in metastogenic tumor cells is not due to impaired synthesis of the phosphomannosyl signal. *Int J Cancer* 1997; **70**: 561-566
53 **Rijnboutt S**, Kal AJ, Geuze HJ, Aerts H, Strous GJ. Mannose 6-phosphate-independent targeting of cathepsin D to lysosomes in HepG2 cells. *J Biol Chem* 1991; **266**: 23586-23592
54 **Zhu Y**, Conner GE. Intermolecular association of lysosomal protein precursors during biosynthesis. *J Biol Chem* 1994; **269**: 3846-3851
55 **Vielhaber G**, Hurwitz R, Sandhoff K. Biosynthesis, processing, and targeting of sphingolipid activator protein (SAP) precursor in cultured human fibroblasts. Mannose 6-phosphate receptor-independent endocytosis of SAP precursor. *J Biol Chem* 1996; **271**: 32438-32446
56 **Lefrancois S**, Zeng J, Hassan AJ, Canuel M, Morales CR. The lysosomal trafficking of sphingolipid activator proteins (SAPs) is mediated by sortilin. *EMBO J* 2003; **22**: 6430-6437
57 **Stetler-Stevenson WG**, Yu AE. Proteases in invasion: matrix metalloproteinases. *Semin Cancer Biol* 2001; **11**: 143-152
58 **Vihinen P**, Kahari VM. Matrix metalloproteinases in cancer: prognostic markers and therapeutic targets. *Int J Cancer* 2002; **99**: 157-166
59 **Egeblad M**, Werb Z. New functions for the matrix metalloproteinases in cancer progression. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2002; **2**: 161-174
60 **Ellerbroek SM**, Stack MS. Membrane associated matrix metalloproteinases in metastasis. *Bioessays* 1999; **21**: 940-949
61 **Ogata Y**, Enghild JJ, Nagase H. Matrix metalloproteinase 3 (stromelysin) activates the precursor for the human matrix metalloproteinase 9. *J Biol Chem* 1992; **267**: 3581-3584
62 **Sato H**, Takino T, Okada Y, Cao J, Shinagawa A, Yamamoto E, Seiki M. A matrix metalloproteinase expressed on the surface of invasive tumour cells. *Nature* 1994; **370**: 61-65
63 **Chambers AF**, Matrisian LM. Changing views of the role of matrix metalloproteinases in metastasis. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1997; **89**: 1260-1270
64 **Itoh T**, Tanioka M, Yoshida H, Yoshioka T, Nishimoto H, Itohara S. Reduced angiogenesis and tumor progression in gelatinase A-deficient mice. *Cancer Res* 1998; **58**: 1048-1051
65 **Coussens LM**, Tinkle CL, Hanahan D, Werb Z. MMP-9 supplied by bone marrow-derived cells contributes to skin carcinogenesis. *Cell* 2000; **103**: 481-490
66 **Bergers G**, Brekken R, McMahon G, Vu TH, Itoh T, Tamaki K, Tanzawa K, Thorpe P, Itohara S, Werb Z, Hanahan D. Matrix metalloproteinase-9 triggers the angiogenic switch during carcinogenesis. *Nat Cell Biol* 2000; **2**: 737-744
67 **Balbin M**, Fueyo A, Tester AM, Pendas AM, Pitiot AS, Astudillo A, Overall CM, Shapiro SD, Lopez-Otin C. Loss of collagenase-2 confers increased skin tumor susceptibility to male mice. *Nat Genet* 2003; **35**: 252-257
68 **Maatta M**, Soini Y, Liakka A, Autio-Harmainen H. Differential expression of matrix metalloproteinase (MMP)-2, MMP-9, and membrane type 1-MMP in hepatocellular and pancreatic adenocarcinoma: implications for tumor progression and clinical prognosis. *Clin Cancer Res* 2000; **6**: 2726-2734
69 **Monvoisin A**, Bisson C, Si-Tayeb K, Balabaud C, Desmouliere A, Rosenbaum J. Involvement of matrix metalloproteinase type-3 in hepatocyte growth factor-induced invasion of human hepatocellular carcinoma cells. *Int J Cancer* 2002; **97**: 157-162
70 **Giannelli G**, Bergamini C, Fransvea E, Marinosci F, Quaranta V, Antonaci S. Human hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) cells require both alpha3beta1 integrin and matrix metalloproteinases activity for migration and invasion. *Lab Invest* 2001; **81**: 613-627
71 **Gotzmann J**, Huber H, Thallinger C, Wolschek M, Jansen B, Schulte-Hermann R, Beug H, Mikulits W. Hepatocytes convert to a fibroblastoid phenotype through the cooperation of TGF-beta1 and Ha-Ras: steps towards invasiveness. *J Cell Sci* 2002; **115**: 1189-1202
72 **Martin DC**, Ruther U, Sanchez-Sweatman OH, Orr FW, Khokha R. Inhibition of SV40 T antigen-induced hepatocellular carcinoma in TIMP-1 transgenic mice. *Oncogene* 1996; **13**: 569-576
73 **Martin DC**, Sanchez-Sweatman OH, Ho AT, Inderdeo DS, Tsao MS, Khokha R. Transgenic TIMP-1 inhibits simian virus 40 T antigen-induced hepatocarcinogenesis by impairment of hepatocellular proliferation and tumor angiogenesis. *Lab Invest* 1999; **79**: 225-234

74 **Martin DC**, Fowlkes JL, Babic B, Khokha R. Insulin-like growth factor II signaling in neoplastic proliferation is blocked by transgenic expression of the metalloproteinase inhibitor TIMP-1. *J Cell Biol* 1999; **146**: 881-892

75 **Haigwood NL**, Mullenbach GT, Moore GK, DesJardin LE, Tabrizi A, Brown-Shimer SL, Stauss H, Stohr HA, Paques EP. Variants of human tissue-type plasminogen activator substituted at the protease cleavage site and glycosylation sites, and truncated at the N- and C-termini. *Protein Eng* 1989; **2**: 611-620

76 **Lijnen HR**, Van Hoef B, Nelles L, Collen D. Plasminogen activation with single-chain urokinase-type plasminogen activator (scu-PA). Studies with active site mutagenized plasminogen (Ser740----Ala) and plasmin-resistant scu-PA (Lys158----Glu). *J Biol Chem* 1990; **265**: 5232-5236

77 **Andreasen PA**, Egelund R, Petersen HH. The plasminogen activation system in tumor growth, invasion, and metastasis. *Cell Mol Life Sci* 2000; **57**: 25-40

78 **Frandsen TL**, Holst-Hansen C, Nielsen BS, Christensen IJ, Nyengaard JR, Carmeliet P, Brunner N. Direct evidence of the importance of stromal urokinase plasminogen activator (uPA) in the growth of an experimental human breast cancer using a combined uPA gene-disrupted and immunodeficient xenograft model. *Cancer Res* 2001; **61**: 532-537

79 **Uno S**, Nakamura M, Seki T, Ariga T. Induction of tissue-type plasminogen activator (tPA) and type-1 plasminogen activator inhibitor (PAI-1) as early growth responses in rat hepatocytes in primary culture. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1997; **239**: 123-128

80 **Mars WM**, Kim TH, Stolz DB, Liu ML, Michalopoulos GK. Presence of urokinase in serum-free primary rat hepatocyte cultures and its role in activating hepatocyte growth factor. *Cancer Res* 1996; **56**: 2837-2843

81 **Naldini L**, Vigna E, Bardelli A, Follenzi A, Galimi F, Comoglio PM. Biological activation of pro-HGF (hepatocyte growth factor) by urokinase is controlled by a stoichiometric reaction. *J Biol Chem* 1995; **270**: 603-611

82 **Shimizu M**, Hara A, Okuno M, Matsuno H, Okada K, Ueshima S, Matsuo O, Niwa M, Akita K, Yamada Y, Yoshimi N, Uematsu T, Kojima S, Friedman SL, Moriwaki H, Mori H. Mechanism of retarded liver regeneration in plasminogen activator-deficient mice: impaired activation of hepatocyte growth factor after Fas-mediated massive hepatic apoptosis. *Hepatology* 2001; **33**: 569-576

83 **De Petro G**, Tavian D, Copeta A, Portolani N, Giulini SM, Barlati S. Expression of urokinase-type plasminogen activator (u-PA), u-PA receptor, and tissue-type PA messenger RNAs in human hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer Res* 1998; **58**: 2234-2239

84 **Zheng Q**, Tang ZY, Xue Q, Shi DR, Song HY, Tang HB. Invasion and metastasis of hepatocellular carcinoma in relation to urokinase-type plasminogen activator, its receptor and inhibitor. *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol* 2000; **126**: 641-646

85 **Itoh T**, Hayashi Y, Kanamaru T, Morita Y, Suzuki S, Wang W, Zhou L, Rui JA, Yamamoto M, Kuroda Y, Itoh H. Clinical significance of urokinase-type plasminogen activator activity in hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2000; **15**: 422-430

86 **Dubuisson L**, Monvoisin A, Nielsen BS, Le Bail B, Bioulac-Sage P, Rosenbaum J. Expression and cellular localization of the urokinase-type plasminogen activator and its receptor in human hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Pathol* 2000; **190**: 190-195

87 **Kamiyama T**, Une Y, Uchino J, Hamada J. Hepatocyte growth factor enhances the invasion activity of human hepatocellular carcinoma cell lines. *Int J Oncol* 1998; **12**: 655-659

88 **Monvoisin A**, Neaud V, De Ledinghen V, Dubuisson L, Balabaud C, Bioulac-Sage P, Desmouliere A, Rosenbaum J. Direct evidence that hepatocyte growth factor-induced invasion of hepatocellular carcinoma cells is mediated by urokinase. *J Hepatol* 1999; **30**: 511-518

S- Editor Zhang HN **L- Editor** Herholdt A **E- Editor** Ma WH

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.35

World J Hepatol 2009 October 31; 1(1): 35-42
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

GUIDELINES FOR BASIC SCIENCE

Multistep carcinogenesis of perihilar cholangiocarcinoma arising in the intrahepatic large bile ducts

Yasuni Nakanuma, Motoko Sasaki, Yasunori Sato, Xiangshan Ren, Hiroko Ikeda, Kenichi Harada

Yasuni Nakanuma, Motoko Sasaki, Yasunori Sato, Xiangshan Ren, Kenichi Harada, Department of Human Pathology, Kanazawa University Graduate School of Medicine, Kanazawa 920-8640, Japan
Hiroko Ikeda, Department of Diagnostic Pathology, Kanazawa University Hospital, Kanazawa 920-8640, Japan
Author contributions: Nakanuma Y contributed to a half of this review, and the remaining five authors equally contributed to a half of this review.
Correspondence to: Yasuni Nakanuma, MD, Department of Human Pathology, Kanazawa University Graduate School of Medicine, Kanazawa 920-8640, Japan. pbcpsc@kenroku.kanazawa-u.ac.jp
Telephone: +81-76-2652197 Fax: +81-76-2344229
Received: May 25, 2009 Revised: September 8, 2009
Accepted: September 15, 2009
Published online: October 31, 2009

Abstract

Flat-type "biliary intraepithelial neoplasia (BilIN)" and papillary-type "intraductal papillary neoplasm of the bile duct (IPN-B)" are proposed as precursors of invasive, perihilar intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma (ICC). Three carcinogenetic pathways are proposed: BilIN progressing to tubular adenocarcinoma, and IPN-B progressing to tubular adenocarcinoma or to colloid carcinoma. Carcinogenesis *via* BilIN was characterized by mucin core protein 2-/cytokeratin 20-(MUC2-/CK20-) with MUC1 expression, while carcinogenesis *via* IPN-B leading to tubular adenocarcinoma was associated with MUC1 expression or that to colloid carcinoma with MUC1-negativity. In both the BilIN and IPNB series, the expression of p21, p53, and cyclin D1 was upregulated with histological progression. Interestingly, p53 expression was upregulated at the invasive stage of BilIN, but was low in noninvasive BilIN, while p53 expression was upregulated in IPN-B1 and reached a plateau in IPN-B2 and invasive ICC. Expression of $p16^{INK4a}$, which was frequent in BilIN1, was decreased in BilIN-2/3 and invasive carcinoma. EZH2 expression showed a stepwise increase from BilIN to invasive carcinoma. Membranous expression of β-catenin and E-cadherin was more markedly decreased in ICC with BilIN than in ICC with IPNB. Interestingly, disruption of the membranous distribution of β-catenin and E-cadherin seems to result in the invasion and metastasis of carcinoma cells of BilIN and IPN-B expressing MMP-7 and MT1-MMP. Increased expression of cyclin D1 and c-myc was more frequent in the IPNB lineage than BilIN lineage, possibly related to the Wnt signaling pathway associated with the nuclear accumulation of β-catenin. In conclusion, BilIN and IPN-B progress to invasive ICC through characteristic multistep processes.

Key words: Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma; Biliary intraepithelial neoplasm; Intraductal papillary neoplasm; Mucin; Cytokeratin; Matrix metalloproteinase; Intrahepatic bile duct; Polycomb group protein

Peer reviewer: Olivier Detry, MD, PhD, Department of Abdominal Surgery and Transplantation, CHU de Liège, University of Liège, Sart Tilman B35, B4000 Liège, Belgium

Nakanuma Y, Sasaki M, Sato Y, Ren X, Ikeda H, Harada K. Multistep carcinogenesis of perihilar cholangiocarcinoma arising in the intrahepatic large bile ducts. *World J Hepatol* 2009; 1(1): 35-42 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v1/i1/35.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.35

INTRODUCTION

Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma (ICC) is a highly malignant and progressive hepatobiliary carcinoma accounting for about 5%-15% of primary malignant liver tumors[1-3]. A majority of ICCs are classified as well to moderately differentiated adenocarcinoma, and once ICC shows invasive growth, it aggressively invades the surrounding tissue and is commonly associated with distant metastasis. Because it is often diagnosed at an advanced stage, ICC has a poor prognosis[2-4]. While

ICC usually arises in an apparently normal liver, chronic cholangitis such as hepatolithiasis and primary sclerosing cholangitis, occasionally precedes its development[3-5]. While the incidence of ICC is gradually increasing in the Eastern and Western world, the mechanism underlying the malignant progression is not well understood.

Recently, studies on hepatolithiasis have identified two distinct neoplastic biliary intraepithelial lesions preceding invasive ICC[3]. The first is a flat or micropapillary growth of atypical biliary epithelium recognizable under a microscope, which has been called "biliary dysplasia"[5], and corresponds to "biliary intraepithelial neoplasia (BilIN)", one of the precursor lesions of ICC in the World Health Organization's classification of tumors[6]. The other is grossly characterized by the prominent papillary growth of atypical biliary epithelium with distinct fibrovascular cores and not-infrequent mucin over-production, which was recently termed an intraductal papillary neoplasm of the bile duct (IPN-B)[7,8]. BilIN and IPNB are now regarded as biliary counterparts of pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia and pancreatic IPMN[9,10].

There is increasing evidence that the development and progression of malignant tumors of the biliary tree and their precursor lesions are associated with multiple alterations of cell-regulatory genes such as oncogenes and anti-oncogenes[11]. Phenotypic changes such as mucin and cytokeratin expression have also been reported in ICC and its precursor lesions[12,13]. In this review, we will discuss the recent progress in studies on the precursor lesions of ICC with an emphasis on histopathologic changes and phenotypic expression, as well as molecular and genetic changes. For a better understanding of these issues, the anatomy of the biliary tree and clinicopathological classification of ICC will be briefly reviewed.

ANATOMY OF THE BILIARY TREE AND CLASSIFICATION OF ICC

Anatomy of the biliary tree

The biliary tree is divided into the intrahepatic, hilar (right and left hepatic ducts and their confluence), and extrahepatic bile ducts. The intrahepatic bile duct is a branch of the right or left hepatic duct, and the first to third branches of both hepatic ducts are known as the intrahepatic large bile ducts which are grossly visible. Intrahepatic small bile ducts are the branches of intrahepatic large bile ducts, and are classified into septal and interlobular bile ducts. Bile ductules are located at the periphery of the portal tracts[14].

Clinicopathological classification of ICC

ICC is usually divided into either the peripheral type or the perihilar type, according to the location of the tumor along the biliary tree[1,2,15,16]. Perihilar type ICC is presumed to arise from the intrahepatic large bile ducts, though the ones arising from both hepatic bile ducts and their confluence could also be included in this group when they are invasive. Peripheral ICC arises in the hepatic parenchyma. The growth pattern of ICC is also grossly classified as being mass-forming, infiltrating periductally, or growing intraductally[6,17]. A majority of ICCs are well to moderately differentiated adenocarcinomas, and, in addition, colloid carcinoma is also occasionally identifiable. A majority of perihilar ICCs show periductal infiltration or nodular type along the biliary tree, and to a lesser degree, intraductal growth, while almost all peripheral ICCs are of a mass-forming type.

HISTOPATHOLOGICAL FEATURES OF PRECURSOR LESIONS OF INVASIVE ICC ARISING IN LARGE BILE DUCTS: FLAT AND PAPILLARY LESIONS

It has recently become evident that ICCs undergo a multistep-carcinogenesis, and two types of precursor lesions of invasive ICCs have been proposed: a flat intraepithelial neoplasia (BilIN) (Figure 1A-D) and an intraductal papillary lesion (IPNB) (Figure 1E)[6,7,9,18,19]. While the former is identifiable under a microscope, the latter is identifiable on radiologic images or through macroscopic examination[6,7]. These two lesions usually occur in the large intrahepatic bile ducts, hilar bile ducts and extrahepatic bile ducts, are rarely present in the septal or interlobular bile ducts. In addition, BilIN and IPN-B occur more frequently during chronic inflammatory biliary diseases, such as hepatolithiasis, primary sclerosing cholangitis, infestation by liver flukes, as well as congenital biliary diseases[6-8,20]. When accompanied by invasive lesions, BilIN is known to progress to conventional ICC (tubular adenocarcinoma), whereas IPN-B is associated with colloid carcinoma (mucinous carcinoma) or conventional ICC (Figure 2)[7,8,21].

While the exact carcinogenetic processes *via* these two precursor lesions remains to be clarified, recent studies have shown that, during their carcinogenetic pathways, different phenotypic or genetic changes take place[14,18,22-25].

Characteristics of BilIN lineages

BilIN is histologically defined as a flat or micropapillary proliferation of atypical biliary epithelium, showing multilayering, piled-up nuclei, an increased nucleocytoplasmic ratio, a partial loss of nuclear polarity, and nuclear hyperchromasia and pleomorphism. BilINs are now classified three grades: BilIN-1 (corresponding to low-grade dysplasia), BilIN-2 (high-grade dysplasia), and BilIN-3 (carcinoma *in situ*) (Figure 1A-D)[9,19]. Briefly, BilIN-1 shows mild cellular/nuclear atypia such as nuclear membrane irregularity or nuclear enlargement with only a minimal disturbance of cellular polarity. BilIN-2 has evident cellular/nuclear atypia, but not enough to suggest an overt carcinoma, with a focal disturbance of cellular polarity. BilIN-3 shows a diffuse disturbance of cellular polarity with or without distinct cellular/nuclear atypia corresponding to an overt carcinoma, though there is no invasion beyond the basement membrane. In this review,

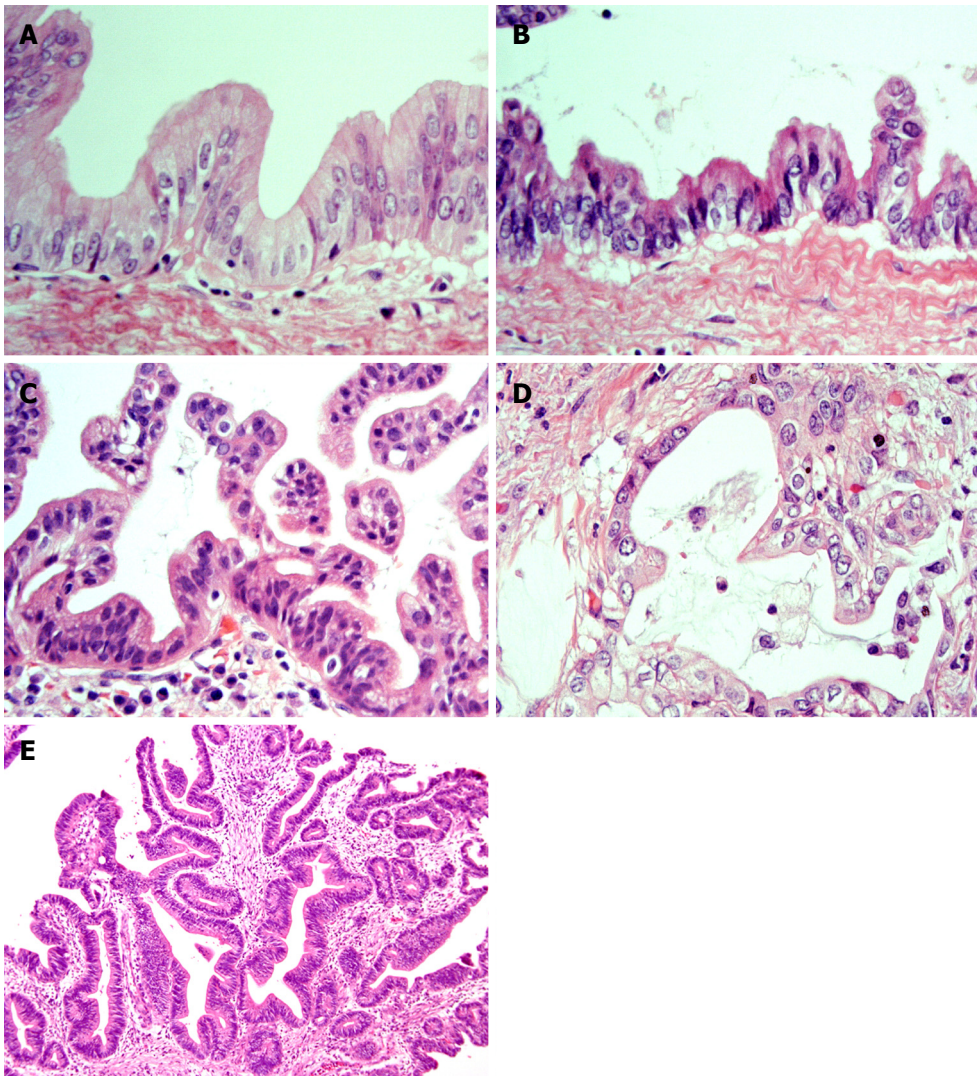


Figure 1 Representative histological features of neoplasms (HE staining). A: BilIN-1; B: BilIN-2; BilIN-3; D: Invasive ICC; E: IPN-B. BilIN: biliary intraepithelial neoplasm; ICC: intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma; IPN-B: intraductal papillary neoplasm of the bile duct[22].

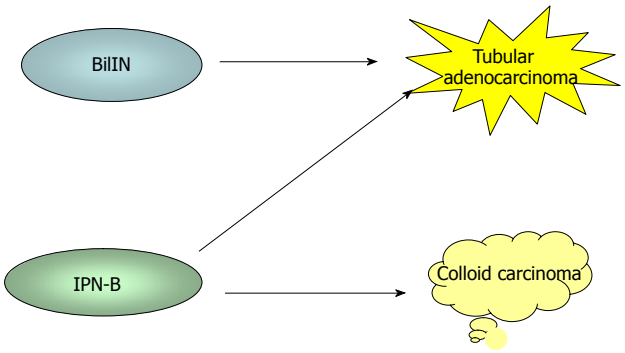


Figure 2 During biliary multistep carcinogenesis, BilIN is proposed to progresses to conventional ICC (tubular adenocarcinoma), whereas IPN-B is associated with colloid carcinoma (mucinous carcinoma) or conventional ICC.

BilIN-2 and BilIN-3 are grouped together as high-grade BilIN (BilIN-2/3). ICCs with BilIN are histologically tubular adenocarcinomas with micropapillary components, when present.

Characteristics of IPNB lineages

IPN-B has been defined as a prominent papillary proliferation of atypical biliary epithelium with distinct fibrovascular cores, showing nuclear stratification, piled-up nuclei, and nuclear enlargement (Figure 1E)[7,8,18]. Some parts show tubular components as well. IPN-B shows grossly visible papillary lesions in the saccular or cystically dilated bile ducts. All colloid carcinomas with IPN-B characteristically show macronodular lesions in contrast to the nodular growth or periductal infiltrative spread of tubular adenocarcinoma with BilIN or IPN-B. Because there are no well-established criteria for grading IPN-B, we graded IPN-B according to the World Health Organization's criteria for intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasm of the pancreas (IPMN-P)[26]. IPN-Bs were classified into two subgroups: IPN-B1 (corresponding to benign and borderline lesions of IPMN-P) and IPN-B2 (corresponding to carcinoma *in situ*). Interestingly, invasive IPN-B is of either the colloid type with variable amounts of tubular adenocarcinoma, or tubular adenocarcinoma without colloid components. Oncocytic papillary adenocarcinoma is also found in invasive areas. Recently, Shibahara *et al*[27] examined mucin-producing bile duct tumors, which are closely related to the IPN-B in this study, and reported that patients with tubular adenocarcinoma had a significantly lower rate of survival than those with mucinous (colloid) carcinoma.

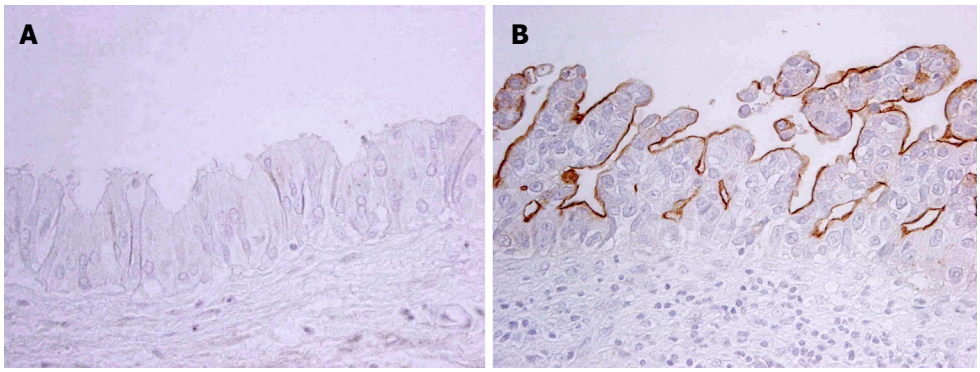


Figure 3 MUC1 is expressed in neoplastic cells of BilIN-3 (B) but not in those of BilIN1 (A) (Immunostaining). A: BilIN-1; B: BilIN-3.

EXPRESSION OF MUCIN CORE PROTEINS (MUCS) AND CYTOKERATINS (CKS) IN BILIN AND IPNB

Normal and pathologic intrahepatic bile ducts show a rather characteristic mucin and CK profile[10]. Physiologically, MUC3 and CK7 are expressed in the lining epithelium of biliary epithelial cells, though their expression is altered under pathologic conditions[14,28,29]. Interestingly, intestinal metaplasia (goblet cell metaplasia or Paneth cell metaplasia) is more frequent in cases of IPN-B than BilIN. In contrast, gastric metaplasia (foveolar or pseudopyloric gland metaplasia) was similarly observed in he BilIN and IPN-B lineages.

Expression of MUCs

The expression profile of MUCs in neoplastic biliary epithelia differed according to the pathways of the BilIN or IPN-B lineage[10]. MUC1, usually not detectable in non-neoplastic biliary epithelial cells, is expressed in one fourth of BilINs, especially in high-grade lesions (Figure 3), while it is only occasionally expressed in IPN-Bs. MUC1 is expressed in more than half of tumor cells in all ICC cases with BilIN, but is expressed in less than half of ICC cases with IPN-B. MUC5AC (gastric phenotype mucin) is frequently expressed in both BilIN lineages and IPN-B lineages in which foveolar (gastric) metaplasia is frequent. MUC2 is more commonly expressed in IPN-Bs and ICC with IPN-B while its expression is infrequent in BilINs and ICC with BilIN. Furthermore, in most cases of IPN-B, MUC2 was expressed in more than half of the neoplastic cells. Goblet cell (intestinal) metaplasia is frequently observed in IPN-B in which MUC2 expression (intestinal phenotype) is also frequent, whereas intestinal metaplasia is not frequent in BilIN lineage with no or infrequent MUC2 expression. These findings are compatible with the common occurrence of gastric metaplasia in both lineages, while intestinal metaplasia is more frequent in the IPN-B lineage.

As for the combined profile of MUC1 and MUC2 expression in each lesion, most IPN-Bs show the MUC1-/MUC2+ pattern[10,13,30]. Almost all colloid carcinomas exhibit the MUC1-/MUC2+ pattern. Tubular adenocarcinomas with IPN-B usually show MUC1+/MUC2+. These findings suggest that most non-invasive neoplastic lesions are MUC1-/MUC2+ during the carcinogenesis from IPN-B. When invasive ICC develops, a majority of tubular adenocarcinomas with IPN-B are MUC1-positive (MUC1+/MUC2+), whereas almost all colloid carcinomas retain a MUC1-negative pattern, such as MUC1-/MUC2+. In contrast, the MUC1-/MUC2- is most common in BilINs, and the frequency and degree of the MUC1+/MUC2- pattern increases stepwise in the BilIN lineage with a progression of histological grade (BilIN-1, BilIN-2/3 and ICC with BilIN). It is possible that the increased levels of MUC1 in BilIN and also IPN-B are associated with the development of tubular adenocarcinoma, while MUC1-negativity usually underlies the development of colloid carcinoma during the progression of ICC. Aberrant expression of MUC1 is reported to relate to the invasive and metastatic properties of carcinoma cells[13,30], which is consistent with the notion that colloid carcinoma negative for MUC1 has a better prognosis than tubular adenocarcinoma with BilIN or IPN-B with increased expression of MUC1.

Expression of CKs

In most cases of IPN-B or BilIN, CK7 (biliary cytokeratin) is expressed regardless of the degree of atypia, and is present in more than 10% of the tumor cells. CK20 (intestinal cytokeratin) expression is infrequent in BilINs and ICC with BilIN, while it is frequent and extensive in the IPN-B series[10]. Taken together, CK7+/CK20- is common in BilINs and ICC with BilIN, whereas CK7+/CK20+ is common in IPN-Bs and ICC with IPN-B. IPN-B with colloid carcinoma frequently shows the CK7+/CK20+ pattern.

EXPRESSION PATTERNS OF CANCER-RELATED MOLECULES IN BILIN ANDIPN-B

G1-S modulators (p21, p53, cyclin D1, and Dpc4)

Phase G1-S of the cell cycle is disrupted in the development of malignant neoplasms which is characterized by uncontrolled cell proliferation[31,32]. As modulators of G1-S, p16, p21, p53, cyclin D1 and the retinoblastoma (Rb) gene product are all important[31]. Cyclin D1 forms a complex with cyclin-dependent kinase (CDK), which phosphorylates Rb. Phosphorylated Rb allows cells to enter the S phase[33]. P16 and p21, both of which are CDK

inhibitors, can prevent cell cycle progression at the G1-S checkpoint by binding to cyclin D1/CDK complexes[34]. P53 can up-regulate p21 expression under physiological conditions[35,36]. P53 is mutated in a large number of human malignant neoplasms, and mutated p53 is immunohistochemically detectable. Interestingly, these cell-cycle accelerants or decelerators are abnormally expressed not only in advanced malignant tumors, but also in non-invasive premalignant lesions. Transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β) has several biological functions, such as epithelial growth inhibition. TGF-β signaling is transmitted to the nucleus by cooperation with TGF-β receptors on cell membranes and intracytoplasmic mediators (Smads). Smad4/Dpc4 is one of the most important regulators involved in carcinogenesis. Inactivation of the DPC4 gene is frequently reported in some types of tumors, and a tumor-suppressive property is thus suggested[37,38].

In both the BilIN and IPNB series, the expression of p21, p53, and cyclin D1 is upregulated with histological progression, whereas the expression of Dpc4 is down-regulated[23,39,40]. In BilIN, p21 expression is significantly upregulated already at BilIN-1 and also at BilIN-2 and -3. In contrast, levels of all of these molecules change both gradually, and stepwise, in IPNB lineages. Interestingly, p53 expression patterns differ significantly between BilIN and IPNB. That is, p53 expression is dramatically upregulated at the invasive stage of BilIN, while it is quite low in noninvasive BilIN. In contrast, p53 expression is already upregulated in IPN-B1 and reaches a plateau in IPN-B2 and invasive ICC. Taken together, p21, p53, cyclin D1, and Dpc4 are involved in the carcinogenesis of both BilIN and IPN-B, though their expression patterns are not the same during the progression of IPN-B to ICC and BilIN to invasive ICC, suggesting different pathways in terms of cancer-related gene expression, too[9,10,18,23,39,40].

Polycomb group protein EZH2 and p16^{INK4a}

The *p16*^{INK4a} gene displays its tumor-suppressive function by binding and inactivating cyclin-dependent kinases. Therefore, multiple epigenetic and genetic mechanisms for silencing or overcoming these tumor-suppressive processes are required for the development and progression of malignant tumors. During the progression of IPN-B in hepatolithiasis, p16^{INK4a} expression is shown to be decreased stepwise with the progression through IPNB to invasive CC[23]. A methylation-specific polymerase chain reaction (MSP) showed that hypermethylation of the p16^{INK4a} promoter was signficantly involved in this decrease in the expression of p16^{INK4a}. Decreased expression of p16^{INK4a} was seen in cases of IPN-B1 with mild dysplasia, and continued with the progression of IPN-B2 to ICC. MSP revealed that about a half of IPN-B foci harbored a hypermethylated *p16*^{INK4a} promoter, and such foci were significantly correlated with decreased expression of p16^{INK4a} protein. Cell proliferative activities exhibited a stepwise increase from IPN-B1 to IPN-B2. Together, *p16*^{INK4a}'s inactivation, due mainly to its promoter hypermethylation, is a frequent and early event in cases of IPN-B, and may be related directly or indirectly to genetic and epigenetic alterations of other cell cycle regulators during the progression of IPN-B.

Recent studies showed that the Polycomb group proteins EZH2 and Bmi1 are chromatin-modifying enzymes, and interact with key elements that control cell growth and proliferation, such as the *p16*^{INK4a} gene, and that abnormal expression of EZHE and Bmi1 is involved in tumorigenesis, including malignant transformation. Aberrant expression of EZH2 is regarded as a potential marker of advanced or aggressive cancer with a poor prognosis, differing from benign or indolent counterparts. As for the participation of EZH2 in multi-step cholangiocarcinogenesis with respect to the tumor suppressor gene *p16*^{INKa}, it has been reported that the expression of p16^{INK4a}, which was frequent in BilIN1, was decreased in BilIN-2/3 and invasive carcinoma, suggesting that a certain mechanism represses p16^{INKa} expression with the progression of BilIN to invasive CC (Figures 4A and 5A)[24]. Interestingly, EZH2 expression showed a stepwise increase from BilIN-1, -2 and -3 to invasive carcinoma, suggesting that hypermethylation of the *p16*^{INK4a} promoter was related to the aberrant expression of EZH2 (Figures 4B and 5B)[24]. The knockdown of EZH2 in cultured CC cells decreased *p16*^{INK4a} methylation and decreased the binding of EZH2 to the *p16*^{INK4a} promoter, suggesting that direct binding of EZH2 is involved in the regulation of the *p16*^{INK4a} gene. It therefore seems conceivable that over-expression of EZH2 may induce hypermethylation of the *p16*^{INK4a} promoter, followed by decreased expression of p16^{INK4a} in the multi-step cholangiocarcinogenesis through the rhw BilIN lineage, particularly in cases of hepatolithiasis[22].

Matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs)

MMPs are believed to play a pivotal role in the malignant behavior of cancer cells such as rapid tumor growth, invasion, and metastasis, by degrading the extracellular matrix (ECM)[41]. MMP-7 is the smallest MMP expressed exclusively in the tumor cells themselves. MMP-7 has proteolytic activity against components of the ECM such as collagens, proteoglycans, laminin, and fibronectin[42]. MMP-7 overexpression was observed in malignant tumors, including carcinomas of the colorectum and stomach[43]. MT1-MMP is expressed on the cancer cell surface as an invasion-promoting proteinase[44]. One of its major targets is type I collagen. MT1-MMP also regulates cell-ECM interaction by processing cell adhesion molecules, and eventually promotes cell migration as well. Recently, we showed that MMP-7 and MT1-MMP were commonly expressed in invasive ICC with BilIN, but not non-invasive lesions (BilIN-1, -2, -3), suggesting that the expression of MMP-7 and MT1-MMP was closely associated with invasive growth of the BilIN lineage[25]. In contrast, the IPNB lineage was only occasionally and weakly positive for these molecules, reflecting its favorable prognosis[3,45,46].

Cell adhesion molecules (β-catenin and E-cadherin)

A reduction of β-catenin in the cell membrane reflects a disruption of cell-to-cell adhesion, and E-cadherin is one subtype of transmembrane glycoprotein whose cytoplas-

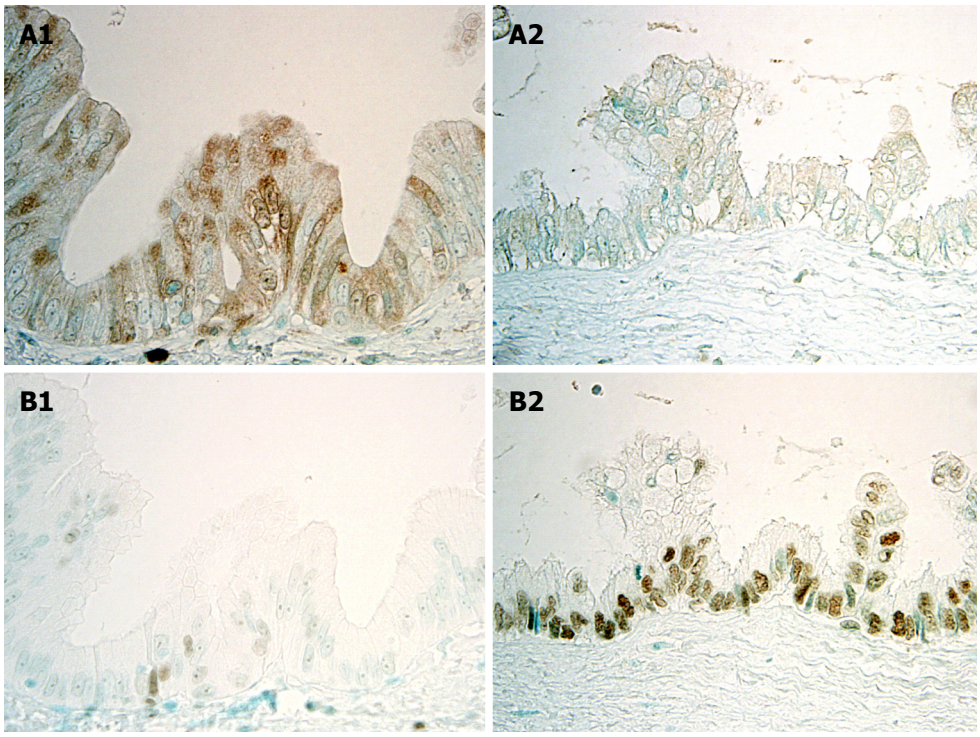


Figure 4 Immunohistochemical expression of p16^{INK4a} and EZH2 in BilIN-1 and BilIN-2. A: p16^{INK4a} is intensely and frequently expressed in the cytoplasm and nuclei in BilIN-1 (left), but such expression is unclear in BilIN-2 (right); B: While EZH2 is occasionally expressed in the nuclei in BilIN-1 (left), this expression increases markedly in BilIN-2 (right)[22].

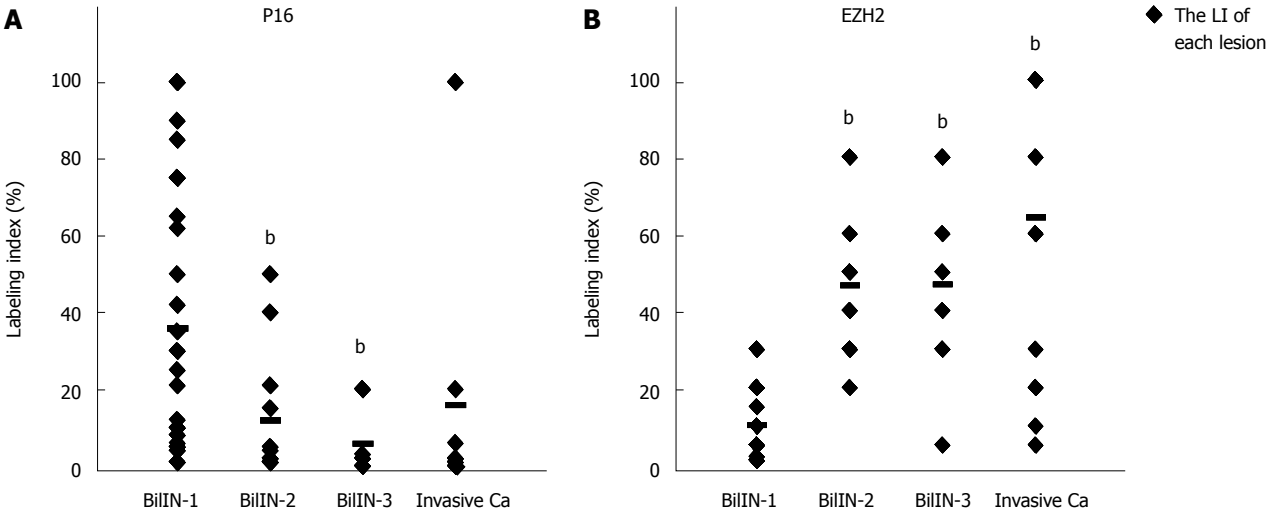


Figure 5 Semiquantitative evaluation of P16INK4a and EZH2 in BilIN-1, -2, and -3, and invasive cholangiocarcinoma (CC). The labeling index (LI) reflects the percentage of cells immunohistochemically positive for P16^{INK4a} or EZH2 in each lesion of BilIN-1, -2, and -3, and invasive CC. $^{b}P < 0.01$ *vs* BilIN-1. A: The LI of P16^{INK4a} expression (mean ± SD) decreases with the progressing of BilINs and is higher in invasive CC; B: Expression of EZH2 increases with the progression of BilINs and is greater in invasive CC[22].

mic domain is bound to α- and β-catenin. Interestingly, decreased membranous expression of β-catenin is correlated well with that of E-cadherin[25]. Decreased membranous expression of both these molecules is closely associated with the invasion of carcinoma cells, and is recognizable early on in both the BilIN and IPNB lineages. The membranous expression of β-catenin decreases with the progression of in both BilIN and IPN-B, particularly after the invasion and then metastasis of carcinoma cells. Membranous expression of β-catenin and E-cadherin decreased more markedly in ICC with BilIN than in ICC with IPNB, a finding compatible with the report of Sugimachi *et al*[47]. Interestingly, decreased membranous expression of E-cadherin and β-catenin in the BilIN and IPN-B lineages was associated with the aberrant expression of MMP-7 and MT1-MMP, suggesting that disruption of the membranous distribution of β-catenin and E-cadherin may result in conditions favorable for the invasion and metastasis of carcinoma cells of these two lineages which express MM-7 and MT1-MMP.

Cyclin D and c-myc

Cyclin D1 is known to bind to cyclin-dependent kinase (CDK) 2 or CDK 4, to act as a CDK inhibitor, and to inhibit Rb phosphorylation leading to an accelerated cell cycle progression and increased cell proliferation[48]. C-myc

has mitogenic effects modulating regulators of cell cycle progression[49]. Overexpression of cyclin D1 was reported in about a half of ICCs and was associated with poor histological differentiation and a poor prognosis, and overexpression of c-myc was reported in about a half of ICCs[50,51]. As for precursor lesions of ICC, increased expression of cyclin D1 and c-myc was more frequent in the IPNB lineage than in the BilIN lineage, and was possibly related to the Wnt signaling pathway associated with the nuclear accumulation of β-catenin. Cyclin D1 and c-myc, targets of Wnt signalling, were frequently positive in the IPNB lineage, and interestingly, nuclear β-catenin staining was observed only in the IPNB lineage. Decreased membranous expression of β-catenin and E-cadherin is an early event in the tumorigenesis of both the BilIN and IPNB lineages[52]. The Wnt signaling pathway may therefore play an important role in the tumorigenesis of the IPNB lineage.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, two precursor lesions of invasive ICC arising in the intrahepatic large bile ducts, BilIN and IPN-B, were reviewed. Both types show a multistep progression followed by invasive carcinoma. Three carcinogenetic pathways from BilIN and IPN-B to ICC were proposed: BilIN progressing to tubular adenocarcinoma, and IPN-B progressing to tubular adenocarcinoma or to colloid carcinoma. These three pathways progress through characteristic multistep genetic and epigenetic processes.

REFERENCES

1 **Okuda K**, Nakanuma Y, Miyazaki M. Cholangiocarcinoma: recent progress. Part 1: epidemiology and etiology. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2002; **17**: 1049-1055
2 **Patel T**. Increasing incidence and mortality of primary intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma in the United States. *Hepatology* 2001; **33**: 1353-1357
3 **Nakanuma Y**, Harada K, Ishikawa A, Zen Y, Sasaki M. Anatomic and molecular pathology of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 2003; **10**: 265-281
4 **Martin R**, Jarnagin W. Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. Current management. *Minerva Chir* 2003; **58**: 469-478
5 **Shimonishi T**, Sasaki M, Nakanuma Y. Precancerous lesions of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 2000; **7**: 542-550
6 **Nakanuma Y**, Sripa B, Vantanasapt V, Leong ASY, Ponchon T, Ishak KG. Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. In: Hamilton SR, Aaltonen LA, editors. World Health Organization Classification of Tumours. Pathology and Genetics of Tumours of the Digestive System. Lyon, France: IARC Press, 2000: 237-240
7 **Chen TC**, Nakanuma Y, Zen Y, Chen MF, Jan YY, Yeh TS, Chiu CT, Kuo TT, Kamiya J, Oda K, Hamaguchi M, Ohno Y, Hsieh LL, Nimura Y. Intraductal papillary neoplasia of the liver associated with hepatolithiasis. *Hepatology* 2001; **34**: 651-658
8 **Nakanuma Y**, Sasaki M, Ishikawa A, Tsui W, Chen TC, Huang SF. Biliary papillary neoplasm of the liver. *Histol Histopathol* 2002; **17**: 851-861
9 **Zen Y**, Adsay NV, Bardadin K, Colombari R, Ferrell L, Haga H, Hong SM, Hytiroglou P, Kloppel G, Lauwers GY, van Leeuwen DJ, Notohara K, Oshima K, Quaglia A, Sasaki M, Sessa F, Suriawinata A, Tsui W, Atomi Y, Nakanuma Y. Biliary intraepithelial neoplasia: an international interobserver agreement study and proposal for diagnostic criteria. *Mod Pathol* 2007; **20**: 701-709
10 **Zen Y**, Sasaki M, Fujii T, Chen TC, Chen MF, Yeh TS, Jan YY, Huang SF, Nimura Y, Nakanuma Y. Different expression patterns of mucin core proteins and cytokeratins during intrahepatic cholangiocarcinogenesis from biliary intraepithelial neoplasia and intraductal papillary neoplasm of the bile duct--an immunohistochemical study of 110 cases of hepatolithiasis. *J Hepatol* 2006; **44**: 350-358
11 **Campisi J**. Senescent cells, tumor suppression, and organismal aging: good citizens, bad neighbors. *Cell* 2005; **120**: 513-522
12 **Yonezawa S**, Nakamura A, Horinouchi M, Sato E. The expression of several types of mucin is related to the biological behavior of pancreatic neoplasms. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 2002; **9**: 328-341
13 **Sasaki M**, Ikeda H, Nakanuma Y. Expression profiles of MUC mucins and trefoil factor family (TFF) peptides in the intrahepatic biliary system: physiological distribution and pathological significance. *Prog Histochem Cytochem* 2007; **42**: 61-110
14 **Nakanuma Y**, Hoso M, Sanzen T, Sasaki M. Microstructure and development of the normal and pathologic biliary tract in humans, including blood supply. *Microsc Res Tech* 1997; **38**: 552-570
15 **Kozaka K**, Sasaki M, Fujii T, Harada K, Zen Y, Sato Y, Sawada S, Minato H, Matsui O, Nakanuma Y. A subgroup of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma with an infiltrating replacement growth pattern and a resemblance to reactive proliferating bile ductules: 'bile ductular carcinoma'. *Histopathology* 2007; **51**: 390-400
16 **Nakanuma Y**, Sasaki M, Ikeda H, Sato Y, Zen Y, Kosaka K, Harada K. Pathology of peripheral intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma with reference to tumorigenesis. *Hepatol Res* 2008; **38**: 325-334
17 **Liver Cancer Study Group of Japan**. The general rules for the clinical and pathological study of primary liver cancer. 4th ed. Tokyo: Kanehara, 2000
18 **Zen Y**, Fujii T, Itatsu K, Nakamura K, Minato H, Kasashima S, Kurumaya H, Katayanagi K, Kawashima A, Masuda S, Niwa H, Mitsui T, Asada Y, Miura S, Ohta T, Nakanuma Y. Biliary papillary tumors share pathological features with intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasm of the pancreas. *Hepatology* 2006; **44**: 1333-1343
19 **Zen Y**, Aishima S, Ajioka Y, Haratake J, Kage M, Kondo F, Nimura Y, Sakamoto M, Sasaki M, Shimamatsu K, Wakasa K, Park YN, Chen MF, Atomi Y, Nakanuma Y. Proposal of histological criteria for intraepithelial atypical/proliferative biliary epithelial lesions of the bile duct in hepatolithiasis with respect to cholangiocarcinoma: preliminary report based on interobserver agreement. *Pathol Int* 2005; **55**: 180-188
20 **Bergquist A**, Glaumann H, Stal P, Wang GS, Broome U. Biliary dysplasia, cell proliferation and nuclear DNA-fragmentation in primary sclerosing cholangitis with and without cholangiocarcinoma. *J Intern Med* 2001; **249**: 69-75
21 **Shimonishi T**, Zen Y, Chen TC, Chen MF, Jan YY, Yeh TS, Nimura Y, Nakanuma Y. Increasing expression of gastrointestinal phenotypes and p53 along with histologic progression of intraductal papillary neoplasia of the liver. *Hum Pathol* 2002; **33**: 503-511
22 **Zen Y**, Harada K, Sasaki M, Tsuneyama K, Katayanagi K, Yamamoto Y, Nakanuma Y. Lipopolysaccharide induces overexpression of MUC2 and MUC5AC in cultured biliary epithelial cells: possible key phenomenon of hepatolithiasis. *Am J Pathol* 2002; **161**: 1475-1484
23 **Ishikawa A**, Sasaki M, Sato Y, Ohira S, Chen MF, Huang SF, Oda K, Nimura Y, Nakanuma Y. Frequent p16ink4a inactivation is an early and frequent event of intraductal

papillary neoplasm of the liver arising in hepatolithiasis. *Hum Pathol* 2004; **35**: 1505-1514
24 **Sasaki M**, Yamaguchi J, Itatsu K, Ikeda H, Nakanuma Y. Over-expression of polycomb group protein EZH2 relates to decreased expression of p16 INK4a in cholangiocarcinogenesis in hepatolithiasis. *J Pathol* 2008; **215**: 175-183
25 **Itatsu K**, Zen Y, Yamaguchi J, Ohira S, Ishikawa A, Ikeda H, Sato Y, Harada K, Sasaki M, Sasaki M, Sakamoto H, Nagino M, Nimura Y, Ohta T, Nakanuma Y. Expression of matrix metalloproteinase 7 is an unfavorable postoperative prognostic factor in cholangiocarcinoma of the perihilar, hilar, and extrahepatic bile ducts. *Hum Pathol* 2008; **39**: 710-719
26 **Longnecker DS**, Adler G, Hruban RH, Kloppel G. Intraductal papillary-mucinous neoplasms of the pancreas. In: Hamilton SR, Aaltonen LA, editors. World Health Organization Classification of Tumours. Pathology and Genetics of Tumours of the Digestive System. Lyon, France: IARC Press, 2000: 237-240
27 **Shibahara H**, Tamada S, Goto M, Oda K, Nagino M, Nagasaka T, Batra SK, Hollingsworth MA, Imai K, Nimura Y, Yonezawa S. Pathologic features of mucin-producing bile duct tumors: two histopathologic categories as counterparts of pancreatic intraductal papillary-mucinous neoplasms. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2004; **28**: 327-338
28 **Ikeda H**, Sasaki M, Ohira S, Ishikawa A, Sato Y, Harada K, Zen Y, Nakanuma Y. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha induces the aberrant expression of mucus core protein-2 in non-neoplastic biliary epithelial cells via the upregulation of CDX2 in chronic cholangitis. *Hepatol Res* 2008; **38**: 1006-1017
29 **Ikeda H**, Sasaki M, Ishikawa A, Sato Y, Harada K, Zen Y, Kazumori H, Nakanuma Y. Interaction of Toll-like receptors with bacterial components induces expression of CDX2 and MUC2 in rat biliary epithelium in vivo and in culture. *Lab Invest* 2007; **87**: 559-571
30 **Sasaki M**, Nakanuma Y, Kim YS. Expression of apomucins in the intrahepatic biliary tree in hepatolithiasis differs from that in normal liver and extrahepatic biliary obstruction. *Hepatology* 1998; **27**: 54-61
31 **Sherr CJ**. Cancer cell cycles. *Science* 1996; **274**: 1672-1677
32 **Pardee AB**. G1 events and regulation of cell proliferation. *Science* 1989; **246**: 603-608
33 **Matsushime H**, Ewen ME, Strom DK, Kato JY, Hanks SK, Roussel MF, Sherr CJ. Identification and properties of an atypical catalytic subunit (p34PSK-J3/cdk4) for mammalian D type G1 cyclins. *Cell* 1992; **71**: 323-334
34 **Serrano M**, Hannon GJ, Beach D. A new regulatory motif in cell-cycle control causing specific inhibition of cyclin D/CDK4. *Nature* 1993; **366**: 704-707
35 **Waga S**, Hannon GJ, Beach D, Stillman B. The p21 inhibitor of cyclin-dependent kinases controls DNA replication by interaction with PCNA. *Nature* 1994; **369**: 574-578
36 **el-Deiry WS**, Harper JW, O'Connor PM, Velculescu VE, Canman CE, Jackman J, Pietenpol JA, Burrell M, Hill DE, Wang Y. WAF1/CIP1 is induced in p53-mediated G1 arrest and apoptosis. *Cancer Res* 1994; **54**: 1169-1174
37 **Hahn SA**, Schutte M, Hoque AT, Moskaluk CA, da Costa LT, Rozenblum E, Weinstein CL, Fischer A, Yeo CJ, Hruban RH, Kern SE. DPC4, a candidate tumor suppressor gene at human chromosome 18q21.1. *Science* 1996; **271**: 350-353
38 **Lagna G**, Hata A, Hemmati-Brivanlou A, Massague J. Partnership between DPC4 and SMAD proteins in TGF-beta signalling pathways. *Nature* 1996; **383**: 832-836
39 **Nakanishi Y**, Zen Y, Kondo S, Itoh T, Itatsu K, Nakanuma Y. Expression of cell cycle-related molecules in biliary premalignant lesions: biliary intraepithelial neoplasia and biliary intraductal papillary neoplasm. *Hum Pathol* 2008; **39**: 1153-1161
40 **Itatsu K**, Sasaki M, Harada K, Yamaguchi J, Ikeda H, Sato Y, Ohta T, Sato H, Nagino M, Nimura Y, Nakanuma Y. Phosphorylation of extracellular signal-regulated kinase 1/2, p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase and nuclear translocation of nuclear factor-kappaB are involved in upregulation of matrix metalloproteinase-9 by tumour necrosis factor-alpha. *Liver Int* 2009; **29**: 291-298
41 **Westermarck J**, Kahari VM. Regulation of matrix metalloproteinase expression in tumor invasion. *FASEB J* 1999; **13**: 781-792
42 **Adachi Y**, Yamamoto H, Itoh F, Hinoda Y, Okada Y, Imai K. Contribution of matrilysin (MMP-7) to the metastatic pathway of human colorectal cancers. *Gut* 1999; **45**: 252-258
43 **Ishikawa T**, Ichikawa Y, Mitsuhashi M, Momiyama N, Chishima T, Tanaka K, Yamaoka H, Miyazakic K, Nagashima Y, Akitaya T, Shimada H. Matrilysin is associated with progression of colorectal tumor. *Cancer Lett* 1996; **107**: 5-10
44 **Seiki M**. Membrane-type 1 matrix metalloproteinase: a key enzyme for tumor invasion. *Cancer Lett* 2003; **194**: 1-11
45 **Tajima Y**, Kuroki T, Fukuda K, Tsuneoka N, Furui J, Kanematsu T. An intraductal papillary component is associated with prolonged survival after hepatic resection for intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. *Br J Surg* 2004; **91**: 99-104
46 **Yeh TS**, Tseng JH, Chen TC, Liu NJ, Chiu CT, Jan YY, Chen MF. Characterization of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma of the intraductal growth-type and its precursor lesions. *Hepatology* 2005; **42**: 657-664
47 **Sugimachi K**, Taguchi K, Aishima S, Tanaka S, Shimada M, Kajiyama K, Sugimachi K, Tsuneyoshi M. Altered expression of beta-catenin without genetic mutation in intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. *Mod Pathol* 2001; **14**: 900-905
48 **Caffo O**, Doglioni C, Veronese S, Bonzanini M, Marchetti A, Buttitta F, Fina P, Leek R, Morelli L, Palma PD, Harris AL, Barbareschi M. Prognostic value of p21(WAF1) and p53 expression in breast carcinoma: an immunohistochemical study in 261 patients with long-term follow-up. *Clin Cancer Res* 1996; **2**: 1591-1599
49 **He TC**, Sparks AB, Rago C, Hermeking H, Zawel L, da Costa LT, Morin PJ, Vogelstein B, Kinzler KW. Identification of c-MYC as a target of the APC pathway. *Science* 1998; **281**: 1509-1512
50 **Tokumoto N**, Ikeda S, Ishizaki Y, Kurihara T, Ozaki S, Iseki M, Shimizu Y, Itamoto T, Arihiro K, Okajima M, Asahara T. Immunohistochemical and mutational analyses of Wnt signaling components and target genes in intrahepatic cholangiocarcinomas. *Int J Oncol* 2005; **27**: 973-980
51 **Sugimachi K**, Aishima S, Taguchi K, Tanaka S, Shimada M, Kajiyama K, Sugimachi K, Tsuneyoshi M. The role of overexpression and gene amplification of cyclin D1 in intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. *J Hepatol* 2001; **35**: 74-79
52 **Itatsu K**, Zen Y, Ohira S, Ishikawa A, Sato Y, Harada K, Ikeda H, Sasaki M, Nimura Y, Nakanuma Y. Immunohistochemical analysis of the progression of flat and papillary preneoplastic lesions in intrahepatic cholangiocarcinogenesis in hepatolithiasis. *Liver Int* 2007; **27**: 1174-1184

S- Editor Zhang HN **L- Editor** Herholdt A **E- Editor** Ma WH

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.43

World J Hepatol 2009 October 31; 1(1): 43-47
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

GUIDELINES FOR CLINICAL PRACTICE

Combination treatment in HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B

Konstantinos Tziomalos

Konstantinos Tziomalos, First Propedeutic Department of Internal Medicine, Medical School, Aristotle University of Thessaloniki, AHEPA Hospital, Thessaloniki 54636, Greece
Author contributions: Tziomalos K solely contributed to this paper.
Correspondence to: Konstantinos Tziomalos, MD, PhD, Consultant in Internal Medicine, First Propedeutic Department of Internal Medicine, Medical School, Aristotle University of Thessaloniki, AHEPA Hospital, Thessaloniki 54636, Greece. ktziomalos@yahoo.com
Telephone: +30-2310-823487
Received: May 15, 2009 Revised: September 1, 2009
Accepted: September 8, 2009
Published online: October 31, 2009

Abstract

Chronic hepatitis B (CHB) represents an important public health problem. HBeAg-negative CHB is frequently associated with advanced liver disease and its prevalence is increasing. Monotherapy with either interferon (conventional or pegylated) or nucleoside/nucleotide analogues has its limitations. It has been suggested that a combination of these agents might increase antiviral efficacy. However, existing data do not support this hypothesis, even though combination treatment appears to reduce the risk for emergence of lamivudine resistance. Nevertheless, most existing combination studies are small, and it is possible that they have not been designed to detect significant differences between combination treatment and monotherapies. Another limitation of these studies is that, in most of them, lamivudine treatment was discontinued after 1 year, a strategy that is not followed in clinical practice. It was thought to be interesting to evaluate the combination of a short course of interferon (particularly pegylated) with the long-term administration of nucleotide or nucleoside analogues. The efficacy of combining pegylated interferon with the newer nucleotide or nucleoside analogues or of nucleotide with nucleoside analogues could also be evaluated. However, findings show that until more data are available, combination therapy cannot be recommended as first-line treatment in patients with CHB. On the other hand, add-on therapy with adefovir or tenofovir is the treatment of choice in patients who develop resistance to lamivudine. In patients with cirrhosis, a combination of lamivudine/adefovir may also be used as initial treatment; another option would be to add tenofovir in patients with an insufficient response to entecavir.

Key words: Interferon; Lamivudine; Adefovir; Telbivudine; Entecavir; Tenofovir; Combination; Monotherapy; HBeAg negative chronic hepatitis B; Resistance

Peer reviewers: Frank Tacke, MD, PhD, Department of Medicine III,University Hospital Aachen, Pauwelsstr. 30, 52074 Aachen, Germany; Yusuf Yilmaz, MD, Department of Gastroenterology, Marmara University School of Medicine, Tophanelioglu cad. No:13/15, Altunizade, Istanbul 34662, Turkey

Tziomalos K. Combination treatment in HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B. *World J Hepatol* 2009; 1(1): 43-47 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v1/i1/43.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.43

INTRODUCTION

Chronic hepatitis B (CHB) represents an important public health problem[1]. It is estimated that 350 million people worldwide are affected by CHB, and 500 000 to 1.2 million patients die each year of the complications (mainly cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma) of CHB[1]. HBeAg-negative CHB is characterized by the presence of the hepatitis B virus (HBV) with mutations in the precore or basic core promoter region, which prevent the synthesis of HBeAg[2]. The prevalence of HBeAg-negative CHB appears to be increasing; median rates are 33% in Europe (range: 10-72), 14% in the United States (range: 13-22) and 15% in Asia (range: 5-47)[3]. Patients with HBeAg-negative CHB are more likely to have severe liver disease at the time of diagnosis, and to progress to cirrhosis than patients with

HBeAg-positive CHB[2]. The management of HBeAg-negative CHB is therefore an important aspect of the treatment of CHB.

LIMITATIONS OF MONOTHERAPY IN CHB

Seven agents are currently approved for the treatment of CHB, including interferon [conventional interferon (IFN) and pegylated (PEG) IFN α-2a] and the nucleoside/nucleotide analogues [lamivudine (LAM), adefovir (ADV), telbivudine, entecavir and tenofovir][4,5]. IFN stimulates cell-mediated immune responses against HBV, whereas the nucleoside/nucleotide analogues inhibit HBV replication by acting on the HBV polymerase[6]. The advantage of IFN is that it is administered for a defined period (16-48 wk), induces sustained responses in some patients and is not associated with the development of HBV resistance[4,5]. However, IFN treatment requires subcutaneous injections and is frequent associated with side effects[4,5]. The nucleoside/nucleotide analogues are given orally and are well tolerated[4,5]. However, stopping these agents leads to a rebound of HBV replication in most cases and they therefore have to be given for long periods of time and probably indefinitely[4,5].Unfortunately this strategy is compromised by the development of HBV resistance[4,5].

CONVENTIONAL IFN PLUS LAM COMBINATION

It is clear that monotherapy with either IFN or nucleoside/nucleotide analogues have limitations. Since these agents have different mechanisms of action, it has been suggested that combining them might result in more potent and sustained suppression of viral replication[7]. This might in turn also reduce the risk for development of antiviral resistance[7]. Accordingly, several studies compared IFN/LAM combination with LAM monotherapy in patients with HBeAg-negative CHB[8-12]. End-of-treatment virological and biochemical response rates with the 2 treatments were either similar[9,12] or higher with IFN/LAM combination[8,11]. However, sustained (i.e. after treatment discontinuation) virological and biochemical response rates were similar with IFN/LAM combination and LAM monotherapy in all studies[8,10-12]. Moreover, improvement in liver histology was either similar in the 2 groups[12] or greater with LAM monotherapy[9,10]. Development of LAM-resistant mutants was found to be more frequent in patients treated with LAM monotherapy in some[8,11] but not all studies[9,10,12]. Treatment discontinuation rates were similar in the 2 groups[8,11,12]. Interestingly, the administration of higher doses of IFN (up to 10 MU tiw), or for longer periods (up to 24 mo) was not associated with better results of IFN/LAM combination[8-12].

PEG-IFN PLUS LAM COMBINATION

Pegylated IFN appears to be more effective than conventional IFN and has a more convenient dosing scheme (one weekly administration *vs* tiw with conventional IFN)[5]. A limited number of studies have evaluated the effectiveness of a PEG-IFN/LAM combination compared with LAM monotherapy in patients with HBeAg-negative CHB[13-15]. In the largest study, Marcellin *et al*[13] randomly assigned 537 patients to 48 wk of treatment with a PEG-IFN α-2a/LAM combination, PEG-IFN α-2a monotherapy or LAM monotherapy. After a follow-up time of 24 wk after discontinuing treatment,those patients treated with the PEG-IFN α-2a/LAM combination showed higher virological and biochemical response rates than those treated with LAM monotherapy[13]. However, response rates were similar in the PEG-IFN α-2a/LAM combination and PEG-IFN α-2a monotherapy patient groups[13]. Moreover, rates of histological response were similar in the 3 groups[13]. The rates of adverse events were similar in the PEG-IFN α-2a/LAM combination and PEG-IFN α-2a monotherapy groups but significantly lower in the LAM monotherapy group[13]. Treatment with PEG-IFN α-2a/LAM combination was associated with lower rates of emergence of LAM resistance compared with LAM monotherapy[13]. In 2 smaller studies (n = 48 and n = 126, respectively PEG-IFN α-2b/LAM combination and PEG-IFN α-2b monotherapy administered for 48 wk resulted in similar end-of-treatment and sustained biochemical and virological response rates 24 wk later[14,15]. Liver biopsy was not performed nor were rates of emergence of LAM resistance reported in the latter studies[14,15].

STAGGERED IFN/LAM COMBINATION

In vitro studies have suggested that LAM restores HBV-specific cytotoxic T lymphocyte reactivity[16,17]. It was therefore hypothesized that LAM pre-treatment might increase responsiveness to subsequent IFN administration[16,17]. Accordingly, a number of studies have evaluated a staggered treatment scheme, with 1-6 mo of LAM monotherapy preceding treatment with 1-12 mo of a IFN/LAM combination[12,18-21]. In some studies, the IFN/LAM combination was followed by 6 mo of LAM monotherapy[19] or 6 mo of IFN monotherapy[18,20]. The IFN/LAM combination was compared with LAM monotherapy[12,21], IFN monotherapy[18] or both[19]. End-of-treatment virological and biochemical response rates were similar in the IFN/LAM combination and LAM monotherapy groups[12,19-21] and higher than those of the IFN monotherapy groups[18,19]. In most studies, after 6-27 mo of follow-up, sustained virological and biochemical response rates were also similar in the IFN/LAM combination and the LAM monotherapy[12,19,21] or IFN monotherapy groups[18,19]. The biochemical response rates were higher in the IFN/LAM combination group at 24 wk after treatment discontinuation in only in one study, but virological response rates did not differ

significantly between the 2 groups[20]. LAM resistance was observed more frequently in the LAM monotherapy group in most[19-21] but not all studies[12]. Improvement in liver histology was similar with the IFN/LAM combination and LAM monotherapy[12,19,21] but less with IFN monotherapy[19]. Treatment discontinuation rates were similar with the IFN/LAM combination and LAM monotherapy[19-21]. Only 1 study evaluated a staggered combination scheme including PEG-IFN in patients with HBeAg-negative CHB[22]. In this report, 18 patients were treated with a LAM/PEG-IFN α-2b combination (3 mo LAM, 3 mo LAM/PEG-IFN α-2b and 9 mo PEG-IFN α-2b alone) and 24 patients were treated with LAM alone for a median of 25 mo[22]. At the end of the treatment, virological and biochemical response rates did not differ significantly between groups[22]. At 12 mo after treatment discontinuation, virological response rates did not differ significantly between the 2 groups but biochemical response rates were higher in the LAM/PEG-IFN α-2b combination group[22]. LAM resistance was observed more frequently in the LAM monotherapy group[22]. Finally, only 1 study compared a staggered combination scheme (12 wk of LAM monotherapy followed by 40 wk of an IFN/LAM combination) with a IFN/LAM combination for 52 wk[12]. This study also included a group treated with LAM monotherapy for 52 wk[12]. End-of-treatment and end-of-follow-up virological and biochemical response rates, changes in liver histology and rates of development of LAM-resistant mutants were similar in the 3 groups[12].

SEROCONVERSION TO ANTI-HBS WITH COMBINATION TREATMENT

Loss of HBsAg and seroconversion to antiHBs indicates resolution of CHB and is considered as a complete response to treatment[23]. However, this result is rarely achieved with monotherapy with either IFN or nucleoside/nucleotide analogues[23]. Some uncontrolled studies suggested that IFN combined with either LAM or ADV is associated with high rates of seroconversion to antiHBs[24,25]. However, in the controlled studies there were no differences in rates of HBsAg loss or seroconversion to antiHBs between IFN (conventional or PEG-IFN) and LAM combination (either synchronous or sequential) and either monotherapy[8-15,18-22].

COMBINATION TREATMENT WITH DIFFERENT NUCLEOSIDE AND NUCLEOTIDE ANALOGUES

Combination treatment with a nucleotide analogue (lamivudine or telbivudine) and a nucleoside analogue (e.g. adefovir or tenofovir) might be a therapeutic option because these agents have different resistance profiles[26]. A limited number of studies have assessed the effects of combining nucleotide and nucleoside analogues in patients with HBeAg-positive CHB[27-29]. The use of ADV, combined with either LAM or emtricitabine (which is not yet approved in CHB) was shown to reduce HBV DNA levels more than ADV monotherapy[27,28]. In contrast, combining telbivudine and LAM (i.e. 2 nucleotide analogues) was not shown to be more effective than telbivudine monotherapy[29]. In the only study which evaluated the combination of oral antiviral agents in patients with HBeAg-negative CHB, 163 patients with CHB (48% HBeAg-negative) were treated with a combination of emtricitabine plus clevudine or emtricitabine monotherapy[30]. Neither of these agents is yet approved in CHB. At the end of the 24-wk treatment period, virological and biochemical response rates were similar in the 2 groups[30]. However, 24 wk after treatment discontinuation, virological and biochemical response rates were higher in the emtricitabine/clevudine combination group[30]. Emtricitabine-resistant mutants emerged at the same rate in the 2 groups[30]. Adverse events were similar in the 2 groups but post-treatment exacerbation of CHB occurred less frequently in the emtricitabine/clevudine combination group[30]. In a study recently presented in abstract form, a tenofovir/emtricitabine combination was shown not to be more effective than tenofovir monotherapy in patients with persistent viral replication, despite treatment with ADV (n = 105, 27% HBeAg-negative)[31].

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, available data do not support the hypothesis that combination treatment improves virological or biochemical response rates compared with monotherapy in HBeAg-negative CHB. Combination treatment might also reduce compliance and increase the cost of therapy, as well as the risk of incurring side effects and drug interactions. On the other hand, the advantage of combination treatment is that it appears to reduce the risk for development of LAM resistance. However, most studies are small and it is possible that they were not designed to detect significant differences between a IFN/LAM combination and LAM monotherapy. In addition, the inclusion of non-responders to previous IFN treatment might have also reduced the efficacy of the IFN/LAM combination. Another limitation of these studies is that LAM treatment was discontinued after 1 year in most of them, a strategy that is not normally followed in clinical practice. It would be interesting to evaluate the combination of a short course of IFN (particularly PEG-IFN) with long-term administration of nucleotide or nucleoside analogues. The efficacy of combining PEG-IFN with the newer nucleotide or nucleoside analogues or of nucleotide with nucleoside analogues should also be evaluated. Until more data are available, combination therapy cannot be recommended as first-line treatment in patients with CHB. However, combination therapy is the treatment of choice in patients who develop resist-

ance to LAM, where tenofovir or ADV should be added to LAM[5]. Moreover, in high-risk patients (particularly in those with cirrhosis), it might be beneficial to add tenofovir in patients with an insufficient response to entecavir. Finally, in patients with decompensated cirrhosis, a LAM/ADV combination could be used as initial treatment, to achieve rapid suppression of HBV replication and to reduce the risk of resistance[5].

REFERENCES

1 **Lavanchy D**. Hepatitis B virus epidemiology, disease burden, treatment, and current and emerging prevention and control measures. *J Viral Hepat* 2004; **11**: 97-107
2 **Fattovich G**, Bortolotti F, Donato F. Natural history of chronic hepatitis B: special emphasis on disease progression and prognostic factors. *J Hepatol* 2008; **48**: 335-352
3 **Funk ML**, Rosenberg DM, Lok AS. World-wide epidemiology of HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B and associated precore and core promoter variants. *J Viral Hepat* 2002; **9**: 52-61
4 **Sorrell MF**, Belongia EA, Costa J, Gareen IF, Grem JL, Inadomi JM, Kern ER, McHugh JA, Petersen GM, Rein MF, Strader DB, Trotter HT. National Institutes of Health Consensus Development Conference Statement: management of hepatitis B. *Ann Intern Med* 2009; **150**: 104-110
5 **Lok AS**, McMahon BJ. Chronic hepatitis B. *Hepatology* 2007; **45**: 507-539
6 **Zoulim F**, Perrillo R. Hepatitis B: reflections on the current approach to antiviral therapy. *J Hepatol* 2008; **48** Suppl 1: S2-S19
7 **Terrault NA**. Benefits and risks of combination therapy for hepatitis B. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: S122-S128
8 **Santantonio T**, Niro GA, Sinisi E, Leandro G, Insalata M, Guastadisegni A, Facciorusso D, Gravinese E, Andriulli A, Pastore G. Lamivudine/interferon combination therapy in anti-HBe positive chronic hepatitis B patients: a controlled pilot study. *J Hepatol* 2002; **36**: 799-804
9 **Akarca US**, Ersoz G, Gunsar F, Karasu Z, Saritas E, Yuce G, Batur Y. Interferon-lamivudine combination is no better than lamivudine alone in anti-HBe-positive chronic hepatitis B. *Antivir Ther* 2004; **9**: 325-334
10 **Akyuz F**, Kaymakoglu S, Demir K, Aksoy N, Karaca C, Danalioglu A, Onel D, Badur S, Besisik F, Cakaloglu Y, Okten A. Lamivudine monotherapy and lamivudine plus interferon alpha combination therapy in HBeAg negative chronic hepatitis B not responding to previous interferon alpha monotherapy. *Acta Gastroenterol Belg* 2007; **70**: 20-24
11 **Economou M**, Manolakopoulos S, Trikalinos TA, Filis S, Bethanis S, Tzourmakliotis D, Avgerinos A, Raptis S, Tsianos EV. Interferon-alpha plus lamivudine vs lamivudine reduces breakthroughs, but does not affect sustained response in HBeAg negative chronic hepatitis B. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 5882-5887
12 **Scotto G**, Palumbo E, Fazio V, Cibelli DC, Saracino A, Angarano G. Efficacy and tolerability of lamivudine alone versus lamivudine plus alpha-interferon for treatment of chronic active hepatitis B in patients with a precore-mutant variant. *Infez Med* 2006; **14**: 145-151
13 **Marcellin P**, Lau GK, Bonino F, Farci P, Hadziyannis S, Jin R, Lu ZM, Piratvisuth T, Germanidis G, Yurdaydin C, Diago M, Gurel S, Lai MY, Button P, Pluck N. Peginterferon alfa-2a alone, lamivudine alone, and the two in combination in patients with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **351**: 1206-1217
14 **Kaymakoglu S**, Oguz D, Gur G, Gurel S, Tankurt E, Ersoz G, Ozenirler S, Kalayci C, Poturoglu S, Cakaloglu Y, Okten A. Pegylated interferon Alfa-2b monotherapy and pegylated interferon Alfa-2b plus lamivudine combination therapy for patients with hepatitis B virus E antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2007; **51**: 3020-3022
15 **Papadopoulos VP**, Chrysagis DN, Protopapas AN, Goulis IG, Dimitriadis GT, Mimidis KP. Peginterferon alfa-2b as monotherapy or in combination with lamivudine in patients with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B: a randomised study. *Med Sci Monit* 2009; **15**: CR56-CR61
16 **Boni C**, Bertoletti A, Penna A, Cavalli A, Pilli M, Urbani S, Scognamiglio P, Boehme R, Panebianco R, Fiaccadori F, Ferrari C. Lamivudine treatment can restore T cell responsiveness in chronic hepatitis B. *J Clin Invest* 1998; **102**: 968-975
17 **Boni C**, Penna A, Ogg GS, Bertoletti A, Pilli M, Cavallo C, Cavalli A, Urbani S, Boehme R, Panebianco R, Fiaccadori F, Ferrari C. Lamivudine treatment can overcome cytotoxic T-cell hyporesponsiveness in chronic hepatitis B: new perspectives for immune therapy. *Hepatology* 2001; **33**: 963-971
18 **Manesis EK**, Papatheodoridis GV, Hadziyannis SJ. A partially overlapping treatment course with lamivudine and interferon in hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2006; **23**: 99-106
19 **Jaboli MF**, Fabbri C, Liva S, Azzaroli F, Nigro G, Giovanelli S, Ferrara F, Miracolo A, Marchetto S, Montagnani M, Colecchia A, Festi D, Reggiani LB, Roda E, Mazzella G. Long-term alpha interferon and lamivudine combination therapy in non-responder patients with anti-HBe-positive chronic hepatitis B: results of an open, controlled trial. *World J Gastroenterol* 2003; **9**: 1491-1495
20 **Shi M**, Wang RS, Zhang H, Zhu YF, Han B, Zhang Y, Jin LJ, Yang ZJ, Xu YP. Sequential treatment with lamivudine and interferon-alpha monotherapies in hepatitis B e antigen-negative Chinese patients and its suppression of lamivudine-resistant mutations. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2006; **58**: 1031-1035
21 **Yurdaydin C**, Bozkaya H, Cetinkaya H, Sahin T, Karaoguz D, Toruner M, Erkan O, Heper AO, Erden E, Bozdayi AM, Uzunalimoglu O. Lamivudine vs lamivudine and interferon combination treatment of HBeAg(-) chronic hepatitis B. *J Viral Hepat* 2005; **12**: 262-268
22 **Vassiliadis T**, Tziomalos K, Patsiaoura K, Zagris T, Giouleme O, Soufleris K, Grammatikos N, Theodoropoulos K, Mpoumponaris A, Dona K, Zezos P, Nikolaidis N, Orfanou-Koumerkeridou E, Balaska A, Eugenidis N. Lamivudine/pegylated interferon alfa-2b sequential combination therapy compared with lamivudine monotherapy in HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2007; **22**: 1582-1588
23 **Hoofnagle JH**, Doo E, Liang TJ, Fleischer R, Lok AS. Management of hepatitis B: summary of a clinical research workshop. *Hepatology* 2007; **45**: 1056-1075
24 **Nikolaidis NL**, Giouleme OI, Tziomalos KA, Saveriadis AS, Grammatikos N, Doukelis P, Voutsas AD, Vassiliadis T, Patsiaoura K, Orfanou-Koumerkeridou E, Balaska A, Eugenidis NP. Interferon/long-term lamivudine combination therapy in anti-HBe positive chronic hepatitis B patients. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2005; **20**: 1721-1725
25 **Wursthorn K**, Lutgehetmann M, Dandri M, Volz T, Buggisch P, Zollner B, Longerich T, Schirmacher P, Metzler F, Zankel M, Fischer C, Currie G, Brosgart C, Petersen J. Peginterferon alpha-2b plus adefovir induce strong cccDNA decline and HBsAg reduction in patients with chronic hepatitis B. *Hepatology* 2006; **44**: 675-684
26 **Lai CL**, Yuen MF. Chronic hepatitis B--new goals, new treatment. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **359**: 2488-2491
27 **Sung JJ**, Lai JY, Zeuzem S, Chow WC, Heathcote EJ, Perrillo RP, Brosgart CL, Woessner MA, Scott SA, Gray DF, Gardner SD. Lamivudine compared with lamivudine and adefovir dipivoxil for the treatment of HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B. *J Hepatol* 2008; **48**: 728-735

28 **Hui CK**, Zhang HY, Bowden S, Locarnini S, Luk JM, Leung KW, Yueng YH, Wong A, Rousseau F, Yuen KY, Naoumov NN, Lau GK. 96 weeks combination of adefovir dipivoxil plus emtricitabine vs. adefovir dipivoxil monotherapy in the treatment of chronic hepatitis B. *J Hepatol* 2008; **48**: 714-720
29 **Lai CL**, Leung N, Teo EK, Tong M, Wong F, Hann HW, Han S, Poynard T, Myers M, Chao G, Lloyd D, Brown NA. A 1-year trial of telbivudine, lamivudine, and the combination in patients with hepatitis B e antigen-positive chronic hepatitis B. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **129**: 528-536
30 **Lim SG**, Krastev Z, Ng TM, Mechkov G, Kotzev IA, Chan S, Mondou E, Snow A, Sorbel J, Rousseau F. Randomized, double-blind study of emtricitabine (FTC) plus clevudine versus FTC alone in treatment of chronic hepatitis B. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2006; **50**: 1642-1648
31 **Berg T**, Moller B, Trinh H, Chan S, Marcellin P, Suarez E, Snow-Lampart A, Oldach D, Sorbel J, Borroto-Esoda K, Frederick D, Rousseau F. Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate (TDF) versus emtricitabile plus TDF (FTC/TDF) for treatment of chronic hepatitis B (CHB) in patients with persistent viral replication receiving adefovir dipivoxil. *J Hepatol* 2009; **50**: S328

S- Editor Zhang HN **L- Editor** Herholdt A **E- Editor** Ma WH

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.48

World J Hepatol 2009 October 31; 1(1): 48-61
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

REVIEW

Surveillance and diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with cirrhosis

Lorenzo Andreana, Graziella Isgrò, Maria Pleguezuelo, Giacomo Germani, Andrew K Burroughs

Lorenzo Andreana, Graziella Isgrò, Maria Pleguezuelo, Giacomo Germani, Andrew K Burroughs, The Royal Free Sheila Sherlock Liver Center, Departement of Surgery, Royal Free Hospital, London, NW3 2QG, United Kingdom
Author contributions: Andreana L and Burroughs AK wrote the paper, Isgrò G conseived the figure, Pleguezuelo M and Germani G contributed equally on tables.
Correspondence to: Andrew K Burroughs, Professor, The Royal Free Sheila Sherlock Liver Center, Department of Surgery, Royal Free Hospital, Pond Street, London, NW3 2QG United Kingdom. andrew.burroughs@royalfree.nhs.uk
Telephone: +44-20-74726229 Fax: +44-20-74726226
Received: June 22, 2009 Revised: September 11, 2009
Accepted: September 18, 2009
Published online: October 31, 2009

Abstract

Early identification of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is more frequent because of surveillance programs for HCC worldwide. The optimal strategy of surveillance in cirrhosis is a current topical issue. In terms of diagnosis, recent advances in non-invasive imaging technology, including various techniques of harmonic ultrasound, new ultrasound contrast agents, multi-slice helical computed tomography and rapid high quality magnetic resonance, have all improved the accuracy of diagnosis. Consequently the role of liver biopsy in diagnosis of HCC has declined. The imaging diagnosis relies on the hallmark of arterial hypervascularity with portal venous washout. However, with recent advances in genomics and proteomics a great number of potential serum and tissue markers have been identified and are being developed as new candidate markers for both diagnosis and prognosis of hepatocellular carcinoma, and may increase the need for liver biopsy.

Key words: Hepatocellular carcinoma; Liver neoplasm; Screening; Diagnosis; Imaging; Liver biopsy; Molecular markers

Peer reviewer: Donald Peter McManus, Professor and Head, Molecular Parasitology Laboratory, Division of Infectious Diseases, Queensland Institute of Medical Research, 300 Herston Road, Brisbane, Queensland 4006, Australia

Andreana L, Isgrò G, Pleguezuelo M, Germani G, Burroughs AK. Surveillance and diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with cirrhosis. *World J Hepatol* 2009; 1(1): 48-61 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v1/i1/48.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.48

INTRODUCTION

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is the most common primary hepatic malignancy worldwide and it represents the leading cause of death in patients with cirrhosis in Europe[1]. Malignant hepatic cell transformation is more frequent in cirrhotic livers, accounting for 80%-90% of overall autopsied series[2]. Between 59% and 94% of new diagnosed nodules in cirrhosis are histologically characterized as malignant[3,4] and about 50% of the hemangioma-like lesions in cirrhosis are shown to be HCC[5]. It is reasonable and common clinical practice to consider any lesions in a cirrhotic liver, as malignant until proven otherwise.

In developed countries there are surveillance programs for "at-risk" people, including those with cirrhosis, to identify the malignant lesions when they are small. For this purpose differentiating between early HCC and a dysplastic nodule is an important issue in a routine clinical setting.

Recent advances in non invasive imaging technology for the diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma include various techniques of tissue harmonic ultrasound (US) imaging, new US contrast agents, multi-slice helical computed tomography (CT) and rapid high quality

magnetic resonance (MRI) with new, tissue-specific contrast agents.

Ultrasonography is the first line of investigation in the detection of focal liver lesions, particularly as it used for surveillance of HCC in patients with cirrhosis, as it has relatively low cost, is non invasive and has wide spread availability[6].

SURVEILLANCE AND SCREENING

Surveillance of HCC in patients with cirrhosis in most centres is performed using 6-monthly US and in some centres this is combined with α-fetoprotein (AFP).

Data to support the effectiveness of ultrasound surveillance are sparse because of ethical problems of not performing ultrasound as it is part of current clinical practise[7-10].

The value of using AFP for surveillance has not been validated but once a nodule has been detected is useful[11]. The AFP test, with a cut-off value of 20 ng/mL, has a sensitivity from 41% to 65%[11-16]: lowering the cut-off value and changing it for different etiologies of liver disease, such as in HBV carriers results in greatest sensitivity[17]. Currently, HCC screening with AFP alone is not recommended, except when US either is not available or of poor quality[18]. Moreover AFP measurement together with US screening, is not cost-effective[19], as it only increases sensitivity by about 10% compared to US screening alone[20].

However, high levels of AFP can identify an "at risk" category of patients with cirrhosis that require surveillance[21] (Table 1).

In the sole randomized controlled trial performed in China, which also included individuals without cirrhosis, the survival rate at five years after enrolment was 46.4% in the surveillance group (AFP plus US scan every 6 mo) against 0% in the control group[22].

Indirect proof of the utility of a surveillance strategy is the resulting change in presentation of HCC, with an increased rate of detection of tumors < 2 cm in diameter. In fact while tumors less then 2 cm in diameter represented less than 5% of the cases in the early nineties in Europe, now they represent up to at least 30% in Japan[23]. However, the increased diagnosis of HCC does not necessarily mean an improvement in survival[24], although a well documented cohort study does suggest this[10]. More data are need to substantiate the value of this strategy. Based on the estimated HCC doubling time and cost-effectiveness estimates, the recommended screening interval is 6 mo, although a 1 year interval seems to be as effective[25].

An additional consideration is the fact that ultrasound imaging requires good equipment and skilled operators. In a retrospective study in patients with cirrhosis five-year survival was better in the group screened in a specialized centre (52%) *versus* the group screened in non-specialized centres (40%)[26]. Surveillance programs for HCC would benefit from the same organizational setup as breast programs, with recall facilities and dedicated centres.

Table 1 At risk population for HCC surveillance: AASLD guide lines[21]

Hepatitis B carriers
Asian males 40 years or more
Asian females 50 years or more
All cirrhotic hepatitis B carriers
Family history of HCC
Africans over age 20
For non-cirrhotic hepatitis B carriers not listed above the risk of HCC varies depending on the severity of the underlying liver disease, and current and past hepatic inflammatory activity. Patients with high HBV DNA concentrations and those with ongoing hepatic inflammatory activity remain at risk for HCC
Non-hepatitis B cirrhosis
Hepatitis C
Alcoholic cirrhosis
Genetic hemochromatosis
Primary biliary cirrhosis
Group with lack of evidence. Although the following groups have an increased risk of HCC no recommendations for or against surveillance can be made because a lack of data precludes an assessment of whether surveillance would be beneficial: α1-antitrypsin deficiency, non-alcoholic steatohepatitis, autoimmune hepatitis

Ultrasound surveillance as it is currently practised has an acceptable sensitivity of 65%-80% and has a upper level of specificity of more than 90%[7,21,27]. Tumor size significantly affects the sensitivity of US in detecting HCC. Sensitivity ranges from 42% for lesions smaller than 1 cm[28,29] to 95% for tumors of larger size[30]. In pre-transplant screening, the US sensitivity is poor because of the coarse echotexture of the liver, the frequent presence of ascites and the high rate of malignant lesions present in end-stage liver disease[31]. In a retrospective study on 200 patients who underwent liver transplantation, within 3 mo of previous screening, the US scanning was correlated with explanted livers, and had a sensitivity of only 13.6% to 50% for lesions of 1-5 cm in diameter[32]. Therefore in liver transplant candidates, CT or MRI scanning should be performed[33].

Using grey-scale US more than 76% of hepatocellular cancers smaller than 2 cm appear as hypoechoic, with or without posterior enhancement[34]. About 17% of small HCC show an hyperechoic appearance[34,35], features related to the fatty changes occurring during the evolution of the borderline lesion. Fewer small HCC lesions appear isoechoic[34,35]. Lesions larger than 2 cm in diameter show a more heterogeneous pattern than smaller lesions because of the changes during the growth of the lesion (i.e. development of necrotic hypoechoic areas, calcifications and pseudocapsule). In these cases the presence of the "halo sign" and posterior enhancement increase the specificity of diagnosis[21,27,31].

The use of doppler US or power doppler US may help establish the nature of the lesion by detecting

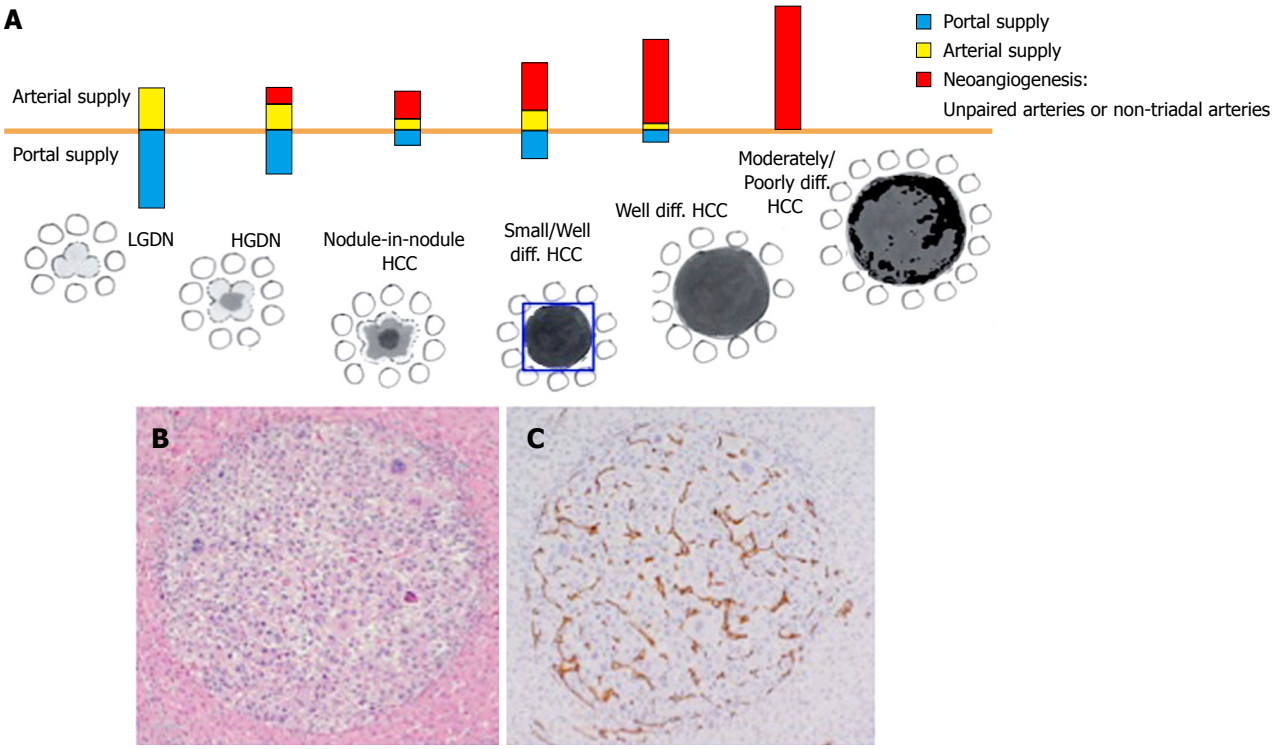


Figure 1 The diagram shows the changes of intranodular blood supply that characterises HCC (A); The sampled small/well differentiated HCC shows in HE (B) compact carcinomatous tissue well circumscribed from dysplastic tissue; CD34 immunostain of the same nodule (C) demonstrates arteries not confined to portal tracts in HCC. diff.: Differentiated.

arterial vascularization. However, in small HCC and in lesions located deep within the liver parenchyma, the sensitivity of doppler is low and a typical arterial pulsatile flow arterial pattern is detected in only 50% of nodules [31,36]. Colour or power Doppler US of large HCC often demonstrate a basket pattern, with a fine blood network surrounding the nodule and flowing into it[37].

When new nodules are found in a cirrhotic liver, these must be characterized with a contrast-enhanced imaging technique. During surveillance using double harmonic-equipped US machine, the same operator can also diagnose an HCC with contrast-enhanced US (CEUS). This make CEUS more cost-effective[38]. However, MRI or CT are needed whenever a second technique of imaging is needed, particularly if the lesions is 1-2 cm in diameter, and to image the whole liver to ensure there are no other lesions. A chest CT can be done at the same time, to exclude the presence of metastases.

DIAGNOSIS-IMAGING BASED ON BLOOD SUPPLY AND TISSUE CHARACTERIZZATION

In 2001 the European Association for the Study of the Liver (EASL) published a consensus statement defining histological and radiological criteria for the identification of HCC, and categorizing patients with cirrhosis and HCC on the basis of the size of presumed nodule[18]. In 2005, practice guidelines deriving from EASL, American Association of Study for the Liver Diseases (AASLD) and Japanese Society of Hepatology (JSH) revised the 2001 statements[21], giving prime diagnostic importance to arterial hypervascularization together with portal venous washout, and adding CEUS as a non invasive diagnostic technique[21,39].

In the multistep process of hepatocarcinogenesis there is a progressive change in the vascular supply that consists of an increase in arterial blood supply and loss of portal blood. Contrast enhancing agents can characterize the vascular pattern of focal liver lesions secondary to hepatocellular transformation with a good correlation between grade of HCC malignancy and intranodular hemodynamics[40,41] (Figure 1).

The typical feature of HCC, demonstrated by using intravenous contrast media that show extracellular-vascular distribution, consists of arterial enhancement with early portal and venous phase wash-out. Imaging techniques recommended in EASL/AASLD/JSH guidelines[21] are: triphasic CT with iodinated contrast media (but not lipiodol because of its low sensitivity), dynamic MRI enhanced by gadolinium or manganese based media (that have also a slightly hepatocellular uptake with biliary excretion) and CEUS with microbubble contrast agents[21]. Conventional angiography and CT hepatic arteriography-portography can be used, but are rarely necessary for diagnosis.

The average sensitivity, specificity and especially the predictive positive values of these techniques are currently comparable (Table 2).

Table 2 Overall sensitivity, specificity and predictive value of imaging technique for the diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma

Study	Nunber of patients (*n*)	HCC patients/ HCC instances	Gold standard reference	Imaging technique	Sensitivity (%)	Specificity (%)	PPV (%)	Ref.
Ward *et al* (2000)	145	25/76	Explant/ biopsy	MR (SPIO)	66	NA	NA	[72]
				MR (Double)	80	NA	93.5	
Rode *et al* (2001)	43	18/13	Explant	SDCT	53.8	92.9	94.3	[58]
				MR (Gd)	76.9	57.1	42.3	
Krinsky *et al* (2001)	71	10/19	Explant	MR (Gd)	53	NA	96.9	[69]
Krinsky *et al* (2002)	24	24/> 118	Explant	MR (Gd)	33	NA	NA	[70]
De Ledingen *et al* (2002)	34	21/54	Explant	MDCT	51.9	84.6 pts[2]	89.5	[55]
				MR (Gd)	61.1	100[2]	100	
Libbrecht *et al* (2002)	49	17/77	Explant	MDCT	70 pts[1]	82[2]	NA	[57]
				MR (Gd)	50[1]	79[2]	NA	
Zacherl *et al* (2002)	23	23/50	Explant	MDCT	75	NA	64	[62]
Barthia *et al* (2003)	31	14/32	Explant	MR (Double)	78	NA	NA	[31]
Burrell *et al* (2003)	50	29/76	Explant	MDCT	61	NA	87	[3]
				MR (MRA)	76	NA	90	
Teefey *et al* (2003)[3]	22	9/18	Explant	MDCT	57-67 pts[1]	69-75[2]	NA	[60]
				MR (Gd)	50-56[1]	63-81[2]	NA	
Battakiarjya *et al* (2004)	30	30/46	Explant	MDCT	67.4	78.9	NA	[53]
				IOCT	68	88.6	NA	
Kim *et al* (2004)	27	27/50	Biopsy/clinical/ radiological	MR (Gd)	91.3	NA	92.6	[68]
				MR (SPIO)	77.3	NA	NA	
Valls *et al* (2004)	85	51/85	Explant	MDCT	78.8 pts	NA	88	[61]
Kim *et al* (2006)	46	31/53	Biopsy/clinical/ radiological	MDCT	77.4-79.2	NA	95-97	[56]
				MR (Gd)	92.5-94.3	NA	92-96	
Hecht *et al* (2006)	38	18/19	Explant	MR (Gd)	68.4	65.7	NA	[67]
Ronzoni *et al* (2007)	88	48/139	Explant	MDCT	64	NA	66.9	[59]
					73.3	NA	79	
Lauenstein *et al* (2007)	115	27/36	Explant	MR (Gd)	77.8	NA	NA	[71]
Forner *et al* (2008)	89	60/60	Biopsy	MR (Gd)	61.7	96.6	NA	[42]
				CEUS	51.7	93.1	NA	
Dai *et al* (2008)	498	NA/56	Biopsy/ resection	MDCT	80.4	97.9	NA	[52]
				CEUS	91.1	87.2	NA	
Choi *et al* (2008)		47/41	Explant	MDCT	65	NA	NA	[54]
				MR (Gd)	83	NA	NA	

[1]Patient-based sensitivity; [2]Patient-based specificity; [3]Two observers; [4]Three observers. CEUS: Contrast-enhanced ultrasonography; Gd: Gadolinium; HCC Hepatocellular carcinoma; IOCT: Ionized oil computed tomography; MDCT: Multi-detector computed tomography; MR: Magnetic resonance; MRA: Breath-old 3D gadolinium-enhanced angiography; MR (Double): Double-contrast MR with gadolinium and superparamagnetic iron oxide agents; NA: Not applicable; PPV: Positive predictive value; pts: patients; SDCT: Single-detector computed tomography; SPIO: Superparamagnetic iron oxide.

Part of the current recommendations[21], is that the diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma when the focal liver lesion is larger than 2 cm in diameter can be confidently made using one dynamic imaging technique which demonstrate the typical pattern of HCC (Table 3). Moreover if AFP serum level is > 200 ng/mL and the radiological appearance of the lesion is suggestive of HCC, the likelihood that the lesion is HCC is high, even without classical vascular enhancement and washout[21].

When there are nodules between 1 and 2 cm in diameter two concordant dynamic imaging techniques are needed to confirm HCC[21] (Table 3).

Only one prospective study has been published validating the international guidelines for nodules smaller than 20 mm in diameter[42]. In this study, MRI and CEUS were concordant for HCC in only 33.3% of cases, showing a poor predictive negative value of 42% (slightly higher if only considering lesions of more than 1 cm in diameter). In addition, commenting on the above-quoted study, Caturelli *et al*[43] suggest that the first diagnostic approach to a newly found liver lesion smaller than 20 mm in diameter should be a fine-needle aspiration, as this technique reaches a higher diagnostic accuracy than that reported for the two concordant imaging techniques[42,43]. Otherwise these lesions should not be treated as HCC, without histological evidence, as the false positive rate is about 20%[44]. Thus a biopsy of the lesion is required if confirmation of diagnosis of HCC is needed. Alternatively repeat imaging in 2-3 mo may resolve the issue.

Table 3 Newly found focal liver lesion in patients with cirrhosis. Screening and diagnosis: AASLD guide lines[21]

Focal lesion < 1 cm diameter: screen every 3-4 mo
Focal lesion 1-2 cm diameter: HCC diagnosed when 2 dynamic imaging techniques are concordant for HCC feature
Focal lesion > 2 cm diameter: HCC diagnosed with feature of HCC on 1 dynamic imaging technique

Lesions < 1 cm in diameter may be especially difficult

to characterize, even with the best imaging techniques. These small nodules are less likely to be HCC, even if they show hypervascularity with imaging techniques. These nodules need to be followed-up with US every 3-4 mo in order to determine if there is growth suggestive of malignant transformation (Table 3). If the nodule enlarges during follow-up, the criteria related to the particular size reached, pertain[21]. For this size of lesion, histology may not able to confirm the diagnosis.

Regenerative nodules and borderline lesions, such as dysplastic nodules and early HCC, show an inconsistent pattern of vascular enhancement. Benign regenerative nodules can also be hypervascular and if their diameter is between 1 and 2 cm, they should biopsied to resolve the diagnosis.

In addition, in smaller lesions the amount of Kupffer cells and fatty changes can be very variable, in comparison to overt HCC[45]. MRI with the use of super paramagnetic iron oxide (SPIO) enhancement, can be useful to characterize these lesions.

Characterisation of these smaller nodules poses a diagnostic challenge as they are more difficult to characterize even with pathological examination[23], although stromal invasion by "carcinomatous" cells, is associated with malignancy.

DIAGNOSIS - CEUS, CT AND MRI AS SINGLE TECHNIQUES: ADVANTAGES AND LIMITS

CEUS

In ultrasonography the main advance has been contrast-enhanced ultrasonography, which has improved the accuracy of ultrasound in detecting focal lesions, combining morphological aspects with functional perfusion ones[46]. CEUS is also very useful for assessment of HCC after treatment and has a good correlation with CT findings[47]. After trans-arterial embolization using lipiodol-based compounds that leave a radio-opaque shadow, only CEUS or dynamic MRI can detect residual vascularity.

Several reports have shown that CEUS is a good tool to show arterial hypervascularity of HCC. Two studies showed that CEUS has a higher detection rate compared to CT for lesions ⩽ 2 cm (53.6% *vs* 42.9% and 61% *vs* 49%)[48,49]. However, a more recent study, comparing CEUS with MRI, found that CEUS was slightly inferior to dynamic MR imaging in showing the presence of arterial hypervascularity (78% *vs* 85%)[42]. The sole detection of arterial hypervascularity without contrast wash-out in a small solitary lesion of ⩽ 2 cm in the setting of cirrhosis has a specificity of 86.2% and a positive predictive value of 92.2% for the diagnosis of HCC and thus cannot be considered as a conclusive finding[42]. Therefore, to increase the specificity of diagnosis it is necessary to evaluate contrast wash-out during the portal venous and the late phase as is currently recommended. Wang *et al*[50] found that the combination of arterial phase enhancement and the contrast wash-out during the portal venous and the late phase determined by CEUS are more specific for HCC if nodules < 2 cm, compared with the use of either arterial phase enhancement or the absence of delayed phase enhancement considered separately (91.7% *vs* 66.7%).

Considering CT as the gold standard, the sensitivity of CEUS in detecting HCC decreases with smaller tumoral lesions. Two studies have found that lesion base sensitivity was 89.3% for nodules < 2 cm and 67% for nodules < 1 cm[51]. In a recent study, 72 patients with cirrhosis with 103 small hepatic nodules (1-2 cm) detected on US, underwent CEUS and CT. Nodules which had contrast enhancement during the arterial phase and contrast wash-out during the late phase on CEUS or CT were diagnosed as HCC. According on these diagnostic criteria the sensitivity of CEUS was 91.1% and specificity 87.2%[52].

CT

Helical CT and more recently multi-detector helical CT (MDCT), which has improved spatial and temporal resolution, has increased the accuracy of CT in diagnosis of HCC[47]. Several studies, most using correlation with explanted liver after transplantation, show that the overall sensitivity, specificity and positive predictive value of CT in diagnosis of HCC ranges from 51.9%-80.4%, 78.9%-97.9% and 88.6%-92.9% respectively[52-62].

Among studies that have assessed the sensitivity of CT in diagnosis of HCC and stratified for tumor size, the sensitivity for HCC < 2 cm in diameter was 61%, for HCC of 1-2 cm it ranged from 53.3% to 76%[3,53,58,59,61], and for HCC <1 cm in diameter it ranged from 10% to 57%[3,53-56,58,59].

CT requires intravenous iodinated contrast material and exposes patients to ionizing radiation. Although induction of renal failure by contrast is low, patients with liver cirrhosis frequently have renal dysfunction limiting its use[63], and the efficacy of N-acetylcysteine for preventing contrast induced-nephrotoxicity is not substantiated[64].

MRI

The application of MRI for liver imaging continues to expand with the recent progress of rapid, high-quality scanning techniques and the development of new tissue-specific contrast agents. Although initially used to complement CT in selective applications, MRI now plays an important primary role (after US) for the detection and characterization of liver tumors[65]. Extracellular intravenous contrast agents and novel tissue specific contrast agents are used to assess patterns of enhancement. Mostly, gadolinium-chelates are used for MRI, but hepatocyte-targeted and reticolo-endothelial system-targeted compounds are also used. Many studies have been published on the sensitivity and specificity of MRI imaging for diagnosis of HCC[3,42,54,55,57,58,60,66-72]. Among studies with liver explant correlation, the sensitivity, specificity and positive predictive value ranged from 33%

to 83%, from 57.1% to 100% and from 42.3% to 100% respectively[3,54,55,57,58,60,66,67,69-72]. Studies which evaluated the sensitivity of MRI in detecting HCC, using only liver biopsy or clinical and radiological findings as gold standard, have shown an overall sensitivity, specificity and positive predictive value of 77.3% to 94.3%, 96.6% and of 92.6% to 97% respectively[42,56,68].

For MRI, the lesion-based sensitivity stratified for tumor size was 55.6% for < 2 cm in diameter; for HCC 1-2 cm in diameter it ranged from 52% to 89%[3,58,69,70], and for HCC <1cm in diameter it ranged from 4% to 88.2%[3,54-56,58,66,69,70,72].Super paramagnetic iron oxide particles used alone[56] or combined with gadolinium-based contrast agents[66,2] are highly sensitive for the diagnosis of small HCC. Ward *et al*[72] found a sensitivity of 91% for HCC ⩾ 1 cm and of 46% for HCC ⩽ 1 cm with double-contrast MRI. Another study [66] showed a sensitivity of 92% for HCC between 1 and 2 cm and 38% for HCC ⩽ 1 cm. The sensitivity of MRA was shown to be superior to CT, but it also decreased with size of tumor (84% for nodules between 1 and 2 cm; 32% for nodules < 1 cm) [3]. In contrast when gadolinium-enhanced multiphase dynamic MRI was compared with MDCT scanning, for detecting small HCC, the sensitivity of detection for HCC <1 cm was higher with MDCT than with MRI (90%-95% *vs* 70%-85%)[73].

Whether MRI or CT should be the first imaging technique to characterise a nodule after ultrasound depends on the availability and characteristics of either technology in any one centre. Comparison of these is complicated by comparison of different generation machines[74] and different types of tumor. In general modern MRI appears more sensitive for the diagnosis of smaller nodules < 1.5 cm in a cirrhotic liver and in distinguishing regenerative/dysplastic nodules *versus* malignant ones. The importance of the experience of the reporting radiologist should not be underestimated here. Moreover every diagnostic imaging tool has some specific advantage and combination of more than one imaging technique, for difficult focal liver lesions, often increases diagnostic yield.

DIAGNOSIS-LIVER LESION BIOPSY AND TISSUE MARKERS

Many variables affect the accuracy of pathological diagnosis, with sampling being the most important. Many studies evaluating and/or validating immunostaining techniques, have used specimens obtained from resected or explanted livers. However, in clinical practice it is percutaneous biopsy specimens that are available. Biopsy specimens often are small, and represent a fraction of the tumor, so that a lack of immunostaining may simply be the result of inadequate sampling. Using standardized panels with more than one immunostaining method, may result in more confident histological diagnosis of HCC, with a better reproducibility and accuracy, but this needs to be evaluated formally using biopsy specimens.

The role of liver biopsy, in diagnosis of HCC in patients with cirrhosis, has declined during the past few years because better radiological techniques have enormously improved the accuracy of diagnosis. However, when the imaging characteristics are not typical together with AFP < 200 ng/mL, the diagnosis is not reliable without a biopsy sample, as recommended in the joint EASL/AASLD/JSH guidelines[21].

Even though the specificity and positive predictive value of nodule biopsy is high, its negative predictive value is low. Considering that there is a 10% risk of false negativity, the presence of HCC cannot be excluded when a biopsy is negative for HCC. Moreover, it has been suggested that a second biopsy performed immediately after the first one has a limited chance of success, with a gain in diagnosis of HCC of only approximately 5%[44,48,75]. In patients with HCC < 2 cm in whom the first nodule biopsy is negative, repeated imaging is preferred to performing a second biopsy. Whether the risk of false-negative findings is far higher in patients with small nodules (< 2 cm in size), compared with larger nodules, has not been yet clearly demonstrated. However, this is likely, as optimal placement of the needle in smaller nodules is more difficult. Indeed a study of the technical aspects of biopsying nodules ⩽ 1 cm has not been published. However, independent of the size of nodules, the risk of false-negative is higher for those located on the posterior and superior segments of the liver[76].

Percutaneous biopsy of HCC carries a potential risk of tumor seeding along the needle tract. The median risk of seeding is 1%-2%, and is higher if performed alone, compared to combining biopsy with percutaneous ablative techniques[77,78]. Seeding can become manifest after liver transplantation[77,78]. However, if biopsy is necessary, with an indeterminate lesion, it should be combined with percutaneous ablation[77,78]. Another technical variant that may help prevent seeding is the use of a coaxial 17-gauge introducer needle before a 18-gauge biopsy needle, to isolate liver parenchyma during the run of biopsy needle[79]. This should be subject to a comparative study.

Ultrasound-guided fine-needle aspiration (FNA) cytology has been used as an alternative to biopsy because samples can be obtained with smaller needles (23 gauge). Although the specificity and positive predictive value of FNA examination for focal liver lesions is reasonable, the sensitivity ranges between 67% and 93% and thus diagnostic accuracy is less than for histology[77], and risk of seeding is not reduced. Fine-needle aspiration cytology is not recommended for diagnosis.

Histologically diagnosing borderline lesions represents the "Gordian knot" in HCC diagnostics. The three criteria listed from the International Working Party to differentiate HCC from an high grade dysplastic nodule and well-differentiated HCC are: cellular density more than twice normal, irregular nuclear contour of lesion cells and invasion of stroma or portal tract[80]. Tissue

Table 4 Immunohistochemistry for HCC

Marker	Staining pattern	Diagnostic use	Diagnostic value	Ref.
AFP	Specific for HCC Cytoplasm	Expressed in HCC cells cytoplasm but also in: fetal liver, hepatoid tumors, germ cells tumors	Sensitivity 17%-68% Specificity 97% For HCC	[89-104]
GP-3	Specific for HCC Cytoplasm	Expressed in HCC cell cytoplasm (less so if fibrolamellar or sarcomatoid variants) but also in: fetal liver, hepatoblastoma, melanoma	Sensitivity 49%-91% Specificity 89%-100% For HCC	[81,109-115]
CD-34	Endothelium	Surface of normal endothelium and HCC trabeculae or acini but also in: myelodysplasia in transformation, GI stromal tumors (high coexpression with bcl-2)	HCC positivity 82%	[117]
p-CEA	Biliary canalicula	Identifies biliary glycoprotein 1 on hepatocyte canalicular pole and cholangiocyte. Useful for differential diagnosis *vs* cholangiocarcinoma, other adenocarcinoma	HCC positivity 24%-90%	[94,98,100,118-128]
CD-10	Biliary canalicula	Surface of biliary tract cells and in HCC, but also positive in: B cell lymphomas, renal cells carcinoma, melanoma, prostate and pancreas adenocarcinoma. Useful for differential diagnosis *vs* cholangiocarcinoma, other adenocarcinomas	HCC positivity 28%-86%	[94,98,100,119,120,122-124,126,128]
Ki67	Cell proliferation marker	Assessing cell proliferation rate, correlates with tumor grade and clinical course. Useful to differentiate between HCC and hepatic adenoma	HCC positivity rate 10%-50%	[129]
HepPar1	HCC & normal Hepatocyte citoplasm	Expressed in HCC and in normal liver cells, but also in hepatoblastoma. useful for differential diagnosis *vs* cholangiocarcinoma and metastases	HCC positivity 66%-100%	[130-136]
Cytokeratins	Epithelial cells	Useful for differential diagnosis *vs* cholangiocarcinoma. HCC profile: CK7/CK19/CK8/CK18 = - / - / + / +	HCC positivity 76%-96%	[97,101,104,137-140]

markers of HCC might provide a more standardized diagnosis especially for early/well-differentiated HCC and may give information about the probable phenotypic behaviour and thus guide therapy.

Tissue markers

Studies using genome-wide DNA microarray or quantitative real time reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reactions have been done to identify tissue markers of early HCC, in particular to distinguish HCC from dysplastic nodules: Glypican-3 (GPC-3)[81], TGF-b1[82,83], heat shock proteins (HSP) HSP-70 and HSP-27 are the most studied as they inhibit apoptosis[84].

Proteomic studies on liver tissue have traditionally utilized a combination of two-dimensional gel electrophoresis and mass spectrometry analysis[85]. Zeindl-Eberhart *et al*[86] demonstrated the immunoreactivity of aldose reductase-like protein variants (h-ARLP) in cells of HCC and their absence or low signal in normal and cirrhotic livers, fibrolamellar carcinoma or hepatic adenomas. In a more recent study Li *et al*[87] evaluated patients with HCC in HBV-related liver cirrhosis and found 80 proteins with differential expression in HCC. Among these, only two proteins (proliferating cell antigen and stathmin 1) were confirmed by Western blotting analysis.

A 3-gene set (GP3, LYVE1 and survivin) has been proposed as molecular diagnosis of early HCC with accuracy rates of 85%-95% in training and validation sets of more than 70 samples[88].

Current markers available for routine immunochemistry, show different ranges of sensitivity, and few of these are specific to HCC (as are AFP and GP-3). Although there are always false positives and negatives, other markers can be useful for differential diagnosis of HCC *versus* benign nodule or non-HCC cancers, if the specific HCC markers are negative and/or the experience of the pathologist suggests their use. Trying to classify these immunostaining patterns which are useful to build an HCC diagnostic panel, there are five groups of markers (Table 4): 1. specific HCC products, including, AFP and GP-3; 2. vascular pattern markers, such as CD34; 3. canalicular pattern markers, including polyclonal carcinoembryonic antigen (p-CEA) and CD10; 4. markers of cell proliferation such as Ki67; 5. other hepatocellular products as HepPar1 and cytokeratins.

AFP

AFP is a fetal-specific glycoprotein with a molecular weight of 70 kDa, whose synthesis declines rapidly after birth. The immunohistochemical use of AFP staining has very low sensitivity as it detects just 17%-68% of malignant hepatocellular lesions when used alone[89-103]. In a study by Murakata *et al*[104] there was no staining of clear-cell HCC. However, the specificity of AFP is high with an average value of 97%[89,92,93,95,96,99,101,104].

GP-3

GP-3 is a member of the heparan sulfate proteoglycan family, linked to the cell surface through glycosylphosphatidyl inositol, which may also be found in a secreted form. In patients with HCC, GP-3 is over expressed in neoplastic liver tissue and elevated in the serum but is undetectable in normal liver. Melanoma[105], testicular germ cell tumors[106], Wilms tumor, hepatoblastoma[107], among non-HCC malignant neoplasms, and focal

nodular hyperplasia, regenerative and dysplastic cirrhotic nodules, among liver benign and pre-malignant lesions, may be positive for GPC-3[108-110].

Immunostaining for GP-3 can be focal and so it not surprising that there is a lower sensitivity in studies using needle core biopsy[111,112] and FNA[113]. Wang *et al*[109] using 1-mm tissue microarray also demonstrated a sub-optimal sensitivity of GP-3 (70%). In a recent study using a fine-needle aspiration specimen GP-3 had a sensitivity of only 56.8%. The author suggested that the HCC specimen fixation in alcohol rather than in formalin reduced the positivity rate for GP-3[113], although this has not been confirmed. In the literature the GPC-3 sensitivity and specificity ranges from 49% to 90.5% and from 88.5% to 100% respectively[81,109-115]. Dysplastic nodules show a weak positivity of 0%-25% when low grade[109,110,114] and of 20%-75% when high grade[109,110,114].

CD34

CD34 is a 110 kDa transmembrane glycoprotein founded on normal endothelium. It is absent in normal liver sinusoids. The immunostain highlights regions of sinusoids, both in the vicinity of portal tracts in normal liver, and in areas of capillarization such as occur in the periphery of cirrhotic regenerative nodules[116]. In HCC samples an encircling pattern showing the endothelial cells investing the trabeculae and acini or a fine sinusoidal pattern, may be present in 82.5% of cases[117]. Overall specificity of this immunostaining is poor. However, the gradual increase in CD34 expression in HCC, reflecting the progressive arterialization due to hepatocarcinogenesis, eventually results in a complete CD34 immunostaining pattern, so that specificity becomes acceptable[115].

p-CEA

Polyclonal antibodies against carcinoembryonic antigen cross-react with biliary glycoprotein 1 expressed on cholangiocyte surfaces and on hepatocyte canalicular poles. In HCC, biliary glycoprotein 1 co-localisation may show a typical canalicular pattern. This is useful immunostaining for the differential diagnosis of HCC when it is a sclerosing or acinar variant (versus cholangiocarcinoma) or where there is pseudoglandular formation and/or clear cell changes in HCC (usually poorly differentiated HCC which is useful *versus* the differential of epithelial metastases). Immunostaining for p-CEA is reported positive in 24%-90% of HCC[94,98,100,118-128].

CD10

The diagnostic usefulness of CD10 immunostaining is analogous of that of p-CEA, with a lower sensitivity (28%-86%)[94,98,100,119,120,122-124,126,128], but with a specificity of 100%[119,122,123,126,128].

Ki67

Ki67 is a monoclonal antibody which reacts with nuclear proteins expressed in the G1, G2, M and S phases of cell cycle[129]. Evaluating the rate of proliferation is particularly useful for evaluating HCC grade and in differentiating between liver cell adenoma and HCC.

HepPar1

HepPar1 is an antibody which, on paraffin-embedded tissue, links mitochondrial antigens from both malignant and non-malignant hepatic cells, giving a granular cytoplasmic pattern on immunostaining. Is an excellent marker for HCC diagnosis, distinguishing between HCC and liver metastasis or cholangiocarcinoma. It has a similar accuracy to core needle biopsy and in FNA sampling, with a sensitivity of 66%-100% and a specificity of 70.8%-100%[130-136].

Cytokeratins

A subclass of the intermediate filaments family, the cytokeratins (CKs) are expressed in human liver with a characteristic distribution. CK8 and CK18 stain hepatocytes, CK8, CK7, CK18, and CK19 are present in bile duct cells. CK7 and CK19 are not usually present in HCC (76%-96% immunonegative)[97,101,104,137-140], but they exist in many adenocarcinomas, including, cholangiocarcinoma.

DIAGNOSIS-SERUM MOLECULAR MARKERS

Serum tumor markers have several potential uses: for early diagnosis of HCC in high risk patients, in determining prognosis, to estimate tumor volume as well as to monitor therapeutic response and detect recurrence[141].

AFP

The increase of serum AFP may relate to hepatocarcinogenesis but also to hepatic regeneration in chronic liver disease, and may also occur in embryonic carcinomas, gastric and lung cancers[142-147]. Moreover the positive predictive value for the diagnosis of HCC varies with the cut-off value used, ethnicity of the patients, treatment and tumor stage. An AFP with a cut off value of 20 ng/mL has a sensitivity and specificity for HCC diagnosis of 41%-65% and 80%-94% respectively[146]. About 42% of HCC are diagnosed in the absence of a raised AFP[29]. However, AFP confirms the diagnosis of HCC in cirrhosis when the value is over 200 ng/mL when the suspected nodule is larger than 2 cm[21]. A value of $\geqslant$ 400 ng/mL is often associated with the large volume of the tumor mass and/or the carcinomatous involvement of the portal vein, and with a poor median survival rate[145]. In a recent study about 61% of patients with AFP level of > 1000 ng/mL presented with vascular invasion[148].

Alpha-Fetoprotein-L3 (AFP-L3)

Studies on a fucosylated variant of the AFP glycoprotein

which has a high affinity to the sugar chain of Lens culinaris showed increased activities in patients with chronic liver disease and HCC. However, sensitivity and specificity range from 36.5% to 71% and from 63% to 91.6%, respectively[149,150]. When compared with AFP, AFP-L3 showed a higher specificity but similar sensitivity. The disease specificity of this marker is limited as non-tumoral, extrahepatic disease (diabetes, pancreatitis and hypothyroidism) are associated with increased serum levels.

Des-g-carboxy prothrombin (DCP)

DCP also known as a protein induced by the absence of vitamin K or antagonist Ⅱ (PIVKA-Ⅱ) was reported firstly by Liebman *et al*[151] as a candidate biomarker for the diagnosis of HCC. Recent case-control studies documented a sensitivity and specificity ranging from 58% to 89% and 93% to 97% respectively[152-154],and one of these studies found that DCP had a higher sensitivity in the diagnosis of small HCC when compared to AFP and AFP-L3[154].

GPC-3

GPC-3 has been mainly evaluated at the tissue level, although some studies report that GPC-3 can be found in the serum in about 55% of patients with HCC. On the other hand GPC-3 is not detectable in healthy subjects and in patients with liver cirrhosis without HCC[114]. The sensitivity and specificity of serum GPC-3 in diagnosing HCC was reported to be 51% and 90% respectively[155].

GP73

GP73, a Golgi glycoprotein is overexpressed in viral-related HCC[156,157]. Total circulating GP73 can be positive in AFP negative cancer[158].

Other studies have evaluated hepatocyte growth factor[85,159], insulin growth factor[160,161], vascular endothelial growth factor[162] (which correlates with venous invasion), transforming growth factor TGFb1[163-165], IL-6 and IL-10[166,167], hepatoma-specific g-glutamyl-transferase GGTII[168], human cervical cancer oncogene (HCCR)[169] (HCC < 2 cm the positive predictive rate in HCC was 69.2%) and tumor-derived autoantibodies (TAA)[170,171].

Although numerous biomarkers with potential diagnostic or prognostic significance for HCC have been identified there are currently only two FDA-approved tumor markers (AFP and AFP-L3). It is likely that panels of 2 or 3 serum and tissue tumor markers will be used in routine clinical practice in the near future. A standardized approach is required to assess panels of tumor markers and validation is needed in large patient cohorts preferably from multiple centres. In the future, new markers may help not only to diagnose indeterminate lesions based on today's criteria but also to distinguish between HCC with worse or better prognosis.

Diagnosis of HCC lesions in patients with cirrhosis requires a multidisciplinary approach. It follows that specialized centres in which patients may find skilled operators and the most recent diagnostic tools are necessary to optimise diagnosis, particularly with smaller lesions.

REFERENCES

1 **Bosch FX**, Ribes J, Diaz M, Cleries R. Primary liver cancer: worldwide incidence and trends. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: S5-S16

2 **Fattovich G**, Stroffolini T, Zagni I, Donato F. Hepatocellular carcinoma in cirrhosis: incidence and risk factors. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: S35-S50

3 **Burrel M**, Llovet JM, Ayuso C, Iglesias C, Sala M, Miquel R, Caralt T, Ayuso JR, Sole M, Sanchez M, Bru C, Bruix J. MRI angiography is superior to helical CT for detection of HCC prior to liver transplantation: an explant correlation. *Hepatology* 2003; **38**: 1034-1042

4 **Caturelli E**, Bartolucci F, Biasini E, Vigliotti ML, Andriulli A, Siena DA, Attino V, Bisceglia M. Diagnosis of liver nodules observed in chronic liver disease patients during ultrasound screening for early detection of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97**: 397-405

5 **Caturelli E**, Pompili M, Bartolucci F, Siena DA, Sperandeo M, Andriulli A, Bisceglia M. Hemangioma-like lesions in chronic liver disease: diagnostic evaluation in patients. *Radiology* 2001; **220**: 337-342

6 **Maruyama H**, Yoshikawa M, Yokosuka O. Current role of ultrasound for the management of hepatocellular carcinoma. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 1710-1719

7 **Bolondi L**, Sofia S, Siringo S, Gaiani S, Casali A, Zironi G, Piscaglia F, Gramantieri L, Zanetti M, Sherman M. Surveillance programme of cirrhotic patients for early diagnosis and treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma: a cost effectiveness analysis. *Gut* 2001; **48**: 251-259

8 **Kemp W**, Pianko S, Nguyen S, Bailey MJ, Roberts SK. Survival in hepatocellular carcinoma: impact of screening and etiology of liver disease. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2005; **20**: 873-881

9 **McMahon BJ**, Bulkow L, Harpster A, Snowball M, Lanier A, Sacco F, Dunaway E, Williams J. Screening for hepatocellular carcinoma in Alaska natives infected with chronic hepatitis B: a 16-year population-based study. *Hepatology* 2000; **32**: 842-846

10 **Sangiovanni A**, Del Ninno E, Fasani P, De Fazio C, Ronchi G, Romeo R, Morabito A, De Franchis R, Colombo M. Increased survival of cirrhotic patients with a hepatocellular carcinoma detected during surveillance. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126**: 1005-1014

11 **Sherman M**. Alphafetoprotein: an obituary. *J Hepatol* 2001; **34**: 603-605

12 **Cedrone A**, Covino M, Caturelli E, Pompili M, Lorenzelli G, Villani MR, Valle D, Sperandeo M, Rapaccini GL, Gasbarrini G. Utility of alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) in the screening of patients with virus-related chronic liver disease: does different viral etiology influence AFP levels in HCC? A study in 350 western patients. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2000; **47**: 1654-1658

13 **Nguyen MH**, Garcia RT, Simpson PW, Wright TL, Keeffe EB. Racial differences in effectiveness of alpha-fetoprotein for diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma in hepatitis C virus cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2002; **36**: 410-417

14 **Peng YC**, Chan CS, Chen GH. The effectiveness of serum alpha-fetoprotein level in anti-HCV positive patients for screening hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatogastroenterology* 1999; **46**: 3208-3211

15 **Tong MJ**, Blatt LM, Kao VW. Surveillance for hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with chronic viral hepatitis in the United States of America. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2001; **16**: 553-559

16 **Trevisani F**, D'Intino PE, Morselli-Labate AM, Mazzella G,

Accogli E, Caraceni P, Domenicali M, De Notariis S, Roda E, Bernardi M. Serum alpha-fetoprotein for diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with chronic liver disease: influence of HBsAg and anti-HCV status. *J Hepatol* 2001; **34**: 570-575

17 **Mok TS**, Yeo W, Yu S, Lai P, Chan HL, Chan AT, Lau JW, Wong H, Leung N, Hui EP, Sung J, Koh J, Mo F, Zee B, Johnson PJ. An intensive surveillance program detected a high incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma among hepatitis B virus carriers with abnormal alpha-fetoprotein levels or abdominal ultrasonography results. *J Clin Oncol* 2005; **23**: 8041-8047

18 **Bruix J**, Sherman M, Llovet JM, Beaugrand M, Lencioni R, Burroughs AK, Christensen E, Pagliaro L, Colombo M, Rodes J. Clinical management of hepatocellular carcinoma. Conclusions of the Barcelona-2000 EASL conference. European Association for the Study of the Liver. *J Hepatol* 2001; **35**: 421-430

19 **Thompson Coon J**, Rogers G, Hewson P, Wright D, Anderson R, Jackson S, Ryder S, Cramp M, Stein K. Surveillance of cirrhosis for hepatocellular carcinoma: a cost-utility analysis. *Br J Cancer* 2008; **98**: 1166-1175

20 **Kang JY**, Lee TP, Yap I, Lun KC. Analysis of cost-effectiveness of different strategies for hepatocellular carcinoma screening in hepatitis B virus carriers. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1992; **7**: 463-468

21 **Bruix J**, Sherman M. Management of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2005; **42**: 1208-1236

22 **Zhang BH**, Yang BH, Tang ZY. Randomized controlled trial of screening for hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol* 2004; **130**: 417-422

23 **Llovet JM**, Bruix J. Novel advancements in the management of hepatocellular carcinoma in 2008. *J Hepatol* 2008; **48** Suppl 1: S20-S37

24 **Patz EF Jr**, Goodman PC, Bepler G. Screening for lung cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2000; **343**: 1627-1633

25 **Trevisani F**, De NS, Rapaccini G, Farinati F, Benvegnu L, Zoli M, Grazi GL, Del PP, Di N, Bernardi M. Semiannual and annual surveillance of cirrhotic patients for hepatocellular carcinoma: effects on cancer stage and patient survival (Italian experience). *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97**: 734-744

26 **Ando E**, Kuromatsu R, Tanaka M, Takada A, Fukushima N, Sumie S, Nagaoka S, Akiyoshi J, Inoue K, Torimura T, Kumashiro R, Ueno T, Sata M. Surveillance program for early detection of hepatocellular carcinoma in Japan: results of specialized department of liver disease. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2006; **40**: 942-948

27 **Bruix J**, Hessheimer AJ, Forner A, Boix L, Vilana R, Llovet JM. New aspects of diagnosis and therapy of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Oncogene* 2006; **25**: 3848-3856

28 **Dodd GD 3rd**, Miller WJ, Baron RL, Skolnick ML, Campbell WL. Detection of malignant tumors in end-stage cirrhotic livers: efficacy of sonography as a screening technique. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 1992; **159**: 727-733

29 **Franca AV**, Elias Junior J, Lima BL, Martinelli AL, Carrilho FJ. Diagnosis, staging and treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Braz J Med Biol Res* 2004; **37**: 1689-1705

30 **Colli A**, Fraquelli M, Casazza G, Massironi S, Colucci A, Conte D, Duca P. Accuracy of ultrasonography, spiral CT, magnetic resonance, and alpha-fetoprotein in diagnosing hepatocellular carcinoma: a systematic review. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 513-523

31 **Saar B**, Kellner-Weldon F. Radiological diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Liver Int* 2008; **28**: 189-199

32 **Bennett GL**, Krinsky GA, Abitbol RJ, Kim SY, Theise ND, Teperman LW. Sonographic detection of hepatocellular carcinoma and dysplastic nodules in cirrhosis: correlation of pretransplantation sonography and liver explant pathology in 200 patients. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2002; **179**: 75-80

33 **Saab S**, Ly D, Nieto J, Kanwal F, Lu D, Raman S, Amado R, Nuesse B, Durazo F, Han S, Farmer DG, Ghobrial RM, Yersiz H, Chen P, Schwegel K, Goldstein LI, Tong M, Busuttil RW. Hepatocellular carcinoma screening in patients waiting for liver transplantation: a decision analytic model. *Liver Transpl* 2003; **9**: 672-681

34 **Rapaccini GL**, Pompili M, Caturelli E, Covino M, Lippi ME, Beccaria S, Cedrone A, Riccardi L, Siena DA, Gasbarrini G. Hepatocellular carcinomas <2 cm in diameter complicating cirrhosis: ultrasound and clinical features in 153 consecutive patients. *Liver Int* 2004; **24**: 124-130

35 **Sheu JC**, Chen DS, Sung JL, Chuang CN, Yang PM, Lin JT, Yang PC. Hepatocellular carcinoma: US evolution in the early stage. *Radiology* 1985; **155**: 463-467

36 **Lencioni R**, Cioni D, Crocetti L, Donati F, Franchini C, Giusti S, Bartolozzi C. Ultrasound imaging of focal liver lesions with a second-generation contrast agent. *Acad Radiol* 2002; **9** Suppl 2: S371-S374

37 **Lencioni R**, Piscaglia F, Bolondi L. Contrast-enhanced ultrasound in the diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Hepatol* 2008; **48**: 848-857

38 **Giesel FL**, Delorme S, Sibbel R, Kauczor HU, Krix M. [Contrast-enhanced ultrasound for the characterization of incidental liver lesions - an economical evaluation in comparison with multi-phase computed tomography] *Ultraschall Med* 2009; **30**: 259-268

39 **Makuuchi M**, Kokudo N. Clinical practice guidelines for hepatocellular carcinoma: the first evidence based guidelines from Japan. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 828-829

40 **Hayashi M**, Matsui O, Ueda K, Kawamori Y, Kadoya M, Yoshikawa J, Gabata T, Takashima T, Nonomura A, Nakanuma Y. Correlation between the blood supply and grade of malignancy of hepatocellular nodules associated with liver cirrhosis: evaluation by CT during intraarterial injection of contrast medium. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 1999; **172**: 969-976

41 **Kim YI**, Chung JW, Park JH, Kang GH, Lee M, Suh KS, Kim KG. Multiphase contrast-enhanced CT imaging in hepatocellular carcinoma correlation with immunohistochemical angiogenic activities. *Acad Radiol* 2007; **14**: 1084-1091

42 **Forner A**, Vilana R, Ayuso C, Bianchi L, Sole M, Ayuso JR, Boix L, Sala M, Varela M, Llovet JM, Bru C, Bruix J. Diagnosis of hepatic nodules 20 mm or smaller in cirrhosis: Prospective validation of the noninvasive diagnostic criteria for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2008; **47**: 97-104

43 **Caturelli E**, de Sio I. Biopsy diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2008; **47**: 2145; author reply 2146-2147

44 **Caturelli E**, Biasini E, Bartolucci F, Facciorusso D, Decembrino F, Attino V, Bisceglia M. Diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma complicating liver cirrhosis: utility of repeat ultrasound-guided biopsy after unsuccessful first sampling. *Cardiovasc Intervent Radiol* 2002; **25**: 295-299

45 **Tanaka M**, Nakashima O, Wada Y, Kage M, Kojiro M. Pathomorphological study of Kupffer cells in hepatocellular carcinoma and hyperplastic nodular lesions in the liver. *Hepatology* 1996; **24**: 807-812

46 **Konopke R**, Bunk A, Kersting S. The role of contrast-enhanced ultrasound for focal liver lesion detection: an overview. *Ultrasound Med Biol* 2007; **33**: 1515-1526

47 **Lu MD**, Yu XL, Li AH, Jiang TA, Chen MH, Zhao BZ, Zhou XD, Wang JR. Comparison of contrast enhanced ultrasound and contrast enhanced CT or MRI in monitoring percutaneous thermal ablation procedure in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma: a multi-center study in China. *Ultrasound Med Biol* 2007; **33**: 1736-1749

48 **Bolondi L**, Gaiani S, Celli N, Golfieri R, Grigioni WF, Leoni S, Venturi AM, Piscaglia F. Characterization of small nodules in cirrhosis by assessment of vascularity: the problem of hypovascular hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2005; **42**: 27-34

49 **Giorgio A**, Ferraioli G, Tarantino L, de Stefano G, Scala V, Scarano F, Coppola C, Del Viscovo L. Contrast-enhanced sonographic appearance of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with cirrhosis: comparison with contrast-enhanced helical CT appearance. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2004; **183**: 1319-1326

50 **Wang JH**, Lu SN, Hung CH, Chen TY, Chen CH, Changchien CS, Lee CM. Small hepatic nodules (< or =2 cm) in cirrhosis patients: characterization with contrast-enhanced ultrasonography. *Liver Int* 2006; **26**: 928-934

51 **Gaiani S**, Celli N, Piscaglia F, Cecilioni L, Losinno F, Giangregorio F, Mancini M, Pini P, Fornari F, Bolondi L. Usefulness of contrast-enhanced perfusional sonography in the assessment of hepatocellular carcinoma hypervascular at spiral computed tomography. *J Hepatol* 2004; **41**: 421-426

52 **Dai Y**, Chen MH, Fan ZH, Yan K, Yin SS, Zhang XP. Diagnosis of small hepatic nodules detected by surveillance ultrasound in patients with cirrhosis: Comparison between contrast-enhanced ultrasound and contrast-enhanced helical computed tomography. *Hepatol Res* 2008; **38**: 281-290

53 **Bhattacharjya S**, Bhattacharjya T, Quaglia A, Dhillon AP, Burroughs AK, Patch DW, Tibballs JM, Watkinson AF, Rolles K, Davidson BR. Liver transplantation in cirrhotic patients with small hepatocellular carcinoma: an analysis of pre-operative imaging, explant histology and prognostic histologic indicators. *Dig Surg* 2004; **21**: 152-159; discussion 159-160

54 **Choi SH**, Lee JM, Yu NC, Suh KS, Jang JJ, Kim SH, Choi BI. Hepatocellular carcinoma in liver transplantation candidates: detection with gadobenate dimeglumine-enhanced MRI. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2008; **191**: 529-536

55 **de Ledinghen V**, Laharie D, Lecesne R, Le Bail B, Winnock M, Bernard PH, Saric J, Couzigou P, Balabaud C, Bioulac-Sage P, Drouillard J. Detection of nodules in liver cirrhosis: spiral computed tomography or magnetic resonance imaging? A prospective study of 88 nodules in 34 patients. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2002; **14**: 159-165

56 **Kim YK**, Kwak HS, Kim CS, Chung GH, Han YM, Lee JM. Hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with chronic liver disease: comparison of SPIO-enhanced MR imaging and 16-detector row CT. *Radiology* 2006; **238**: 531-541

57 **Libbrecht L**, Bielen D, Verslype C, Vanbeckevoort D, Pirenne J, Nevens F, Desmet V, Roskams T. Focal lesions in cirrhotic explant livers: pathological evaluation and accuracy of pretransplantation imaging examinations. *Liver Transpl* 2002; **8**: 749-761

58 **Rode A**, Bancel B, Douek P, Chevallier M, Vilgrain V, Picaud G, Henry L, Berger F, Bizollon T, Gaudin JL, Ducerf C. Small nodule detection in cirrhotic livers: evaluation with US, spiral CT, and MRI and correlation with pathologic examination of explanted liver. *J Comput Assist Tomogr* 2001; **25**: 327-336

59 **Ronzoni A**, Artioli D, Scardina R, Battistig L, Minola E, Sironi S, Vanzulli A. Role of MDCT in the diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with cirrhosis undergoing orthotopic liver transplantation. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2007; **189**: 792-798

60 **Teefey SA**, Hildeboldt CC, Dehdashti F, Siegel BA, Peters MG, Heiken JP, Brown JJ, McFarland EG, Middleton WD, Balfe DM, Ritter JH. Detection of primary hepatic malignancy in liver transplant candidates: prospective comparison of CT, MR imaging, US, and PET. *Radiology* 2003; **226**: 533-542

61 **Valls C**, Cos M, Figueras J, Andia E, Ramos E, Sanchez A, Serrano T, Torras J. Pretransplantation diagnosis and staging of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with cirrhosis: value of dual-phase helical CT. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2004; **182**: 1011-1017

62 **Zacherl J**, Pokieser P, Wrba F, Scheuba C, Prokesch R, Zacherl M, Langle F, Berlakovich GA, Muhlbacher F, Steininger R. Accuracy of multiphasic helical computed tomography and intraoperative sonography in patients undergoing orthotopic liver transplantation for hepatoma: what is the truth? *Ann Surg* 2002; **235**: 528-532

63 **Guevara M**, Fernandez-Esparrach G, Alessandria C, Torre A, Terra C, Montana X, Piera C, Alvarez ML, Jimenez W, Gines P, Arroyo V. Effects of contrast media on renal function in patients with cirrhosis: a prospective study. *Hepatology* 2004; **40**: 646-651

64 **Gonzales DA**, Norsworthy KJ, Kern SJ, Banks S, Sieving PC, Star RA, Natanson C, Danner RL. A meta-analysis of N-acetylcysteine in contrast-induced nephrotoxicity: unsupervised clustering to resolve heterogeneity. *BMC Med* 2007; **5**: 32

65 **Willatt JM**, Hussain HK, Adusumilli S, Marrero JA. MR Imaging of hepatocellular carcinoma in the cirrhotic liver: challenges and controversies. *Radiology* 2008; **247**: 311-330

66 **Bhartia B**, Ward J, Guthrie JA, Robinson PJ. Hepatocellular carcinoma in cirrhotic livers: double-contrast thin-section MR imaging with pathologic correlation of explanted tissue. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2003; **180**: 577-584

67 **Hecht EM**, Holland AE, Israel GM, Hahn WY, Kim DC, West AB, Babb JS, Taouli B, Lee VS, Krinsky GA. Hepatocellular carcinoma in the cirrhotic liver: gadolinium-enhanced 3D T1-weighted MR imaging as a stand-alone sequence for diagnosis. *Radiology* 2006; **239**: 438-447

68 **Kim YK**, Kim CS, Kwak HS, Lee JM. Three-dimensional dynamic liver MR imaging using sensitivity encoding for detection of hepatocellular carcinomas: comparison with superparamagnetic iron oxide-enhanced mr imaging. *J Magn Reson Imaging* 2004; **20**: 826-837

69 **Krinsky GA**, Lee VS, Theise ND, Weinreb JC, Rofsky NM, Diflo T, Teperman LW. Hepatocellular carcinoma and dysplastic nodules in patients with cirrhosis: prospective diagnosis with MR imaging and explantation correlation. *Radiology* 2001; **219**: 445-454

70 **Krinsky GA**, Lee VS, Theise ND, Weinreb JC, Morgan GR, Diflo T, John D, Teperman LW, Goldenberg AS. Transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma and cirrhosis: sensitivity of magnetic resonance imaging. *Liver Transpl* 2002; **8**: 1156-1164

71 **Lauenstein TC**, Salman K, Morreira R, Heffron T, Spivey JR, Martinez E, Sharma P, Martin DR. Gadolinium-enhanced MRI for tumor surveillance before liver transplantation: center-based experience. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2007; **189**: 663-670

72 **Ward J**, Guthrie JA, Scott DJ, Atchley J, Wilson D, Davies MH, Wyatt JI, Robinson PJ. Hepatocellular carcinoma in the cirrhotic liver: double-contrast MR imaging for diagnosis. *Radiology* 2000; **216**: 154-162

73 **Zhao H**, Yao JL, Wang Y, Zhou KR. Detection of small hepatocellular carcinoma: comparison of dynamic enhancement magnetic resonance imaging and multiphase multirow-detector helical CT scanning. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 1252-1256

74 **Fung KT**, Li FT, Raimondo ML, Maudgil D, Mancuso A, Tibballs JM, Watkinson AA, Patch D, Burroughs AK. Systematic review of radiological imaging for hepatocellular carcinoma in cirrhotic patients. *Br J Radiol* 2004; **77**: 633-640

75 **Durand F**, Regimbeau JM, Belghiti J, Sauvanet A, Vilgrain V, Terris B, Moutardier V, Farges O, Valla D. Assessment of the benefits and risks of percutaneous biopsy before surgical resection of hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Hepatol* 2001; **35**: 254-258

76 **Durand F**, Belghiti J, Paradis V. Liver transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma: role of biopsy. *Liver Transpl* 2007; **13**: S17-S23

77 **Stigliano R**, Burroughs AK. Should we biopsy each liver mass suspicious for HCC before liver transplantation?--no, please don't. *J Hepatol* 2005; **43**: 563-568

78 **Stigliano R**, Marelli L, Yu D, Davies N, Patch D, Burroughs AK. Seeding following percutaneous diagnostic and therapeutic approaches for hepatocellular carcinoma. What is the risk and the outcome? Seeding risk for percutaneous approach of HCC. *Cancer Treat Rev* 2007; **33**: 437-447

79 **Maturen KE**, Nghiem HV, Marrero JA, Hussain HK, Higgins EG, Fox GA, Francis IR. Lack of tumor seeding of hepatocellular carcinoma after percutaneous needle biopsy using coaxial cutting needle technique. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2006; **187**: 1184-187

80 **Wanless IR**. International consensus on histologic diagnosis of early hepatocellular neoplasia. *Hepatol Res* 2007; **37** Suppl 2: S139-S141

81 **Di Tommaso L**, Franchi G, Park YN, Fiamengo B, Destro A, Morenghi E, Montorsi M, Torzilli G, Tommasini M, Terracciano L, Tornillo L, Vecchione R, Roncalli M. Diagnostic value of HSP70, glypican 3, and glutamine synthetase in hepatocellular nodules in cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2007; **45**: 725-734

82 **Kim YJ**, Lee HS, Im JP, Min BH, Kim HD, Jeong JB, Yoon JH, Kim CY, Kim MS, Kim JY, Jung JH, Kim LH, Park BL, Shin HD. Association of transforming growth factor-beta1 gene polymorphisms with a hepatocellular carcinoma risk in patients with chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *Exp Mol Med* 2003; **35**: 196-202

83 **Okumoto K**, Hattori E, Tamura K, Kiso S, Watanabe H, Saito K, Saito T, Togashi H, Kawata S. Possible contribution of circulating transforming growth factor-beta1 to immunity and prognosis in unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma. *Liver Int* 2004; **24**: 21-28

84 **Joo M**, Chi JG, Lee H. Expressions of HSP70 and HSP27 in hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Korean Med Sci* 2005; **20**: 829-834

85 **Wright LM**, Kreikemeier JT, Fimmel CJ. A concise review of serum markers for hepatocellular cancer. *Cancer Detect Prev* 2007; **31**: 35-44

86 **Zeindl-Eberhart E**, Haraida S, Liebmann S, Jungblut PR, Lamer S, Mayer D, Jager G, Chung S, Rabes HM. Detection and identification of tumor-associated protein variants in human hepatocellular carcinomas. *Hepatology* 2004; **39**: 540-549

87 **Li C**, Tan YX, Zhou H, Ding SJ, Li SJ, Ma DJ, Man XB, Hong Y, Zhang L, Li L, Xia QC, Wu JR, Wang HY, Zeng R. Proteomic analysis of hepatitis B virus-associated hepatocellular carcinoma: Identification of potential tumor markers. *Proteomics* 2005; **5**: 1125-1139

88 **Llovet JM**, Chen Y, Wurmbach E, Roayaie S, Fiel MI, Schwartz M, Thung SN, Khitrov G, Zhang W, Villanueva A, Battiston C, Mazzaferro V, Bruix J, Waxman S, Friedman SL. A molecular signature to discriminate dysplastic nodules from early hepatocellular carcinoma in HCV cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **131**: 1758-1767

89 **Bedrossian CW**, Davila RM, Merenda G. Immunocytochemical evaluation of liver fine-needle aspirations. *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 1989; **113**: 1225-1230

90 **Brumm C**, Schulze C, Charels K, Morohoshi T, Kloppel G. The significance of alpha-fetoprotein and other tumour markers in differential immunocytochemistry of primary liver tumours. *Histopathology* 1989; **14**: 503-513

91 **Chedid A**, Chejfec G, Eichorst M, Villamil F, Terg R, Telenta M, Hojman R. Antigenic markers of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer* 1990; **65**: 84-87

92 **Fucich LF**, Cheles MK, Thung SN, Gerber MA, Marrogi AJ. Primary vs metastatic hepatic carcinoma. An immunohistochemical study of 34 cases. *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 1994; **118**: 927-930

93 **Ganjei P**, Nadji M, Albores-Saavedra J, Morales AR. Histologic markers in primary and metastatic tumors of the liver. *Cancer* 1988; **62**: 1994-1998

94 **Hurlimann J**, Gardiol D. Immunohistochemistry in the differential diagnosis of liver carcinomas. *Am J Surg Pathol* 1991; **15**: 280-288

95 **Imoto M**, Nishimura D, Fukuda Y, Sugiyama K, Kumada T, Nakano S. Immunohistochemical detection of alpha-fetoprotein, carcinoembryonic antigen, and ferritin in formalin-paraffin sections from hepatocellular carcinoma. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1985; **80**: 902-906

96 **Johnson DE**, Powers CN, Rupp G, Frable WJ. Immunocytochemical staining of fine-needle aspiration biopsies of the liver as a diagnostic tool for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Mod Pathol* 1992; **5**: 117-123

97 **Leong AS**, Sormunen RT, Tsui WM, Liew CT. Hep Par 1 and selected antibodies in the immunohistological distinction of hepatocellular carcinoma from cholangiocarcinoma, combined tumours and metastatic carcinoma. *Histopathology* 1998; **33**: 318-324

98 **Ma CK**, Zarbo RJ, Frierson HF Jr, Lee MW. Comparative immunohistochemical study of primary and metastatic carcinomas of the liver. *Am J Clin Pathol* 1993; **99**: 551-557

99 **McCluggage WG**, Maxwell P, Patterson A, Sloan JM. Immunohistochemical staining of hepatocellular carcinoma with monoclonal antibody against inhibin. *Histopathology* 1997; **30**: 518-522

100 **Minervini MI**, Demetris AJ, Lee RG, Carr BI, Madariaga J, Nalesnik MA. Utilization of hepatocyte-specific antibody in the immunocytochemical evaluation of liver tumors. *Mod Pathol* 1997; **10**: 686-692

101 **Porcell AI**, De Young BR, Proca DM, Frankel WL. Immunohistochemical analysis of hepatocellular and adenocarcinoma in the liver: MOC31 compares favorably with other putative markers. *Mod Pathol* 2000; **13**: 773-778

102 **Sato K**, Tanaka M, Kusaba T, Fukuda H, Tanikawa K. Immunohistochemical demonstration of alpha-fetoprotein in small hepatocellular carcinoma. *Oncol Rep* 1998; **5**: 355-358

103 **Tsuji M**, Kashihara T, Terada N, Mori H. An immunohistochemical study of hepatic atypical adenomatous hyperplasia, hepatocellular carcinoma, and cholangiocarcinoma with alpha-fetoprotein, carcinoembryonic antigen, CA19-9, epithelial membrane antigen, and cytokeratins 18 and 19. *Pathol Int* 1999; **49**: 310-317

104 **Murakata LA**, Ishak KG, Nzeako UC. Clear cell carcinoma of the liver: a comparative immunohistochemical study with renal clear cell carcinoma. *Mod Pathol* 2000; **13**: 874-881

105 **Nakatsura T**, Kageshita T, Ito S, Wakamatsu K, Monji M, Ikuta Y, Senju S, Ono T, Nishimura Y. Identification of glypican-3 as a novel tumor marker for melanoma. *Clin Cancer Res* 2004; **10**: 6612-6621

106 **Zynger DL**, Dimov ND, Luan C, Teh BT, Yang XJ. Glypican 3: a novel marker in testicular germ cell tumors. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2006; **30**: 1570-1575

107 **Toretsky JA**, Zitomersky NL, Eskenazi AE, Voigt RW, Strauch ED, Sun CC, Huber R, Meltzer SJ, Schlessinger D. Glypican-3 expression in Wilms tumor and hepatoblastoma. *J Pediatr Hematol Oncol* 2001; **23**: 496-499

108 **Nakatsura T**, Nishimura Y. Usefulness of the novel oncofetal antigen glypican-3 for diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma and melanoma. *BioDrugs* 2005; **19**: 71-77

109 **Wang XY**, Degos F, Dubois S, Tessiore S, Allegretta M, Guttmann RD, Jothy S, Belghiti J, Bedossa P, Paradis V. Glypican-3 expression in hepatocellular tumors: diagnostic value for preneoplastic lesions and hepatocellular carcinomas. *Hum Pathol* 2006; **37**: 1435-1441

110 **Yamauchi N**, Watanabe A, Hishinuma M, Ohashi K, Midorikawa Y, Morishita Y, Niki T, Shibahara J, Mori M, Makuuchi M, Hippo Y, Kodama T, Iwanari H, Aburatani H, Fukayama M. The glypican 3 oncofetal protein is a promising diagnostic marker for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Mod Pathol* 2005; **18**: 1591-1598

111 **Anatelli F**, Chuang ST, Yang XJ, Wang HL. Value of glypican 3 immunostaining in the diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma on needle biopsy. *Am J Clin Pathol* 2008;

130: 219-223
112 **Libbrecht L**, Severi T, Cassiman D, Vander Borght S, Pirenne J, Nevens F, Verslype C, van Pelt J, Roskams T. Glypican-3 expression distinguishes small hepatocellular carcinomas from cirrhosis, dysplastic nodules, and focal nodular hyperplasia-like nodules. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2006; **30**: 1405-1411
113 **Nassar A**, Cohen C, Siddiqui MT. Utility of glypican-3 and survivin in differentiating hepatocellular carcinoma from benign and preneoplastic hepatic lesions and metastatic carcinomas in liver fine-needle aspiration biopsies. *Diagn Cytopathol* 2009; **37**: 629-635
114 **Capurro M**, Wanless IR, Sherman M, Deboer G, Shi W, Miyoshi E, Filmus J. Glypican-3: a novel serum and histochemical marker for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 89-97
115 **Coston WM**, Loera S, Lau SK, Ishizawa S, Jiang Z, Wu CL, Yen Y, Weiss LM, Chu PG. Distinction of hepatocellular carcinoma from benign hepatic mimickers using Glypican-3 and CD34 immunohistochemistry. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2008; **32**: 433-444
116 **Dhillon AP**, Colombari R, Savage K, Scheuer PJ. An immunohistochemical study of the blood vessels within primary hepatocellular tumours. *Liver* 1992; **12**: 311-318
117 **de Boer WB**, Segal A, Frost FA, Sterrett GF. Can CD34 discriminate between benign and malignant hepatocytic lesions in fine-needle aspirates and thin core biopsies? *Cancer* 2000; **90**: 273-278
118 **Bonetti F**, Chilosi M, Pisa R, Novelli P, Zamboni G, Menestrina F. Epithelial membrane antigen expression in cholangiocarcinoma. An useful immunohistochemical tool for differential diagnosis with hepatocarcinoma. *Virchows Arch A Pathol Anat Histopathol* 1983; **401**: 307-313
119 **Borscheri N**, Roessner A, Rocken C. Canalicular immunostaining of neprilysin (CD10) as a diagnostic marker for hepatocellular carcinomas. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2001; **25**: 1297-1303
120 **D'Errico A**, Baccarini P, Fiorentino M, Ceccarelli C, Bonazzi C, Ponzetto A, Scoazec JY, Mancini AM, Grigioni WF. Histogenesis of primary liver carcinomas: strengths and weaknesses of cytokeratin profile and albumin mRNA detection. *Hum Pathol* 1996; **27**: 599-604
121 **Duclos-Vallee JC**, Emile JF, Rifai K, Roque-Afonso AM, Feray C, Petit C, Samuel D. Intense isolated expression with preS1 (large protein) antibodies in the liver graft associated with severe acute hepatitis B virus reactivation. *J Hepatol* 2001; **34**: 962
122 **Lau SK**, Prakash S, Geller SA, Alsabeh R. Comparative immunohistochemical profile of hepatocellular carcinoma, cholangiocarcinoma, and metastatic adenocarcinoma. *Hum Pathol* 2002; **33**: 1175-1181
123 **Morrison C**, Marsh W Jr, Frankel WL. A comparison of CD10 to pCEA, MOC-31, and hepatocyte for the distinction of malignant tumors in the liver. *Mod Pathol* 2002; **15**: 1279-1287
124 **Oliveira AM**, Erickson LA, Burgart LJ, Lloyd RV. Differentiation of primary and metastatic clear cell tumors in the liver by in situ hybridization for albumin messenger RNA. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2000; **24**: 177-182
125 **Rocken C**, Licht J, Roessner A, Carl-McGrath S. Canalicular immunostaining of aminopeptidase N (CD13) as a diagnostic marker for hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Clin Pathol* 2005; **58**: 1069-1075
126 **Saad RS**, Luckasevic TM, Noga CM, Johnson DR, Silverman JF, Liu YL. Diagnostic value of HepPar1, pCEA, CD10, and CD34 expression in separating hepatocellular carcinoma from metastatic carcinoma in fine-needle aspiration cytology. *Diagn Cytopathol* 2004; **30**: 1-6
127 **Tseng SC**, Jarvinen MJ, Nelson WG, Huang JW, Woodcock-Mitchell J, Sun TT. Correlation of specific keratins with different types of epithelial differentiation: monoclonal antibody studies. *Cell* 1982; **30**: 361-372
128 **Xiao SY**, Wang HL, Hart J, Fleming D, Beard MR. cDNA arrays and immunohistochemistry identification of CD10/CALLA expression in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Am J Pathol* 2001; **159**: 1415-1421
129 **Grigioni WF**, D'Errico A, Bacci F, Gaudio M, Mazziotti A, Gozzetti G, Mancini AM. Primary liver neoplasms: evaluation of proliferative index using MoAb Ki67. *J Pathol* 1989; **158**: 23-29
130 **Chu PG**, Ishizawa S, Wu E, Weiss LM. Hepatocyte antigen as a marker of hepatocellular carcinoma: an immunohistochemical comparison to carcinoembryonic antigen, CD10, and alpha-fetoprotein. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2002; **26**: 978-988
131 **Lee HS**, Kim WH, Kang GH. Hepatocyte expressions in hepatocellular carcinomas, gastrointestinal neoplasms, and non-neoplastic gastrointestinal mucosa: its role as a diagnostic marker. *J Korean Med Sci* 2003; **18**: 842-848
132 **Lugli A**, Tornillo L, Mirlacher M, Bundi M, Sauter G, Terracciano LM. Hepatocyte paraffin 1 expression in human normal and neoplastic tissues: tissue microarray analysis on 3,940 tissue samples. *Am J Clin Pathol* 2004; **122**: 721-727
133 **Onofre AS**, Pomjanski N, Buckstegge B, Bocking A. Immunocytochemical diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma and identification of carcinomas of unknown primary metastatic to the liver on fine-needle aspiration cytologies. *Cancer* 2007; **111**: 259-268
134 **Siddiqui MT**, Saboorian MH, Gokaslan ST, Ashfaq R. Diagnostic utility of the HepPar1 antibody to differentiate hepatocellular carcinoma from metastatic carcinoma in fine-needle aspiration samples. *Cancer* 2002; **96**: 49-52
135 **Wang L**, Vuolo M, Suhrland MJ, Schlesinger K. HepPar1, MOC-31, pCEA, mCEA and CD10 for distinguishing hepatocellular carcinoma vs. metastatic adenocarcinoma in liver fine needle aspirates. *Acta Cytol* 2006; **50**: 257-262
136 **Wieczorek TJ**, Pinkus JL, Glickman JN, Pinkus GS. Comparison of thyroid transcription factor-1 and hepatocyte antigen immunohistochemical analysis in the differential diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma, metastatic adenocarcinoma, renal cell carcinoma, and adrenal cortical carcinoma. *Am J Clin Pathol* 2002; **118**: 911-921
137 **Chu P**, Wu E, Weiss LM. Cytokeratin 7 and cytokeratin 20 expression in epithelial neoplasms: a survey of 435 cases. *Mod Pathol* 2000; **13**: 962-972
138 **Hammar SP**. Metastatic adenocarcinoma of unknown primary origin. *Hum Pathol* 1998; **29**: 1393-1402
139 **Maeda T**, Kajiyama K, Adachi E, Takenaka K, Sugimachi K, Tsuneyoshi M. The expression of cytokeratins 7, 19, and 20 in primary and metastatic carcinomas of the liver. *Mod Pathol* 1996; **9**: 901-909
140 **Stroescu C**, Herlea V, Dragnea A, Popescu I. The diagnostic value of cytokeratins and carcinoembryonic antigen immunostaining in differentiating hepatocellular carcinomas from intrahepatic cholangiocarcinomas. *J Gastrointestin Liver Dis* 2006; **15**: 9-14
141 **Yoon SK**. Recent advances in tumor markers of human hepatocellular carcinoma. *Intervirology* 2008; **51** Suppl 1: 34-41
142 **Canick JA**, MacRae AR. Second trimester serum markers. *Semin Perinatol* 2005; **29**: 203-208
143 **Chen J**, Rocken C, Treiber G, Jentsch-Ulrich K, Malfertheiner P, Ebert MP. Clinical implications of alpha-fetoprotein expression in gastric adenocarcinoma. *Dig Dis* 2003; **21**: 357-362
144 **Ding X**, Yang LY, Huang GW, Yang JQ, Liu HL, Wang W, Peng JX, Yang JQ, Tao YM, Chang ZG, Ling XS. Role of AFP mRNA expression in peripheral blood as a predictor for postsurgical recurrence of hepatocellular carcinoma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 2656-2661
145 **Grizzi F**, Franceschini B, Hamrick C, Frezza EE, Cobos E,

Chiriva-Internati M. Usefulness of cancer-testis antigens as biomarkers for the diagnosis and treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Transl Med* 2007; **5**: 3

146 **Gupta S**, Bent S, Kohlwes J. Test characteristics of alpha-fetoprotein for detecting hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with hepatitis C. A systematic review and critical analysis. *Ann Intern Med* 2003; **139**: 46-50

147 **Hiroshima K**, Iyoda A, Toyozaki T, Haga Y, Baba M, Fujisawa T, Ishikura H, Ohwada H. Alpha-fetoprotein-producing lung carcinoma: report of three cases. *Pathol Int* 2002; **52**: 46-53

148 **Sakata J**, Shirai Y, Wakai T, Kaneko K, Nagahashi M, Hatakeyama K. Preoperative predictors of vascular invasion in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2008; **34**: 900-905

149 **Leerapun A**, Suravarapu SV, Bida JP, Clark RJ, Sanders EL, Mettler TA, Stadheim LM, Aderca I, Moser CD, Nagorney DM, LaRusso NF, de Groen PC, Menon KV, Lazaridis KN, Gores GJ, Charlton MR, Roberts RO, Therneau TM, Katzmann JA, Roberts LR. The utility of Lens culinaris agglutinin-reactive alpha-fetoprotein in the diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma: evaluation in a United States referral population. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2007; **5**: 394-402; quiz 267

150 **Sterling RK**, Jeffers L, Gordon F, Sherman M, Venook AP, Reddy KR, Satomura S, Schwartz ME. Clinical utility of AFP-L3% measurement in North American patients with HCV-related cirrhosis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2007; **102**: 2196-2205

151 **Liebman HA**, Furie BC, Tong MJ, Blanchard RA, Lo KJ, Lee SD, Coleman MS, Furie B. Des-gamma-carboxy (abnormal) prothrombin as a serum marker of primary hepatocellular carcinoma. *N Engl J Med* 1984; **310**: 1427-1431

152 **Marrero JA**, Su GL, Wei W, Emick D, Conjeevaram HS, Fontana RJ, Lok AS. Des-gamma carboxyprothrombin can differentiate hepatocellular carcinoma from nonmalignant chronic liver disease in american patients. *Hepatology* 2003; **37**: 1114-1121

153 **Nakamura S**, Nouso K, Sakaguchi K, Ito YM, Ohashi Y, Kobayashi Y, Toshikuni N, Tanaka H, Miyake Y, Matsumoto E, Shiratori Y. Sensitivity and specificity of des-gamma-carboxy prothrombin for diagnosis of patients with hepatocellular carcinomas varies according to tumor size. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 2038-2043

154 **Volk ML**, Hernandez JC, Su GL, Lok AS, Marrero JA. Risk factors for hepatocellular carcinoma may impair the performance of biomarkers: a comparison of AFP, DCP, and AFP-L3. *Cancer Biomark* 2007; **3**: 79-87

155 **Hippo Y**, Watanabe K, Watanabe A, Midorikawa Y, Yamamoto S, Ihara S, Tokita S, Iwanari H, Ito Y, Nakano K, Nezu J, Tsunoda H, Yoshino T, Ohizumi I, Tsuchiya M, Ohnishi S, Makuuchi M, Hamakubo T, Kodama T, Aburatani H. Identification of soluble NH2-terminal fragment of glypican-3 as a serological marker for early-stage hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer Res* 2004; 64: 2418-2423

156 **Iftikhar R**, Kladney RD, Havlioglu N, Schmitt-Graff A, Gusmirovic I, Solomon H, Luxon BA, Bacon BR, Fimmel CJ. Disease- and cell-specific expression of GP73 in human liver disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2004; **99**: 1087-1095

157 **Marrero JA**, Fontana RJ, Barrat A, Askari F, Conjeevaram HS, Su GL, Lok AS. Prognosis of hepatocellular carcinoma: comparison of 7 staging systems in an American cohort. *Hepatology* 2005; **41**: 707-716

158 **Block TM**, Marrero J, Gish RG, Sherman M, London WT, Srivastava S, Wagner PD. The degree of readiness of selected biomarkers for the early detection of hepatocellular carcinoma: notes from a recent workshop. *Cancer Biomark* 2008; **4**: 19-33

159 **Yamagamim H**, Moriyama M, Matsumura H, Aoki H, Shimizu T, Saito T, Kaneko M, Shioda A, Tanaka N, Arakawa Y. Serum concentrations of human hepatocyte growth factor is a useful indicator for predicting the occurrence of hepatocellular carcinomas in C-viral chronic liver diseases. *Cancer* 2002; **95**: 824-834

160 **Tsai JF**, Jeng JE, Chuang LY, You HL, Ho MS, Lai CS, Wang LY, Hsieh MY, Chen SC, Chuang WL, Lin ZY, Yu ML, Dai CY. Serum insulin-like growth factor-II and alpha-fetoprotein as tumor markers of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Tumour Biol* 2003; **24**: 291-298

161 **Yu H**, Rohan T. Role of the insulin-like growth factor family in cancer development and progression. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2000; **92**: 1472-1489

162 **Poon RT**, Ho JW, Tong CS, Lau C, Ng IO, Fan ST. Prognostic significance of serum vascular endothelial growth factor and endostatin in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. *Br J Surg* 2004; **91**: 1354-1360

163 **Annes JP**, Munger JS, Rifkin DB. Making sense of latent TGFbeta activation. *J Cell Sci* 2003; **116**: 217-224

164 **Sacco R**, Leuci D, Tortorella C, Fiore G, Marinosci F, Schiraldi O, Antonaci S. Transforming growth factor beta1 and soluble Fas serum levels in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cytokine* 2000; **12**: 811-814

165 **Song BC**, Chung YH, Kim JA, Choi WB, Suh DD, Pyo SI, Shin JW, Lee HC, Lee YS, Suh DJ. Transforming growth factor-beta1 as a useful serologic marker of small hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer* 2002; **94**: 175-180

166 **Chau GY**, Wu CW, Lui WY, Chang TJ, Kao HL, Wu LH, King KL, Loong CC, Hsia CY, Chi CW. Serum interleukin-10 but not interleukin-6 is related to clinical outcome in patients with resectable hepatocellular carcinoma. *Ann Surg* 2000; **231**: 552-558

167 **Hsia CY**, Huo TI, Chiang SY, Lu MF, Sun CL, Wu JC, Lee PC, Chi CW, Lui WY, Lee SD. Evaluation of interleukin-6, interleukin-10 and human hepatocyte growth factor as tumor markers for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2007; **33**: 208-212

168 **Cui R**, He J, Zhang F, Wang B, Ding H, Shen H, Li Y, Chen X. Diagnostic value of protein induced by vitamin K absence (PIVKAII) and hepatoma-specific band of serum gamma-glutamyl transferase (GGTII) as hepatocellular carcinoma markers complementary to alpha-fetoprotein. *Br J Cancer* 2003; **88**: 1878-1882

169 **Yoon SK**, Lim NK, Ha SA, Park YG, Choi JY, Chung KW, Sun HS, Choi MJ, Chung J, Wands JR, Kim JW. The human cervical cancer oncogene protein is a biomarker for human hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer Res* 2004; **64**: 5434-5441

170 **Hann HW**, Lee J, Bussard A, Liu C, Jin YR, Guha K, Clayton MM, Ardlie K, Pellini MJ, Feitelson MA. Preneoplastic markers of hepatitis B virus-associated hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer Res* 2004; **64**: 7329-7335

171 **Masutomi K**, Kaneko S, Yasukawa M, Arai K, Murakami S, Kobayashi K. Identification of serum anti-human telomerase reverse transcriptase (hTERT) auto-antibodies during progression to hepatocellular carcinoma. *Oncogene* 2002; **21**: 5946-5950

S- Editor Zhang HN **L- Editor** Hughes D **E- Editor** Ma WH

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.62

World J Hepatol 2009 October 31; 1(1): 62-66
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

REVIEW

Needle track seeding following percutaneous procedures for hepatocellular carcinoma

Giuseppe Cabibbo, Antonio Craxì

Giuseppe Cabibbo, Antonio Craxì, Cattedra di Gastroenterologia, Dipartimento Biomedico di Medicina Interna e Specialistica, University of Palermo, Palermo 90127, Italy
Giuseppe Cabibbo, Dipartimento di Biopatologia e Metodologie Biomediche, University of Palermo, Palermo 90127, Italy
Author contributions: Cabibbo G has contributed for drafting of the manuscript and critical revision; Craxì A, hepatologist, has contributed for drafting of the manuscript and critical revision.
Correspondence to: Giuseppe Cabibbo, MD, Cattedra di Gastroenterologia, Dipartimento Biomedico di Medicina Interna e Specialistica, University of Palermo, Piazza delle Cliniche 2, Palermo 90127, Italy. g.cab@libero.it
Telephone: +39-91-6552280 Fax: +39-91-6552156
Received: March 17, 2009 Revised: September 8, 2009
Accepted: September 15, 2009
Published online: October 31, 2009

Abstract

Neoplastic seeding may arise after diagnostic or therapeutic percutaneous procedures for hepatocellular carcinoma. The true incidence of seeding with hepatocellular carcinoma is difficult to assess precisely, but a significant risk of seeding exists and is greater when performing diagnostic biopsy as compared to therapeutic percutaneous procedures [radiofrequency ablation, radiofrequency ablation (RFA); percutaneous ethanol injection, Percutaneous ethanol injection (PEI)]. Whenever liver transplantation is feasible, diagnostic needle biopsies should be avoided, but RFA and PEI are often needed as "bridge" treatments. The role of adjuvant treatments in reducing the incidence of seeding following RFA or PEI requires further evaluation.

Key words: Hepatocellular carcinoma; Seeding; Radiofrequency ablation; Percutaneous ethanol injection; Liver biopsy

Peer reviewers: Tian-Quan Han, Professor, Department of Surgery, Shanghai Institute of Digestive Surgery, Ruijin Hospital, Shanhai Jiaotong University Medical College, 197 Ruijin 2nd Road, Shanghai 200025, China; Xin Wei Wang, PhD, Senior Investigator, Chief, Liver Carcinogenesis Section, LHC, NCI, NIH, 37 Convent Drive, MSC 4258, Building 37, Room 3044A, Bethesda, MD 20892, United States

Cabibbo G, Craxì A. Needle track seeding following percutaneous procedures for hepatocellular carcinoma. *World J Hepatol* 2009; 1(1): 62-66 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v1/i1/62.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.62

INTRODUCTION

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is a challenging malignancy of global importance. It is the sixth most common cancer, and the third most common cause of cancer-related death worldwide[1]. The incidence rates for HCC in the United States and Western Europe have been increasing[2,3].

Cohort studies and cost-efficiency modelling have suggested that ultra-sonographic surveillance of well-defined cirrhotic patients may decrease tumor-related mortality[4,5]. According to EASL and AASLD criteria[5], a diagnosis of HCC can be made in most cases with a non-invasive strategy. In fact, advances in cross-sectional imaging have led to a drastic limitation in the requirement for biopsy of focal lesions in the cirrhotic liver[6,7]. In this setting, good quality contrast enhanced computed tomography (CT) and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) are generally highly accurate for the diagnosis of HCC[8,9]. However, biopsy remains very important in patients with a liver nodule without typical radiological features (hypervascularization in arterial phase followed by venous wash-out in portal/venous phase)[5,10], or when α-fetoprotein levels are not diagnostic of HCC (Figure 1).

Although diagnostic biopsy rates have diminished, biopsy is still widely used and is often considered mandatory for patient management by oncologists[11]. Furthermore liver biopsy may give prognostic information[12,13]

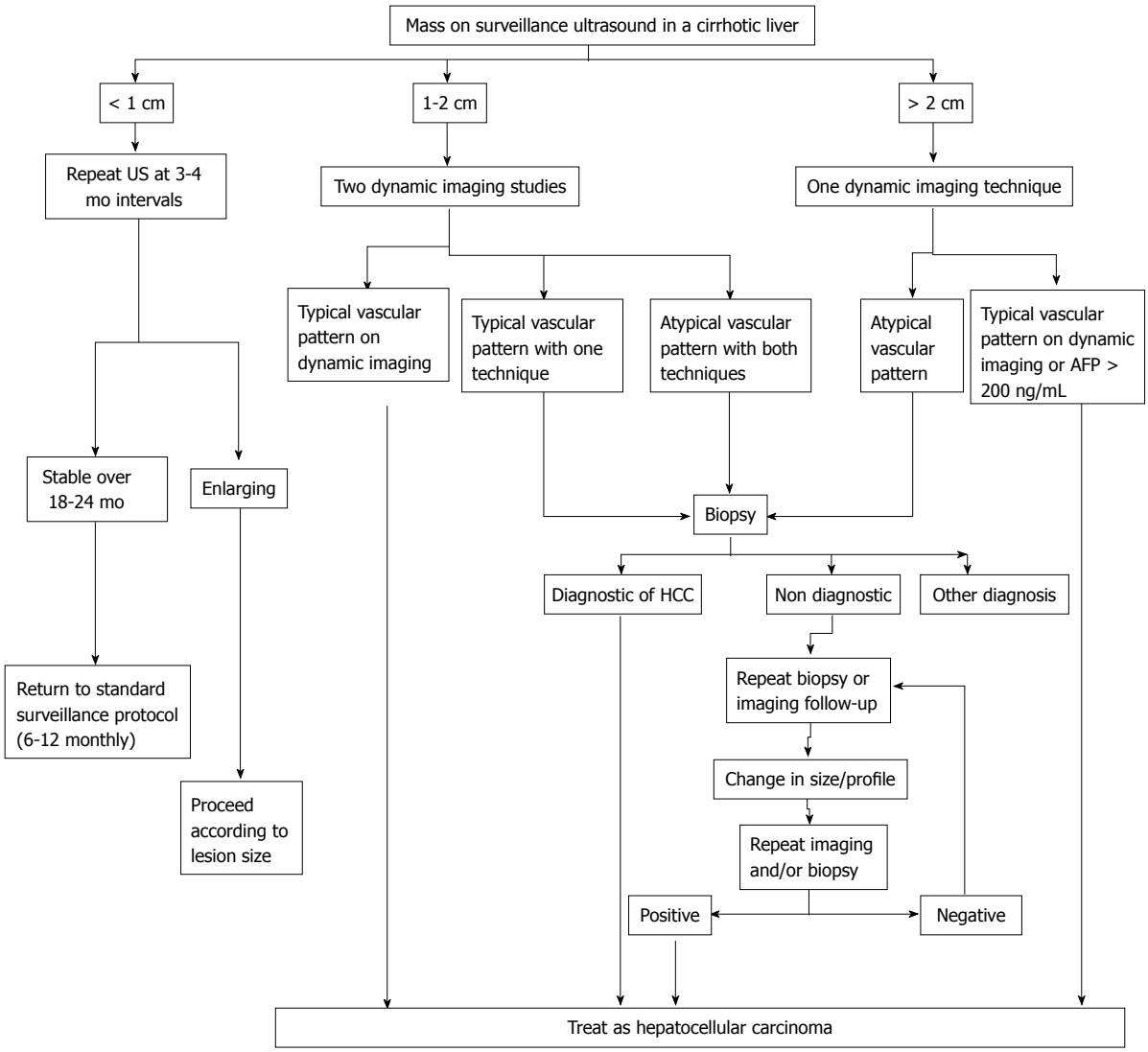


Figure 1 Suggested algorithm for evaluation of a liver mass detected during hepatocellular carcinoma surveillance in a patient with cirrhosis according to the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases (AASLD) guidelines[5].

regarding malignant potential and may be required for allocation systems in liver transplantation programmes.

Despite many efforts to prevent and screen for HCC, only 20%-30% of patients present with early stage disease amenable to curative treatments, including surgical resection and liver transplantation (LTx)[14]. Radiofrequency ablation (RFA) was introduced as an alternative locoregional therapy to ethanol injection. It can achieve high local cure without deteriorating background liver function. RFA is now a valid alternative to resection, and can be used as an adjuvant therapy, or as a bridge to transplantation[15]. Percutaneous ablation (PEI, RFA) achieves complete responses in more than 80% of tumors smaller than 3 cm in diameter, but only in 50% of tumors between 3 and 5 cm in size[16,17]. Five-year survival rates reported after PEI or RFA are 40%-70%[18,19] RFA is preferred to PEI in patients with tumors < 4 cm. because of lower recurrence, lower number of sessions, and longer disease-free survival. A recent meta-analysis[20] has shown that RFA ablation is superior to PEI in the treatment of small HCC with respect to overall survival, 1, 2, and 3 year survival rates, 1, 2, and 3 cancer-free survival rates, and tumor response. RFA entails a significantly smaller risk of local recurrence than PEI.

NEEDLE TRACT SEEDING

Percutaneous diagnostic or therapeutic procedures play an important role in the management of patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. These procedures are used to diagnose and/or provide specific therapy. All procedures, whether medical or surgical, have inherent risks, and the risks must always be weighed against the anticipated benefits. Both patients and physicians must assume that there is some risk involved when they undertake any procedure including a percutaneous approach for HCC. Complications of percutaneous procedures are sometimes unavoidable. Nonetheless, strict attention to detail and knowledge of potential complications and their risk factors can minimize their occurrence. The incidence of

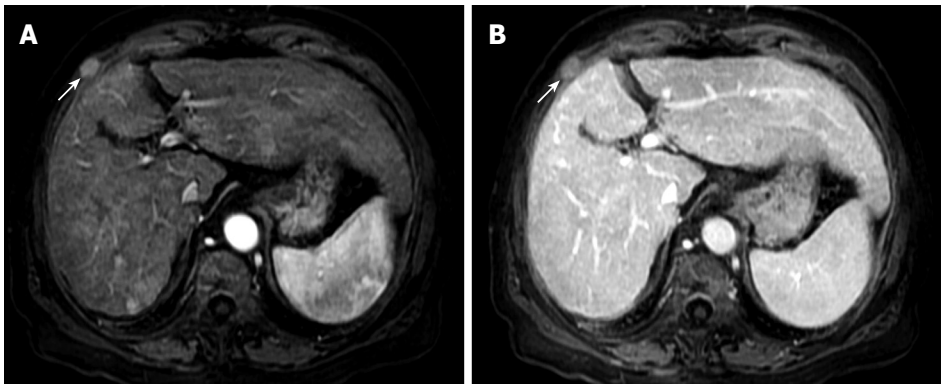


Figure 2 MRI features of HCC seeding following RFA. A: An arterial phase MRI examination of the liver and an enhancing mass in the intercostal space, indicated by the arrowheads, in the right hemithorax; B: A delayed phase MRI examination that shows the mass in the intercostal space, but this is hypointense compared with the rest of the liver.

Table 1 Summary of studies documenting seeding of HCC following biopsy or percutaneous therapeutic techniques in which the cohort size is specified[1]

	Biopsy alone	Biopsy + PEI	RFA	Biopsy + RFA
Series	14	4	5	8
Total patients from series	22424	766	1525	2218
No. seeding from series	43	11	19	24
Risk of seeding mean	3.17%	1.40%	1.73%	2.50%
Risk of seeding median	2.29%	1.40%	0.61%	0.95%
Range	0%-11%	1.15%-1.85%	0%-5.56%	0%-12.5%

[1]Modified from Stigliano *et al*[32]. PEI: Percutaneous ethanol injection of proven HCC; RFA: Radiofrequency ablation of proven HCC.

specific complications is difficult to assess and depends on a number of variables that are not always comparable across studies.

Malignant seeding is a well known complication of both diagnostic and therapeutic procedures in patients with HCC. Needle tract seeding of a liver tumor was previously defined as the development of new neoplastic disease outside the liver capsule, either in the subcutaneous soft tissues of the abdomen, intercostal muscle (Figure 2) or peritoneum[21]. A review[22] identified several suspicious mechanisms that can contribute to seeding after percutaneous procedures: tumor cells may adhere to a biopsy needle or to an electrode during its retraction; tumor cells may also be carried into the track with a little bleeding; furthermore, cells may be forced into the track by sudden increase in intratumoral pressure which is frequently encountered during RFA; finally, cells may be driven in, when saline is injected during or before RFA.

The real incidence of seeding with HCC is difficult to assess precisely. Several studies tried to assess critically the seeding rates after diagnostic and therapeutic procedures, but results are very heterogeneous. Rates of seeding after biopsy range greatly. While modest rates of tumor dissemination of 0.003%-0.009% have been described[23-25], a review on the subject has described incidences of 5%[26]. A recent systematic review and a meta-analysis[27] on needle track seeding following biopsy of liver lesions indicative of HCC showed that the incidence is 2.7% overall [95% Confidence Interval (CI), 1.8-4], and 0.9% per year (95% CI, 0.6-1.3). An important issue of this work is that all diagnosed seedings included in the review, were confirmed histologically.

With increasing use, tumor seeding after percutaneous RFA becomes a major concern, particularly in patients who have a chance of a cure. Llovet *et al*[28] reported a high rate (12.5%) of tumor seeding in 32 patients with HCC treated with RFA which was preceded by a needle biopsy. Neoplastic seeding was associated with subcapsular HCC location, poorly differentiated tumors, and high alpha-fetoprotein levels. Livraghi *et al*[29] reported a low rate of tumor seeding (0.9%) in 1314 patients with a median follow-up of 37 mo, using the same RFA technology as Llovet *et al*[28] and showed that only previous biopsy was significantly associated with tumor seeding. The low risk of seeding after RFA (0%-1.4%) has been confirmed in other recent studies[30]. In a recent study from our group[31], the risk of seeding of hepatocellular carcinoma after radiofrequency ablation was small (1.1% per patient, 95% CI, 0.19-5.84; 0.7% per procedure, 95% CI, 0.12-3.80).

The cause of the high seeding rate reported in the study by Llovet *et al*[28], not confirmed in subsequent studies, remains unclear, but could be due to the shallow position of the nodules (in fact all patients presenting seeding after RFA in the Llovet *et al*[28] cohort had a subcapsular location).

A systematic review[32] of seeding following percutaneous diagnostic and therapeutic approaches for hepatocellular carcinoma, that included studies published as full length papers and as abstracts, founds 179 seeding episodes from January 1983 until February 2007 resulting from diagnostic biopsy or local ablation therapy using percutaneous ethanol injection; acetic acid or hot saline injection; radiofrequency ablation; microwave therapy, laser therapy, or cryotherapy; and combinations of diagnostic biopsy and therapeutic procedures. The mean risk for seeding following diagnostic biopsy was 3.17% (range: 0%-11%). The mean risk for seeding after diagnostic biopsy and percutaneous ethanol injection was 1.4% (range: 1.15%-1.85%). The mean risk for seeding after radiofrequency ablation alone was 1.73% (range: 0%-5.56%). Following biopsy and radiofrequency ablation, the mean risk for seeding was 2.5% (range: 0-12.5) (Table 1).

The time to the diagnosis of seeding ranged from 7 mo for combined percutaneous diagnostic and therapeutic approaches to 13 mo for biopsy alone. From their literature review, the Authors concluded that the risk of the percutaneous approach to HCC is clinically relevant, and that biopsy of HCC in patients with cirrhosis should not be routine clinical practice. Today, there remains no molecular means for classification of HCC. So, we think that suspicious nodule biopsy remains an important research tool to identify new biological variables to achieve a more accurate prognosis of patients with HCC.

RISK FACTORS FOR SEEDING

Numerous factors are related to the risk of neoplastic dissemination after invasive procedures: larger diameter needles[33]; more passes[33]; perpendicular approach[34]; subcapsular tumor location; biopsy prior RFA; intrinsic metastatic properties of the tumor[35] related to either or both tumor size or aggressivity, and patient immunodepression[36].

Poor differentiation of the tumor is a known risk factor for seeding after fine needle aspiration biopsy, and PEI, and is also associated with a higher risk of seeding after RFA[22]. This correlation between seeding and the differentiation of HCC is not clearly evident in the review of Stigliano *et al*[32]. However, a recent study of Imamura *et al*[37] confirms that poor differentiation degree was a risk factor for neoplastic seeding after RFA of HCC and shows that surrogate markers of poor differentiation degree are larger tumor size (> 5 cm) and elevated tumor marker levels (AFP > 100 ng/mL, DCP > 100 mAU/mL, and aAFP-L3 > 15%).

OUTCOME OF SEEDING

In none of the cases of seeding reported in the meta-analyses of Silva *et al*[27] did the seeding event impact on the patient's survival when the lesion was treated successfully by resection and local ablation. Moreover, Livraghi *et al*[29] have reported successful treatment of tumor seeding after RFA by a combination of surgical resection, PEI and RFA and concluded that in no patient did the presence of tumor seeding have a negative impact on survival. Similarly, in the study of Imamura *et al*[37] the cumulative survival rates in HCC patients with neoplastic seeding were 81% at 1 year and 45% at 2 years. The Authors concluded that, taking into consideration the relatively low incidence of neoplastic seeding, the risk of neoplastic seeding after RFA would be considered an acceptable clinical risk.

We have found only one report[38] on malignant seeding after orthotopic liver transplantation, secondary just to pre transplant biopsy. No information about the patient's survival are given.

CONCLUSION

RFA and PEI are associated with a low risk of neoplastic seeding, although the risk of seeding is significantly increased if needle biopsy has been performed before treatment.

Seeding does not have a major negative impact on survival. However, if liver transplantation is a feasible option in the patient's management needle biopsy should be avoided. In fact, assuming a role of the host immune response or of tumor aggressiveness for the low rate of needle seeding, an immunosuppressed condition, as in the post transplant status, could lead to a worsening of survival with a rapid extrahepatic diffusion.

Other strategies, apart from biopsy, such as evaluating new imaging techniques for more precise pre-transplant diagnosis (against explant histology), or simply waiting for a defined period with repeated imaging, may also be effective.

By the same token RFA and PEI, which are often needed as "bridge" treatments for patients on the transplant list, can be used safely without unneeded fears of disseminating the tumor outside of the liver. Additional studies with an adequate duration and quality of follow-up will be paramount to exclude late-onset seeding.

As a future field of research, the incidence of seeding after percutaneous treatments of HCC with new adjuvant treatments such as the antiangiogenic drugs will need to be evaluated.

REFERENCES

1 **Parkin DM**, Bray F, Ferlay J, Pisani P. Global cancer statistics, 2002. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2005; **55**: 74-108
2 **El-Serag HB**, Mason AC. Rising incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma in the United States. *N Engl J Med* 1999; **340**: 745-750
3 **El-Serag HB**, Davila JA, Petersen NJ, McGlynn KA. The continuing increase in the incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma in the United States: an update. *Ann Intern Med* 2003; **139**: 817-823
4 **Sangiovanni A**, Del Ninno E, Fasani P, De Fazio C, Ronchi G, Romeo R, Morabito A, De Franchis R, Colombo M. Increased survival of cirrhotic patients with a hepatocellular carcinoma detected during surveillance. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126**: 1005-1014
5 **Bruix J**, Sherman M. Management of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2005; **42**: 1208-1236
6 **Lim JH**, Cho JM, Kim EY, Park CK. Dysplastic nodules in liver cirrhosis: evaluation of hemodynamics with CT during arterial portography and CT hepatic arteriography. *Radiology* 2000; **214**: 869-874
7 **Rode A**, Bancel B, Douek P, Chevallier M, Vilgrain V, Picaud G, Henry L, Berger F, Bizollon T, Gaudin JL, Ducerf C. Small nodule detection in cirrhotic livers: evaluation with US, spiral CT, and MRI and correlation with pathologic examination of explanted liver. *J Comput Assist Tomogr* 2001; **25**: 327-336
8 **Monzawa S**, Ichikawa T, Nakajima H, Kitanaka Y, Omata K, Araki T. Dynamic CT for detecting small hepatocellular carcinoma: usefulness of delayed phase imaging. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2007; **188**: 147-153
9 **Hecht EM**, Holland AE, Israel GM, Hahn WY, Kim DC, West AB, Babb JS, Taouli B, Lee VS, Krinsky GA. Hepatocellular carcinoma in the cirrhotic liver: gadolinium-enhanced 3D T1-weighted MR imaging as a stand-alone sequence for diagnosis. *Radiology* 2006; **239**: 438-447

10 **Piscaglia F**, Bolondi L. Recent advances in the diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatol Res* 2007; **37** Suppl 2: S178-S192
11 **Parikh P**, Malhotra H, Jelic S. Hepatocellular carcinoma: ESMO clinical recommendations for diagnosis, treatment and follow-up. *Ann Oncol* 2008; **19** Suppl 2: ii27-ii28
12 **Chignard N**, Beretta L. Proteomics for hepatocellular carcinoma marker discovery. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: S120-S125
13 **Lee JS**, Chu IS, Heo J, Calvisi DF, Sun Z, Roskams T, Durnez A, Demetris AJ, Thorgeirsson SS. Classification and prediction of survival in hepatocellular carcinoma by gene expression profiling. *Hepatology* 2004; **40**: 667-676
14 **Schwartz M**, Roayaie S, Konstadoulakis M. Strategies for the management of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Nat Clin Pract Oncol* 2007; **4**: 424-432
15 **Cabibbo G**, Latteri F, Antonucci M, Craxi A. Multimodal approaches to the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Nat Clin Pract Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **6**: 159-169
16 **Sala M**, Llovet JM, Vilana R, Bianchi L, Sole M, Ayuso C, Bru C, Bruix J. Initial response to percutaneous ablation predicts survival in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2004; **40**: 1352-1360
17 **Camme C**, Di Marco V, Orlando A, Sandonato L, Casaril A, Parisi P, Alizzi S, Sciarrino E, Virdone R, Pardo S, Di Bona D, Licata A, Latteri F, Cabibbo G, Montalto G, Latteri MA, Nicoli N, Craxi A. Treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma in compensated cirrhosis with radio-frequency thermal ablation (RFTA): a prospective study. *J Hepatol* 2005; **42**: 535-540
18 **Omata M**, Tateishi R, Yoshida H, Shiina S. Treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma by percutaneous tumor ablation methods: Ethanol injection therapy and radiofrequency ablation. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: S159-S166
19 **Lencioni R**, Cioni D, Crocetti L, Franchini C, Pina CD, Lera J, Bartolozzi C. Early-stage hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with cirrhosis: long-term results of percutaneous image-guided radiofrequency ablation. *Radiology* 2005; **234**: 961-967
20 **Orlando A**, Leandro G, Olivo M, Andriulli A, Cottone M. Radiofrequency thermal ablation vs. percutaneous ethanol injection for small hepatocellular carcinoma in cirrhosis: meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2009; **104**: 514-524
21 **Jaskolka JD**, Asch MR, Kachura JR, Ho CS, Ossip M, Wong F, Sherman M, Grant DR, Greig PD, Gallinger S. Needle tract seeding after radiofrequency ablation of hepatic tumors. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 2005; **16**: 485-491
22 **Mulier S**, Mulier P, Ni Y, Miao Y, Dupas B, Marchal G, De Wever I, Michel L. Complications of radiofrequency coagulation of liver tumours. *Br J Surg* 2002; **89**: 1206-1222
23 **Giorgio A**, Tarantino L, de Stefano G, Francica G, Esposito F, Perrotta A, Aloisio V, Farella N, Mariniello N, Coppola C, Caturelli E. Complications after interventional sonography of focal liver lesions: a 22-year single-center experience. *J Ultrasound Med* 2003; **22**: 193-205
24 **Smith EH**. Complications of percutaneous abdominal fine-needle biopsy. Review. *Radiology* 1991; **178**: 253-258
25 **Weiss H**, Duntsch U, Weiss A. [Risks of fine needle puncture--results of a survey in West Germany(German Society of Ultrasound in Medicine survey)] *Ultraschall Med* 1988; **9**: 121-127
26 **Pelloni A**, Gertsch P. [Risks and consequences of tumor seeding after percutaneous fine needle biopsy four diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma] *Schweiz Med Wochenschr* 2000; **130**: 871-877
27 **Silva MA**, Hegab B, Hyde C, Guo B, Buckels JA, Mirza DF. Needle track seeding following biopsy of liver lesions in the diagnosis of hepatocellular cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Gut* 2008; **57**: 1592-1596
28 **Llovet JM**, Vilana R, Bru C, Bianchi L, Salmeron JM, Boix L, Ganau S, Sala M, Pages M, Ayuso C, Sole M, Rodes J, Bruix J. Increased risk of tumor seeding after percutaneous radiofrequency ablation for single hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2001; **33**: 1124-1129
29 **Livraghi T**, Lazzaroni S, Meloni F, Solbiati L. Risk of tumour seeding after percutaneous radiofrequency ablation for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Br J Surg* 2005; **92**: 856-858
30 **Poon RT**, Ng KK, Lam CM, Ai V, Yuen J, Fan ST. Radiofrequency ablation for subcapsular hepatocellular carcinoma. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2004; **11**: 281-289
31 **Latteri F**, Sandonato L, Di Marco V, Parisi P, Cabibbo G, Lombardo G, Galia M, Midiri M, Latteri MA, Craxi A. Seeding after radiofrequency ablation of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with cirrhosis: a prospective study. *Dig Liver Dis* 2008; **40**: 684-689
32 **Stigliano R**, Marelli L, Yu D, Davies N, Patch D, Burroughs AK. Seeding following percutaneous diagnostic and therapeutic approaches for hepatocellular carcinoma. What is the risk and the outcome? Seeding risk for percutaneous approach of HCC. *Cancer Treat Rev* 2007; **33**: 437-447
33 **Smith EH**. The hazards of fine-needle aspiration biopsy. *Ultrasound Med Biol* 1984; **10**: 629-634
34 **Bolondi L**, Gaiani S, Celli N, Piscaglia F. Tumor dissemination after radiofrequency ablation of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2001; **34**: 608; author reply 610-611
35 **Goletti O**, Chiarugi M, Buccianti P, Macchiarini P. Subcutaneous implantation of liver metastasis after fine needle biopsy. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 1992; **18**: 636-637
36 **Shimada M**, Maeda T, Saitoh A, Morotomi I, Kano T. Needle track seeding after percutaneous ethanol injection therapy for small hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Surg Oncol* 1995; **58**: 278-281
37 **Imamura J**, Tateishi R, Shiina S, Goto E, Sato T, Ohki T, Masuzaki R, Goto T, Yoshida H, Kanai F, Hamamura K, Obi S, Yoshida H, Omata M. Neoplastic seeding after radiofrequency ablation for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2008; **103**: 3057-3062
38 **Dumortier J**, Lombard-Bohas C, Valette PJ, Boillot O, Scoazec JY, Berger F, Claudel-Bonvoisin S. Needle tract recurrence of hepatocellular carcinoma after liver transplantation. *Gut* 2000; **47**: 301

S- Editor Zhang HN **L- Editor** Lalor PF **E- Editor** Ma WH

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.67

World J Hepatol 2009 October 31; 1(1): 67-71
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

REVIEW

Hepatitis C virus and peripheral blood mononuclear cell reservoirs

Patricia Baré

Patricia Baré, Virology Laboratory, Instituto de Investigaciones Hematológicas, Academia Nacional de Medicina, Buenos Aires 1425, Argentina
Author contributions: Baré P solely contributed to this paper.
Correspondence to: Patricia Baré, PhD, Virology Laboratory, Instituto de Investigaciones Hematológicas, Academia Nacional de Medicina, Pacheco de Melo, Buenos Aires 3081, Argentina. pbare@hematologia.anm.edu.ar
Telephone: +54-11-48050712 Fax: +54-11-48039475
Received: March 12, 2009 Revised: September 2, 2009
Accepted: September 9, 2009
Published online: October 31, 2009

Abstract

The existence of hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection in extrahepatic sites has been widely demonstrated. Since peripheral blood mononuclear cells have been the most investigated, compelling evidence of an association with HCV has been shown. Different studies have revealed that HCV RNA can persist and replicate in immune cells but the relevance of its presence and persistence over time is still unknown. As the contribution of this extrahepatic reservoir could have several clinical implications in viral transmission, treatment response and disease pathogenesis, future studies are required to improve our knowledge of the extrahepatic manifestations of HCV and its possible consequences.

Key words: Hepatitis C virus; Peripheral blood mononuclear cell; Reservoirs; Lymphotropism; Replication

Peer reviewer: Ajay Duseja, MD, DM, FACG, Consultant, Department of Hepatology, Post Graduate Institute of Medical Education & Research,Chandigarh 160012, India

Baré P. Hepatitis C virus and peripheral blood mononuclear cell reservoirs. *World J Hepatol* 2009; 1(1): 67-71 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v1/i1/67.htm
DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.67

INTRODUCTION

Hepatitis C virus (HCV) is a small positive-strand RNA virus responsible for an important burden of chronic hepatitis and hepatic related diseases around the world[1]. Although HCV is mainly hepatotropic, its presence in extrahepatic sites has been widely demonstrated[2] and it was calculated that the contribution of this second compartment is responsible for about 3.1% of virus in circulation[3]. Lymphoid cells are the most investigated extrahepatic site.

HCV infection of lymphoid cells was suggested for the first time by Hellings in 1985[4]. Mononuclear leucocytes (mainly lymphocytes), isolated by Ficoll-Paque gradient centrifugation of blood freshly drawn from a hemophilia A patient with chronic non-A, non-B hepatitis (NANB), caused NANB when infused in a susceptible chimpanzee.

Immediately after discovery of the virus in 1989[5], different groups attempted to demonstrate HCV replication in lymphoid cells by infecting macrophages, B and T lymphocytes[6-9]. Moreover, several reports describing the presence of the replicative intermediate or negative strand in peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) were published[9,10]. The HCV RNA negative strand is a viral replicative intermediate and its presence can be considered direct evidence of ongoing viral replication. Nevertheless, discordant results were obtained by different groups, and the association of HCV with PBMC and viral replication in this extrahepatic site remained controversial for many years[11-16]. Strong evidence for *in vivo* HCV infection of, and replication in PBMC was provided by Bronowicki and collaborators[17]. They demonstrated the persistence of the viral RNA sequences in mononuclear blood cells inoculated into immunosup-

pressed mice and they were able to perform a second *in vivo* passage by successful transmission of HCV-RNA-positive cells to other mice. However, later on, the SCID mice did not offer a suitable *in vivo* model to study HCV pathogenesis. Different studies have reported evidence for HCV replication in granulocytes, monocytes/macrophages, dendritic cells, B and T lymphocytes[18-23]. In addition, successful infections of lymphoid cells or establishment of stable HCV+ cell lines have been achieved[22,24].

HCV REPLICATION IN PBMC

As discussed above, the detection of replicative forms of HCV RNA in PBMC has been extensively reported but remains controversial. Earlier PCR methods have been suspected to lack specificity and/or sensitivity, possibly due to the very low concentration of negative HCV RNA strand in cells. Currently, methodological modifications have been used to overcome these difficulties and many reports demonstrated that HCV can certainly replicate in PBMC[25-29].

Some studies showed that replication in PBMC occurs at a very low level and the amount of intracellular HCV RNA is patient-specific and is a result of a dynamic process related to virologic and immunologic factors[26,28]. The role of HCV lymphotropism in the natural history of HCV infection is not yet resolved and reports remain arguable. Nowadays, although it is accepted that HCV can replicate in PBMC, the contribution of this extrahepatic site as a significant viral reservoir and the importance of viral persistence in aviremic subjects after spontaneous or therapeutical clearance is still under debate.

PBMC AS HCV RESERVOIRS

Lymphoid cells may represent privileged reservoirs that could favor HCV persistence leading to chronic HCV infection. The infection of immune cells may interfere with the efficiency of viral clearance by the host[30,31]. Different reports demonstrate the persistence of HCV RNA at very low levels in serum and peripheral lymphoid cells after apparently complete spontaneous or antiviral therapy-induced resolution of chronic hepatitis C[32,33]. The occult HCV persistence in lymphoid cells may have important epidemiological and pathogenic implications. Radkowski and collaborators[33] suggested that in patients with sustained virological response (SVR), small quantities of HCV RNA may persist in liver or PBMC for up to 9 years. These findings could explain the phenomenon of frequent persistence of humoral and cellular immunity for many years after supposed viral clearance but also, could present a potential risk for transmission and reactivation. It was also demonstrated that HCV may also persist and replicate in the liver and PBMC of healthy, anti-HCV antibody-positive, serum HCV RNA-negative patients who have persistently normal ALT levels[34]. It is possible that viral persistence and, specifically, the presence of HCV RNA in PBMC may lead to HCV reactivation under special circumstances. In patients with immunosuppresion, under immunomodulatory therapy or with coinfection, persistent replicating HCV could represent a potential source for viral recurrence. These findings suggest that sterilizing immunity with complete elimination of virus is unlikely.

EVIDENCE AGAINST PBMC AS LONG-LIVED HCV RESERVOIRS

In contrast with the above mentioned reports, some studies refute the role of PBMC as a long-lived HCV reservoir. Kaiser P and collaborators[26] evaluated 30 HIV/HCV coinfected patients for up to 40 mo. Total PBMC-associated HCV RNA and virion-enclosed PBMC-associated HCV RNA, that could represent viral particles nonspecifically attached to blood cells, were distinguished and they observed widespread presence of viral RNA in PBMC from HCV-viremic patients. Evidence for persistence of HCV in PBMC in the absence of HCV viremia in plasma could not be found. Their experiments supported a concept of low level replication in PBMC and suggested that the infection and expression of HCV in PBMC is of minor quantitative importance for systemic replication and persistence of HCV[26].

Another report in which HCV persistence was underestimated was published by Bernardin[35]. In their experiments, they could not find any HCV RNA detectable PBMC sample in 69 aviremic donors indicating that PBMC are unlikely to serve as a long-lived reservoir of HCV in aviremic subjects.

The slow decrease in anti-HCV antibody titers in subjects with spontaneously cleared viremia as well as the complete seroreversion detected in 7% of transfusion transmitted infections may also reflect an absence of ongoing antigenic stimulation, indirectly supporting clearance of infection in persons who test HCV RNA-negative in plasma[35].

HCV LYMPHOTROPISM

The presence of variants of the highly conserved 5' untranslated region (UTR) have been observed between HCV from plasma and PBMC[36,37]. The identification of sequence polymorphisms in cells of the lymphatic system suggested possible adaptation of HCV to replicate in nonhepatic cells[29]. In addition, a compartmental distribution of HCV quasispecies and HCV genotypes has been demonstrated[37,38]. Concordant with our results in a hemophilic population, the HCV genotypes detected in PBMC were not detected in plasma in some individuals supporting independent replication in these cells[37,39].

These findings further support the lymphotropic nature of HCV and reinforce the concept that independent replication of HCV in lymphoid cells may constitute a potential risk for persistence, reactivation, recurrence or treatment resistance.

CLINICAL IMPLICATIONS OF PBMC AS HCV RESERVOIRS

HCV transmission

In some contexts, as in vertical transmission, the presence of HCV in PBMC played relevant roles. The risk of mother-to-child transmission is associated with the presence of HCV in maternal PBMC[40]. Likewise, the persistence of small quantities of HCV RNA in aviremic patients who are supposed to have solved the infection could have important implications for viral transmission.

Reactivation or recurrence

Several studies demonstrate that relapse after sustained virological response is extremely rare[41]. However, low-level intrahepatic viraemia despite negative serum HCV RNA testing has been shown to predict a higher likelihood of late relapse, particularly in the setting of immunosuppression[41].

The existence of PBMC reservoirs may be implicated in the recurrence of chronic hepatitis after apparently successful antiviral treatment. Previous findings suggest that in patients with spontaneous eradication or sustained virological response after therapy, small quantities of HCV RNA may persist in lymphoid cells for years[32,33]. The presence of positive/negative strand HCV RNA at the end of treatment was associated with relapse among HCV-HIV coinfected patients[42]. It has been suggested that low level replication of HCV in PBMCs may lead to reactivation of HCV after termination of therapy[2,32,33].

Reemergence of HCV RNA was demonstrated in apparent sustained viral responders receiving immune suppressive therapy[43,44]. This proved that the HCV reservoir requires continued innate or T cell immune surveillance to prevent disease activity even years after the infection in at least some sustained viral responders[43].

On the other hand, recurrent infection in transplant recipients was also described[45-47] and the utilization of antiviral therapy in HCV-infected patients awaiting liver transplantation as one of the strategies to prevent hepatitis C recurrence after transplantation was recommended[48]. It has been proposed that viral variants from extrahepatic compartments may be involved in infection recurrence after liver transplantation. One report has specifically investigated the origin of HCV recurrence and suggested that liver-derived virus remaining in circulation was the major responsible for the graft reinfection. However, virus variants of likely extrahepatic origin could be detected in serum early after transplantation[45].

Immune dysfunction and lymphoproliferative disorders

The interaction between HCV and the human immune system is likely to have important clinical consequences. First, HCV has a remarkable ability to evade the immune system, achieving almost 85% chronicity rates. On the other hand, HCV infection may induce extra-hepatic immune related manifestations in a high percentage of infected patients, including mixed cryoglobulinemia and non-Hodgkin lymphoma. At present, the possible mechanisms by which HCV modulates immune function are being examined.

Monocytes, B cells, and CD4+ and CD8+ lymphocytes can support HCV replication and can serve as reservoirs in symptomatic and occult HCV infections[29]. Endogenous presentation of HCV antigens by infected B cells and monocytes may contribute to immune tolerance of HCV, favoring its persistence[29]. Particularly, in perihepatic lymph nodes, HCV replication has been demonstrated and the results suggest that replication of HCV in T cells might contribute to disturbance of Th1 commitment or Th1 hyporesponsiveness in individuals with persistent HCV infection[31].

According to some reports, a predominant infection of B lymphocytes suggests a preferential tropism of HCV for B cells[49,24]. In consequence, chronic antigen stimulation by the virus may trigger B cell proliferation resulting in a wide spectrum of lymphoproliferative disorders, cryoglobulinemia and non-Hodgkin lymphoma, frequently observed in infected patients[2,50].

Treatment resistance

Different factors have been associated with lower treatment response, such as higher serum HCV viral load at baseline, HCV genotype 1 infection, co-treatment with antiretroviral therapy, the presence of IFN-neutralizing antibodies and a higher degree of immune deterioration[51-56]. The detection of HCV RNA in PBMC reservoirs might have important implications for effective treatment. One possible mechanism of relapse is that PBMC could serve as a viral reservoir resistant to IFN[30]. As demonstrated, clearance of HCV RNA in PBMC at the end of IFN treatment was a predictor of durable response to antiviral therapy in patients with chronic hepatitis[57]. Moreover, in the context of HCV-HIV coinfected patients, the presence of strand specific HCV RNA at the end of 48 wk of therapy was associated with viral relapse[41].

On the other hand, HCV lymphotropic variants corresponding to genotypes more resistant to treatment could persist in lymphoid cells[58,39]. Interestingly, Di Liberto and collaborators found that the presence of compartmentalization in PBMC was strongly predictive of sustained virologic response[59].

CONCLUSION

To date, different reports suggest that HCV replication in PBMC does definitely occur which proved to have important effects on different aspects of HCV infection. Nonetheless, as conflicting findings *in vivo* still exist, the contribution of this extrahepatic site in disease pathogenesis and treatment should be further explored and the mechanisms involved should be elucidated.

REFERENCES

1 **Alter MJ**. Epidemiology of hepatitis C virus infection. *World*

J Gastroenterol 2007; **13**: 2436-2441
2 **Blackard JT**, Kemmer N, Sherman KE. Extrahepatic replication of HCV: insights into clinical manifestations and biological consequences. *Hepatology* 2006; **44**: 15-22
3 **Dahari H**, Feliu A, Garcia-Retortillo M, Forns X, Neumann AU. Second hepatitis C replication compartment indicated by viral dynamics during liver transplantation. *J Hepatol* 2005; **42**: 491-498
4 **Hellings JA**, van der Veen-du Prie J, Snelting-van Densen R, Stute R. Preliminary results of transmission experiments of non-A, non-B hepatitis by mononuclear leucocytes from a chronic patient. *J Virol Methods* 1985; **10**: 321-326
5 **Choo QL**, Kuo G, Weiner AJ, Overby LR, Bradley DW, Houghton M. Isolation of a cDNA clone derived from a blood-borne non-A, non-B viral hepatitis genome. *Science* 1989; **244**: 359-362
6 **Shimizu YK**, Iwamoto A, Hijikata M, Purcell RH, Yoshikura H. Evidence for in vitro replication of hepatitis C virus genome in a human T-cell line. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1992; **89**: 5477-5481
7 **Cribier B**, Schmitt C, Bingen A, Kirn A, Keller F. In vitro infection of peripheral blood mononuclear cells by hepatitis C virus. *J Gen Virol* 1995; **76** (Pt 10): 2485-2491
8 **Kato N**, Nakazawa T, Mizutani T, Shimotohno K. Susceptibility of human T-lymphotropic virus type I infected cell line MT-2 to hepatitis C virus infection. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1995; **206**: 863-869
9 **Caussin-Schwemling C**, Schmitt C, Stoll-Keller F. Study of the infection of human blood derived monocyte/macrophages with hepatitis C virus in vitro. *J Med Virol* 2001; **65**: 14-22
10 **Zignego AL**, Macchia D, Monti M, Thiers V, Mazzetti M, Foschi M, Maggi E, Romagnani S, Gentilini P, Brechot C. Infection of peripheral mononuclear blood cells by hepatitis C virus. *J Hepatol* 1992; **15**: 382-386
11 **Muller HM**, Pfaff E, Goeser T, Kallinowski B, Solbach C, Theilmann L. Peripheral blood leukocytes serve as a possible extrahepatic site for hepatitis C virus replication. *J Gen Virol* 1993; **74** (Pt 4): 669-676
12 **Muratori L**, Giostra F, Cataleta M, Francesconi R, Ballardini G, Cassani F, Lenzi M, Bianchi FB. Testing for hepatitis C virus sequences in peripheral blood mononuclear cells of patients with chronic hepatitis C in the absence of serum hepatitis C virus RNA. *Liver* 1994; **14**: 124-128
13 **Lanford RE**, Chavez D, Chisari FV, Sureau C. Lack of detection of negative-strand hepatitis C virus RNA in peripheral blood mononuclear cells and other extrahepatic tissues by the highly strand-specific rTth reverse transcriptase PCR. *J Virol* 1995; **69**: 8079-8083
14 **Laskus T**, Radkowski M, Wang LF, Cianciara J, Vargas H, Rakela J. Hepatitis C virus negative strand RNA is not detected in peripheral blood mononuclear cells and viral sequences are identical to those in serum: a case against extrahepatic replication. *J Gen Virol* 1997; **78** (Pt 11): 2747-2750
15 **Mellor J**, Haydon G, Blair C, Livingstone W, Simmonds P. Low level or absent in vivo replication of hepatitis C virus and hepatitis G virus/GB virus C in peripheral blood mononuclear cells. *J Gen Virol* 1998; **79** (Pt 4): 705-714
16 **Sansonno D**, Lotesoriere C, Cornacchiulo V, Fanelli M, Gatti P, Iodice G, Racanelli V, Dammacco F. Hepatitis C virus infection involves CD34(+) hematopoietic progenitor cells in hepatitis C virus chronic carriers. *Blood* 1998; **92**: 3328-3337
17 **Bronowicki JP**, Loriot MA, Thiers V, Grignon Y, Zignego AL, Brechot C. Hepatitis C virus persistence in human hematopoietic cells injected into SCID mice. *Hepatology* 1998; **28**: 211-218
18 **Lerat H**, Rumin S, Habersetzer F, Berby F, Trabaud MA, Trepo C, Inchauspe G. In vivo tropism of hepatitis C virus genomic sequences in hematopoietic cells: influence of viral load, viral genotype, and cell phenotype. *Blood* 1998; **91**: 3841-3849
19 **Laskus T**, Radkowski M, Piasek A, Nowicki M, Horban A, Cianciara J, Rakela J. Hepatitis C virus in lymphoid cells of patients coinfected with human immunodeficiency virus type 1: evidence of active replication in monocytes/macrophages and lymphocytes. *J Infect Dis* 2000; **181**: 442-448
20 **Goutagny N**, Fatmi A, De Ledinghen V, Penin F, Couzigou P, Inchauspe G, Bain C. Evidence of viral replication in circulating dendritic cells during hepatitis C virus infection. *J Infect Dis* 2003; **187**: 1951-1958
21 **Radkowski M**, Bednarska A, Horban A, Stanczak J, Wilkinson J, Adair DM, Nowicki M, Rakela J, Laskus T. Infection of primary human macrophages with hepatitis C virus in vitro: induction of tumour necrosis factor-alpha and interleukin 8. *J Gen Virol* 2004; **85**: 47-59
22 **Bare P**, Massud I, Parodi C, Belmonte L, Garcia G, Nebel MC, Corti M, Pinto MT, Bianco RP, Bracco MM, Campos R, Ares BR. Continuous release of hepatitis C virus (HCV) by peripheral blood mononuclear cells and B-lymphoblastoid cell-line cultures derived from HCV-infected patients. *J Gen Virol* 2005; **86**: 1717-1727
23 **MacParland SA**, Pham TN, Gujar SA, Michalak TI. De novo infection and propagation of wild-type Hepatitis C virus in human T lymphocytes in vitro. *J Gen Virol* 2006; **87**: 3577-3586
24 **Sung VM**, Shimodaira S, Doughty AL, Picchio GR, Can H, Yen TS, Lindsay KL, Levine AM, Lai MM. Establishment of B-cell lymphoma cell lines persistently infected with hepatitis C virus in vivo and in vitro: the apoptotic effects of virus infection. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 2134-2146
25 **Blackard JT**, Smeaton L, Hiasa Y, Horiike N, Onji M, Jamieson DJ, Rodriguez I, Mayer KH, Chung RT. Detection of hepatitis C virus (HCV) in serum and peripheral-blood mononuclear cells from HCV-monoinfected and HIV/HCV-coinfected persons. *J Infect Dis* 2005; **192**: 258-265
26 **Kaiser P**, Niederost B, Joos B, von Wyl V, Opravil M, Weber R, Gunthard HF, Fischer M. Equal amounts of intracellular and virion-enclosed hepatitis C virus RNA are associated with peripheral-blood mononuclear cells in vivo. *J Infect Dis* 2006; **194**: 1713-1723
27 **Pal S**, Sullivan DG, Kim S, Lai KK, Kae J, Cotler SJ, Carithers RL Jr, Wood BL, Perkins JD, Gretch DR. Productive replication of hepatitis C virus in perihepatic lymph nodes in vivo: implications of HCV lymphotropism. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 1107-1116
28 **Laskus T**, Operskalski EA, Radkowski M, Wilkinson J, Mack WJ, deGiacomo M, Al-Harthi L, Chen Z, Xu J, Kovacs A. Negative-strand hepatitis C virus (HCV) RNA in peripheral blood mononuclear cells from anti-HCV-positive/HIV-infected women. *J Infect Dis* 2007; **195**: 124-133
29 **Pham TN**, King D, Macparland SA, McGrath JS, Reddy SB, Bursey FR, Michalak TI. Hepatitis C virus replicates in the same immune cell subsets in chronic hepatitis C and occult infection. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **134**: 812-822
30 **Zignego AL**, Giannini C, Monti M, Gragnani L. Hepatitis C virus lymphotropism: lessons from a decade of studies. *Dig Liver Dis* 2007; **39** Suppl 1: S38-S45
31 **Kondo Y**, Sung VM, Machida K, Liu M, Lai MM. Hepatitis C virus infects T cells and affects interferon-gamma signaling in T cell lines. *Virology* 2007; **361**: 161-173
32 **Pham TN**, MacParland SA, Mulrooney PM, Cooksley H, Naoumov NV, Michalak TI. Hepatitis C virus persistence after spontaneous or treatment-induced resolution of hepatitis C. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 5867-5874
33 **Radkowski M**, Gallegos-Orozco JF, Jablonska J, Colby TV, Walewska-Zielecka B, Kubicka J, Wilkinson J, Adair D, Rakela J, Laskus T. Persistence of hepatitis C virus in patients successfully treated for chronic hepatitis C. *Hepatology* 2005; **41**: 106-114

34 **Carreno V**, Pardo M, Lopez-Alcorocho JM, Rodriguez-Inigo E, Bartolome J, Castillo I. Detection of hepatitis C virus (HCV) RNA in the liver of healthy, anti-HCV antibody-positive, serum HCV RNA-negative patients with normal alanine aminotransferase levels. *J Infect Dis* 2006; **194**: 53-60

35 **Bernardin F**, Tobler L, Walsh I, Williams JD, Busch M, Delwart E. Clearance of hepatitis C virus RNA from the peripheral blood mononuclear cells of blood donors who spontaneously or therapeutically control their plasma viremia. *Hepatology* 2008; **47**: 1446-1452

36 **Laskus T**, Radkowski M, Wang LF, Nowicki M, Rakela J. Uneven distribution of hepatitis C virus quasispecies in tissues from subjects with end-stage liver disease: confounding effect of viral adsorption and mounting evidence for the presence of low-level extrahepatic replication. *J Virol* 2000; **74**: 1014-1017

37 **Roque-Afonso AM**, Ducoulombier D, Di Liberto G, Kara R, Gigou M, Dussaix E, Samuel D, Feray C. Compartmentalization of hepatitis C virus genotypes between plasma and peripheral blood mononuclear cells. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 6349-6357

38 **Roque Afonso AM**, Jiang J, Penin F, Tareau C, Samuel D, Petit MA, Bismuth H, Dussaix E, Feray C. Nonrandom distribution of hepatitis C virus quasispecies in plasma and peripheral blood mononuclear cell subsets. *J Virol* 1999; **73**: 9213-9221

39 **Parodi C**, Culasso A, Aloisi N, Garcia G, Baston M, Corti M, Bianco RP, Campos R, Ares BR, Bare P. Evidence of occult HCV genotypes in haemophilic individuals with unapparent HCV mixed infections. *Haemophilia* 2008; **14**: 816-822

40 **Azzari C**, Resti M, Moriondo M, Ferrari R, Lionetti P, Vierucci A. Vertical transmission of HCV is related to maternal peripheral blood mononuclear cell infection. *Blood* 2000; **96**: 2045-2048

41 **Desmond CP**, Roberts SK, Dudley F, Mitchell J, Day C, Nguyen S, Pianko S. Sustained virological response rates and durability of the response to interferon-based therapies in hepatitis C patients treated in the clinical setting. *J Viral Hepat* 2006; **13**: 311-315

42 **de Felipe B**, Leal M, Soriano-Sarabia N, Gutierrez A, Lopez-Cortes L, Molina-Pinelo S, Vallejo A. HCV RNA in peripheral blood cell subsets in HCV-HIV coinfected patients at the end of PegIFN/RBV treatment is associated with virologic relapse. *J Viral Hepat* 2009; **16**: 21-27

43 **Lee WM**, Polson JE, Carney DS, Sahin B, Gale M Jr. Reemergence of hepatitis C virus after 8.5 years in a patient with hypogammaglobulinemia: evidence for an occult viral reservoir. *J Infect Dis* 2005; **192**: 1088-1092

44 **Lin A**, Thadareddy A, Goldstein MJ, Lake-Bakaar G. Immune suppression leading to hepatitis C virus re-emergence after sustained virological response. *J Med Virol* 2008; **80**: 1720-1722

45 **Laskus T**, Radkowski M, Wilkinson J, Vargas H, Rakela J. The origin of hepatitis C virus reinfecting transplanted livers: serum-derived versus peripheral blood mononuclear cell-derived virus. *J Infect Dis* 2002; **185**: 417-421

46 **Zekri AR**, Mohamed WS, Samra MA, Sherif GM, El-Shehaby AM, El-Sayed MH. Risk factors for cytomegalovirus, hepatitis B and C virus reactivation after bone marrow transplantation. *Transpl Immunol* 2004; **13**: 305-311

47 **Melon S**, Galarraga MC, Villar M, Laures A, Boga JA, de Ona M, Gomez E. Hepatitis C virus reactivation in anti-hepatitic C virus-positive renal transplant recipients. *Transplant Proc* 2005; **37**: 2083-2085

48 **Forns X**, Garcia-Retortillo M, Serrano T, Feliu A, Suarez F, de la Mata M, Garcia-Valdecasas JC, Navasa M, Rimola A, Rodes J. Antiviral therapy of patients with decompensated cirrhosis to prevent recurrence of hepatitis C after liver transplantation. *J Hepatol* 2003; **39**: 389-396

49 **Ducoulombier D**, Roque-Afonso AM, Di Liberto G, Penin F, Kara R, Richard Y, Dussaix E, Feray C. Frequent compartmentalization of hepatitis C virus variants in circulating B cells and monocytes. *Hepatology* 2004; **39**: 817-825

50 **Landau DA**, Saadoun D, Calabrese LH, Cacoub P. The pathophysiology of HCV induced B-cell clonal disorders. *Autoimmun Rev* 2007; **6**: 581-587

51 **Strader DB**, Wright T, Thomas DL, Seeff LB. Diagnosis, management, and treatment of hepatitis C. *Hepatology* 2004; **39**: 1147-1171

52 **Zeuzem S**, Hultcrantz R, Bourliere M, Goeser T, Marcellin P, Sanchez-Tapias J, Sarrazin C, Harvey J, Brass C, Albrecht J. Peginterferon alfa-2b plus ribavirin for treatment of chronic hepatitis C in previously untreated patients infected with HCV genotypes 2 or 3. *J Hepatol* 2004; **40**: 993-999

53 **Jorns C**, Holzinger D, Thimme R, Spangenberg HC, Weidmann M, Rasenack J, Blum HE, Haller O, Kochs G. Rapid and simple detection of IFN-neutralizing antibodies in chronic hepatitis C non-responsive to IFN-alpha. *J Med Virol* 2006; **78**: 74-82

54 **Nunez M**, Marino A, Miralles C, Berdun MA, Sola J, Hernandez-Burruezo JJ, Galindo MJ, Barreiro P, Martin-Carbonero L, Soriano V. Baseline serum hepatitis C virus (HCV) RNA level and response at week 4 are the best predictors of relapse after treatment with pegylated interferon plus ribavirin in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2007; **45**: 439-444

55 **Farnik H**, Mihm U, Zeuzem S. Optimal therapy in genotype 1 patients. *Liver Int* 2009; **29** Suppl 1: 23-30

56 **Sulkowski MS**, Thomas DL, Chaisson RE, Moore RD. Hepatotoxicity associated with antiretroviral therapy in adults infected with human immunodeficiency virus and the role of hepatitis C or B virus infection. *JAMA* 2000; **283**: 74-80

57 **Xu DZ**, Xie Y, Li ZQ. Clearance of HCV RNA in peripheral blood mononuclear cell as a predictor of response to antiviral therapy in patients with chronic hepatitis C. *Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int* 2005; **4**: 550-553

58 **Schroter M**, Feucht HH, Zollner B, Schafer P, Laufs R. Multiple infections with different HCV genotypes: prevalence and clinical impact. *J Clin Virol* 2003; **27**: 200-204

59 **Di Liberto G**, Roque-Afonso AM, Kara R, Ducoulombier D, Fallot G, Samuel D, Feray C. Clinical and therapeutic implications of hepatitis C virus compartmentalization. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **131**: 76-84

S- Editor Zhang HN **L- Editor** Lalor PF **E- Editor** Ma WH

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.72

World J Hepatol 2009 October 31; 1(1): 72-78
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

REVIEW

Oxidative stress signaling underlying liver disease and hepatoprotective mechanisms

Luis A Videla

Luis A Videla, Molecular and Clinical Pharmacology Program, Institute of Biomedical Sciences, Faculty of Medicine, University of Chile, Santiago-7, Chile
Author contributions: Videla LA solely contributed to this paper.
Supported by Grant 1090020 From FONDECYT, Chile
Correspondence to: Luis A Videla, Professor, Molecular and Clinical Pharmacology Program, Institute of Biomedical Sciences, Faculty of Medicine, University of Chile, Santiago-7, Chile. lvidela@med.uchile.cl
Telephone: +56-2-9786256 Fax: +56-2-7372783
Received: July 20, 2009 Revised: September 10, 2009
Accepted: September 17, 2009
Published online: October 31, 2009

Abstract

Oxidative stress is a redox imbalance between pro-oxidants and antioxidants in favour of the former ones, leading to different responses depending on the level of pro-oxidants and the duration of the exposure. In this article, we discuss the damaging or cytoprotective signaling mechanisms associated with oxidative stress by addressing (1) the role of prolonged and severe oxidative stress and insulin resistance as determinant factors in the pathogenesis of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease associated with obesity, which, with the concurrence of nutritional factors, may determine the onset of fatty liver and its progression to steatohepatitis; and (2) the development of an acute and mild pro-oxidant state by thyroid hormone administration, which elicits the redox up-regulation of the expression of proteins affording cell protection, as a preconditioning strategy against ischemia-reperfusion liver injury.

Key words: Oxidative stress; Obesity; Insulin resistance; Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; Thyroid hormone; Liver preconditioning

Peer reviewer: Shivendra Shukla, Professor, Department of Medical Pharmacology and Physiology, University of Missouri School of Medicine, 1 Hospital Drive, M530 Medical Sciences Bldg., Columbia, MO 65212, United States

Videla LA. Oxidative stress signaling underlying liver disease and hepatoprotective mechanisms. *World J Hepatol* 2009; 1(1): 72-78 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v1/i1/72.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.72

INTRODUCTION

Oxidative stress is a redox disequilibrium in which the pro-oxidant/antioxidant balance is shifted in favour of the pro-oxidants[1], a phenomenon related to the aerobic nature of cellular metabolism, in which O_2 reduction is a major event. The latter proceeds through electron transfer reactions due to the electronic structure of O_2 in the ground state, with generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS), including (1) primary oxidants [superoxide radical ($O_2^{\bullet -}$), hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2), and hydroxyl radical ($HO^{\bullet}$)]; and (2) secondary oxidants [hydroperoxides or alkoxy and peroxy radicals of biomolecules, in addition to electronically excited states derived from free-radical reactions (singlet oxygen, triplet carbonyls)][2]. The detoxication of ROS is a major prerequisite of aerobic life[1], which is accomplished *via* several enzymatic and non-enzymatic antioxidant mechanisms that are available in different cell compartments[1,3]. Secondary mechanisms, restoring used cofactors and repairing altered biomolecules, are also required, in addition to those triggering the expression of proteins damaged by ROS or needed to attain cell survival[1,3,4]. These mechanisms need to be coupled to the intermediary metabolism for ATP, NADPH, and precursors supply, and depend on the dietary replenishment of essential components to maintain pro-oxidant reactions and cellular damage at a minimum level under basal conditions.

At the cellular level, oxidative stress leads to a wide

spectrum of responses, depending on the cell type, the level of ROS achieved, and the duration of the exposure[4-6]. The moderate increase in ROS and reactive nitrogen species (RNS) in a defined time window can elicit an imbalance capable of redox regulation, as found for L-3,3',5-triiodothyronine (T_3)-induced oxidative stress[7], involving important signals regulating either protein function, *via* reversible oxidation or nitrosation of protein sulfhydryls, and/or gene expression, through modulation of specific kinases, phosphatases, and redox-sensitive transcription factors[4-6]. However, in the case of organs subjected to ischemia-reperfusion (IR)[8] or in obesity[9] and other chronic states, large levels of ROS are attained, which may induce severe oxidation of biomolecules and dysregulation of signal transduction and gene expression, leading to cell death through necrotic and/or apoptotic mechanisms[4].

In this review article, the damaging or cytoprotective signaling mechanisms associated with oxidative stress are addressed. In particular, I will discuss (1) the role of oxidative stress and insulin resistance as contributing factors in the pathogenesis of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) in obese patients, which, with the concurrence of nutritional factors, may determine the onset of fatty liver and its progression to steatohepatitis; and (2) the implications of the redox regulation of T_3-induced gene expression as a preconditioning mechanism against IR liver injury.

OXIDATIVE STRESS SIGNALING UNDERLYING OBESITY-ASSOCIATED NAFLD

The onset of oxidative stress, insulin resistance, and steatosis in obese NAFLD patients

NAFLD is a rapidly growing entity that is becoming a major cause of chronic liver disease, due to the increasing incidence of obesity and type 2 diabetes in the general population. NAFLD includes simple triacylglycerol (TAG) accumulation in hepatocytes (hepatic steatosis) or steatosis with inflammation, fibrosis, and cirrhosis (non-alcoholic steatohepatitis, NASH), with oxidative stress, insulin resistance, and nutritional factors playing major contributing roles[10,11].

Under most circumstances, fatty acids (FA) are the major oxidative fuel in the liver. However, carbohydrate and lipid affluence induce significant changes in hepatic intermediary metabolism. In fact, high glucose and insulin levels stimulate FA synthesis from glucose and inhibit FA β-oxidation, re-directing FA towards the formation of TAG[9]. Considering that the amount of TAG exported as VLDL depends on synthesis of the protein components, FA in excess are likely to be converted to TAG and stored as lipid droplets within hepatocytes, upon consumption of calorie-enriched diets. Since non-adipose tissues have limited capacity for TAG storage, the lipids in excess that accumulate under conditions of overnutrition determine high intracellular levels of saturated FA, which can induce cell dysfunction and/or cell death, a phenomenon known as lipotoxicity[12]. Consequently, higher rates of FA oxidation and ROS generation are achieved, which might explain the increase in the oxidative stress-related parameters and antioxidant depletion found in the liver of obese patients with NAFLD (Figure 1)[9,13]. Furthermore, prolonged oxidative stress may favour: (1) liver *n-3* LCPUFA depletion, which may be compounded by dietary imbalance and defective desaturation activity[14,15]; and (2) insulin resistance, in association with the redox activation of multiple stress-sensitive serine/threonine kinases that alters insulin signaling (Figure 1)[16]. The latter phenomenon is a membrane-mediated process that might be also compromised by *n-3* LCPUFA depletion, due to loss of membrane polyunsaturation. Both IR and liver *n-3* LCPUFA depletion can determine hepatic steatosis by different mechanisms, namely, (1) insulin resistance-dependent higher peripheral mobilization of FA and glycerol to the liver; and (2) *n-3* LCPUFA depletion-induced changes in the DNA-binding activity of the peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-α (PPAR-α) as well as of the sterol regulatory element binding protein-1c (SREBP-1c), determining a metabolic imbalance between FA oxidation and lipogenesis in favour of the latter (Figure 1). This notion is based on the findings that *n-3* LCPUFA are signaling biomolecules regulating hepatic lipid metabolism through (1) down-regulation

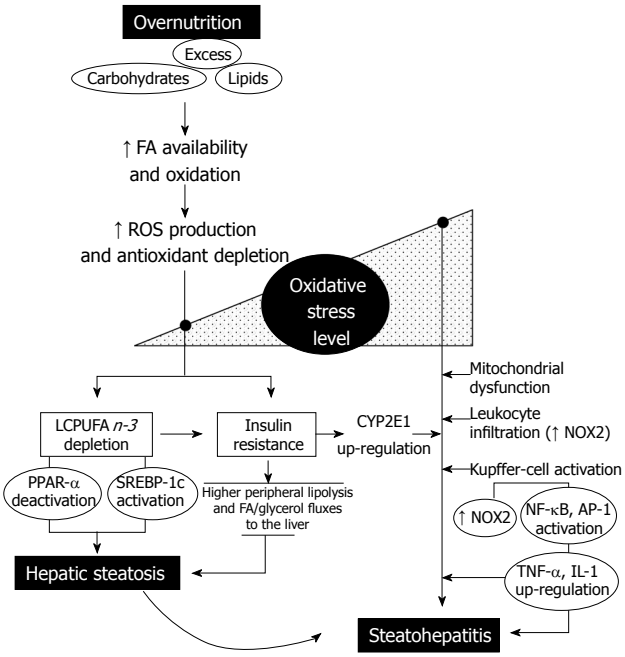


Figure 1 Interrelationships between the level of oxidative stress and insulin resistance, leading to hepatic steatosis and its progression to steatohepatitis, associated with overnutrition. AP-1: Activating protein 1; CYP2E1: Ethanol inducible form of cytochrome P450; FA: Fatty acids; IL-1: Interleukin-1; LCPUFA; Long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids; NF-κB: Nuclear factor-κB; NOX2: NADPH oxidase in phagocytic cells; PPAR-α: Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-α; ROS: Reactive oxygen species; SREBP-1c: Sterol regulatory element binding protein-1c; TNF-α: Tumor necrosis factor-α.

of the expression of SREBP-1c and its processing, with inhibition of the transcription of lipogenic and glycolytic genes; and (2) up-regulation of the expression of genes encoding enzymes of the oxidation of FA, which act as ligands of PPAR-α[17].

Exacerbation of hepatic oxidative stress and progression from steatosis to steatohepatitis

Changes in liver oxidative stress-related parameters observed in obese patients with steatosis persist in those with steatohepatitis[9,13]. In steatohepatitis, these features are observed concomitantly with (1) low catalase activity[13]; (2) high immunohistochemical reactivity to 8-hydroxydeoxyguanosine and 4-hydroxy-2-nonenal, as markers of oxidative DNA damage and lipid peroxidation, respectively[18]; (3) a further increment of both 3-nitrotyrosine immunoreactivity and production of $O_2^{\bullet-}$ and malondialdehyde by Kupffer cells; (4) induction of inducible nitric oxide synthase; and (5) up-regulation of cytochrome P450 2E1 (CYP2E1), as shown by the higher CYP2E1 protein expression and *in vivo* chlorzoxazone hydroxylation, an indicator of CYP2E1 activity (Figure 1) (for specific references see[9]).

The exacerbation of the oxidative stress status of the liver in cases of steatohepatitis, compared to livers with steatosis alone, seems to involve several mechanisms (Figure 1). First, induction of liver CYP2E1[13,19] is of particular importance in the pathogenesis of NASH, due to its poor coupling with NADPH-cytochrome P450 reductase, with substantial NADPH oxidase activity, leading to $O_2^{\bullet-}$, H_2O_2, and consequent lipid peroxidation[20]. Second, hepatic mitochondrial dysfunction is an alternate contributing factor to the genesis of lesions in steatohepatitis, considering the lower levels of mitochondrial DNA and the decreased expression of mitochondrial DNA-encoded proteins, which might lead to reduced activity of respiratory complexes Ⅰ, Ⅲ, and Ⅳ, and ATP synthase complex Ⅴ, thus increasing $O_2^{\bullet-}$ and H_2O_2 generation[10]. Third, mixed inflammatory-cell infiltration is a characteristic feature of NASH, including mononuclear cells, polymorphonuclear cells, or both[10], which may represent an additional mechanism of ROS generation, due to the expression and activation of NADPH oxidase (NOX2), an enzyme that produces large amounts of $O_2^{\bullet-}$ and H_2O_2[21]. NOX2 is also expressed in Kupffer cells, which, in patients with steatohepatitis, produce $O_2^{\bullet-}$ at rates that are 20-fold higher than normal, in agreement with the 7-fold increase in malondialdehyde levels in Kupffer cells from steatohepatitis patients[22]. Under these conditions, the oxidative stress status of the liver achieved in steatohepatitis might promote hepatocellular damage by inducing (1) severe oxidative alteration of biomolecules, with loss of their functions and impairment of cell viability; and (2) sustained activation of redox-sensitive transcription factors, such as NF-κB and AP-1, with consequent up-regulation of the expression of pro-inflammatory mediators at the Kupffer cell level (Figure 1)[23].

Collectively, the discussed evidence supports the view of a functional interdependence between oxidative stress and insulin resistance (Figure 1). This may involve (1) initial ROS production due to lipotoxicity, related to the onset of insulin resistance in steatosis; and (2) a further increase in ROS generation due to CYP2E1 induction, mitochondrial dysfunction, and Kupffer cell or infiltrating leukocyte NOX2 activity, characterizing steatohepatitis. Dysregulation of pro-inflammatory cytokine, adipokine, and chemokine signaling in NAFLD may reinforce the initial mechanisms of ROS production and IR, representing key factors in the progression from steatosis to steatohepatitis, in the setting of oxidative stress-mediated hepatocyte sensitization[11,24]. In this context, antioxidants can act as insulin sensitizers by lowering ROS levels, a condition that might abrogate free-radical-mediated activation of signaling serine/threonine kinases and damage to biomolecules, as shown in cell-culture studies[25]. However, these findings remain to be confirmed in obese patients with NAFLD.

OXIDATIVE STRESS SIGNALING UNDERLYING THYROID HORMONE LIVER PRECONDITIONING

Mechanisms in thyroid hormone calorigenesis and liver oxidative stress

Thyroid hormones play important roles in cell growth, differentiation, and metabolism, through different and complex mechanisms of action. In mammals, major effects are exerted on cellular oxygen consumption (QO_2) and metabolic rate, leading to stimulation and maintenance of basal thermogenesis[26,27]. This action of T_3 is carried out *via* thyroid hormone receptors expressed in almost all tissues. These receptors are recognized by specific thyroid hormone response elements across the DNA, leading to ligand-dependent upregulation of the expression of respiratory, metabolic, and uncoupling protein genes (Figure 2A)[28]. In addition to the above classical genomic model of T_3-dependent calorigenesis, non-genomic mechanisms may also contribute to increase cellular QO_2[29], with the consequent increase of the mitochondrial capacity for oxidative phosphorylation and ROS generation[30].

In addition to T_3-induced liver mitochondrial capacity for ROS production, the induction of other enzymatic mechanisms also occurs, namely, (1) higher activity of microsomal NADPH-cytochrome P450 reductase[31] and NADPH oxidase[32], the latter representing the oxidase activity of cytochrome P450 responsible for the $O_2^{\bullet-}$ and H_2O_2 production related to the T_3-mediated induction of the highly pro-oxidant cytochrome P4502E1 isoform[33]; (2) enhancement of cytosolic enzymatic mechanisms, such as the $O_2^{\bullet-}/H_2O_2$ generator xanthine oxidase[34] and ROS production, possibly coupled to enhanced FA β-oxidation due to liver peroxisomal proliferation[30]; and (3) Kupffer-cell activation with increased respiratory

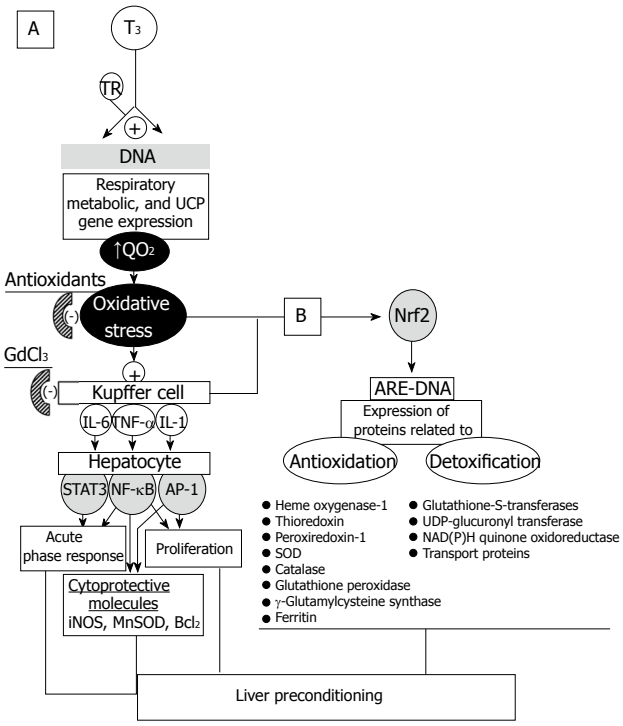


Figure 2 Oxidative stress signaling in thyroid hormone (T3) liver preconditioning as mediated by redox-sensitive transcriptional factors NF-κB, AP-1, and STAT3 (A) or Nrf2 (B). AP-1: Activating protein 1; ARE: Antioxidant responsive element; GdCl3: Gadolinium chloride; IL: Interleukin; iNOS: Inducible nitric oxide synthase; MnSOD: Manganese superoxide dismutase; NF-κB: Nuclear factor-κB; Nrf2: Nuclear factor-erythroid 2-related factor 2; QO2: Rate of oxygen consumption; TNF-α: Tumor necrosis factor-α; STAT3: Signal transducer and activator of transcription 3; TR: Thyroid hormone receptor; UCP: Uncoupling protein.

burst activity, due to NADPH oxidase[35].

T_3-induced liver free-radical activity is associated with depletion of antioxidant defences, leading to increased oxidative stress of the liver (Figure 2A)[7,28,36]. However, this pro-oxidant state achieved in the liver by T_3-induced calorigenesis can be considered as a mild redox alteration, as suggested by the lack of occurrence of morphological changes in liver parenchyma, except for the significant hyperplasia and hypertrophy of Kupffer cells[35], the resident macrophages of the liver[37]. The latter effect of T_3 might be of importance considering that Kupffer cells play a central role in the homeostatic response to liver injury, through the production and release of a wide array of mediators that provide physiologically diverse and key paracrine effects on all other liver cells[37,38].

T_3-induced Kupffer cell-dependent up-regulation of cytokine expression and hepatocyte proteins related to antioxidation, anti-apoptosis, acute-phase response, and cell proliferation

Kupffer cell hyperplasia is a major finding after *in vivo* T_3 administration, an effect that may involve the expansion of Kupffer cell precursors by means of circulating monocyte recruitment, the differentiation of pre-existing local Kupffer cell precursors into mature liver macrophages, or both[39]. Under these conditions, assessment of Kupffer cell function revealed a significant increase in the rate of carbon phagocytosis and the associated carbon-induced O_2 uptake, representing the respiratory burst activity of Kupffer cells, a process that is largely dependent on the activity of the ROS-generator NADPH oxidase and abolished by pretreatment with the Kupffer cell inactivator gadolinium chloride ($GdCl_3$) (Figure 2A)[35].

The interdependence between T_3-induced calorigenesis, liver QO_2, and ROS production is associated with a significant increase in the hepatic DNA binding of the transcription factors NF-κB[40], STAT3[41], and AP-1[42] (Figure 2A). Activation of these transcription factors by T_3 administration is suppressed by *in vivo* pretreatment with $GdCl_3$, whereas NF-κB and STAT3 activation by T_3 is also abolished by pretreatment with antioxidants[40,41], thus supporting the view that T_3 induces the redox activation of hepatic NF-κB, STAT3, and AP-1 by actions primarily exerted at the Kupffer cell level (Figure 2A). T_3 administration involving significant NF-κB and AP-1 activation induced mRNA expression of the NF-κB/AP-1-responsive genes for TNF-α, with increased serum levels of the cytokine[40] that are abolished by pretreatment with the antisense oligonucleotide TJU-2755, targeting the primary RNA transcript of TNF-α[43]. T_3 also elicited an increase in the serum levels of IL-6[41] and in the hepatic mRNA expression and serum levels of IL-1[40]. In addition to NF-κB and AP-1 activation, the enhancement in STAT3 DNA binding by T_3 administration[41] may be associated with the proliferation of macrophage precursors and their differentiation into Kupffer cells[39], considering the central role of STAT3 in gp130-mediated cell growth, differentiation, and survival[44].

The effects of cytokines released from Kupffer cells are exerted through their interaction with specific surface receptors of liver target cells, mediating the signaling transduction from the cell membrane to the nucleus[37]. In agreement with the above view, the transient TNF-α response elicited by T_3 administration correlates with the substantial increase in liver IκB-α phosphorylation[45,46], leading to the activation of the IKK complex that in turn activates NF-κB, after coupling with the TNF-α receptor and associating with different adaptor proteins[47]. T_3-induced TNF-α response, liver IKK phosphorylation, and NF-κB activation are abolished by pretreatment with either α-tocopherol or $GdCl_3$, supporting the role of ROS production and Kupffer-cell activation in T_3-dependent signaling leading to up-regulation of hepatic gene expression[45,46]. This is shown by the increased expression of the NF-κB-responsive genes encoding for inducible NOS (iNOS)[45], manganese superoxide dismutase (MnSOD), and the anti-apoptotic protein Bcl-2[46] (Figure 2A). Thus, T_3 administration elicits the redox up-regulation of iNOS, MnSOD, and Bcl-2 in the liver, in association with the Kupffer cell-dependent release of TNF-α and activation of the IKK/NF-κB cascade, representing antioxidant and anti-apoptotic responses triggered by the underlying oxidative stress (Figure 2A).

In addition to the above responses, T_3 administration up-regulate the acute-phase response (APR) of the liver and the hepatocyte proliferation. The APR is a major pathophysiologic reaction in which normal homeostatic mechanisms are replaced by new set-points, contributing to defensive or adaptive capabilities against inflammation and oxidative stress[48,49]. In fact, T_3 induced the Kupffer-cell-dependent release of IL-6 and activation of hepatic STAT3 controlling both type I (haptoglobin) and type Ⅱ (β-fibrinogen) acute-phase protein (APP) genes[41]. In addition, this response may be contributed by the T_3-induced TNF-α/IKK/NF-κB pathway[45,46], which controls type I APP genes, considering that NF-κB activation can synergistically enhance the effects of STAT3 and C/EBPβ upon C-reactive protein induction[50]. Furthermore, the *in vivo* effects of T_3 as a primary hepatic mitogen, leading to hepatocyte proliferation in intact liver, are well established (Figure 2A)[42]. This process involves a large number of genes and requires the concurrence of cytokines, growth factors and metabolic networks[51]. Resting hepatocytes, i.e. in the G0 phase of the cell cycle, need to be primed by TNF-α and IL-6 before they can respond to growth factors, with the concomitant activation of NF-κB, STAT3, AP-1, and E/EBPβ, enter the G1 phase and initiate cell cycle progression. T_3 administration has been associated with increased liver cyclin-dependent kinase 2 expression and hepatocyte proliferation, as shown by the increase of Ki-67, a nuclear cell proliferation-associated protein expressed in all active parts of the cell cycle, and of the proliferating cell nuclear antigen (PCNA)[42].

Collectively, data reported by our group indicate that T_3 triggers cytoprotection in the liver through redox- and Kupffer cell-dependent signaling mechanisms, namely, (1) antioxidant responses (iNOS, MnSOD); (2) anti-apoptosis (Bcl-2); (3) immune, transport, and antioxidant (haptoglobin, ceruloplasmin, ferritin) functions fulfilled by APR induction; and (4) hepatocyte proliferation (Figure 2A), the metabolic demands of which being met by acceleration of energy metabolism due to T_3-induced calorigenesis[7,28,52].

Thyroid hormone-induced liver preconditioning

Organ preconditioning, including that involving the liver, consists in strategies protecting the organ from detrimental effects of subsequent noxious events, such as those underlying chemically-induced injury or IR[8,53]. In general terms, IR injury refers to tissue damage produced by blood perfusion to a previously ischemic organ. In the case of the liver, this occurs in the clinical settings of hepatic resection, transplantation, low-blood pressure states, and abdominal surgery requiring hepatic vascular occlusion. IR liver injury assessed in a model involving 1 h of partial ischemia, as induced by vascular clamping, and followed by reperfusion for 20 h, elicited minimal mortality but substantial liver damage, with increased serum transaminase and TNF-α levels as well as metabolic changes, namely, (1) a drastic increase in the oxidative stress status of the liver; (2) loss in the DNA binding of NF-κB and STAT3, implying loss of cytoprotective potential, as shown by the concomitant diminution in the expression of the APR protein haptoglobin, controlled by both these transcription factors; and (3) increase of the hepatic AP-1 DNA binding activity, which may constitute a major determinant of hepatotoxicity under conditions of reduced NF-κB activation and TNF-α response[54,55]. These changes were normalized by T_3 treatment given 48 h before the IR protocol, a preconditioning effect that was sensitive to the antioxidant N-acetylcysteine given prior to T_3[55], with enhanced hepatocyte proliferation compensating for liver cells lost due to IR-induced hepatocellular necrosis[42].

In conclusion, the data discussed above indicate that redox regulation of gene transcription by T_3 involves antioxidant-sensitive NF-κB, AP-1, and STAT3 activation and up-regulation of the expression of cytoprotective proteins affording liver preconditioning (Figure 2A)[52]. T_3 liver preconditioning may also involve the activation of the Nrf2-Keap1 defense pathway, up-regulating antioxidant proteins and phase-2 detoxifying enzymes (Figure 2B)[56], which is currently under study in our laboratory.

CONCLUSION

Data analyzed indicate that development of extreme levels of oxidative stress in the liver determines opposite cellular responses, depending on the period of exposure to ROS. Development of a progressive and severe pro-oxidant state in the liver of obese patients with NAFLD is associated with the onset of steatosis and its progression to steatohepatitis, as a chronic model of nutritional oxidative stress. The molecular pathogenesis of NAFLD in obese patients seems to be multifactorial, with oxidative stress and insulin resistance as major pathophysiological mechanisms, which may be interdependent[24]. Considering the lack of an effective drug therapy for NAFLD at present[10], further studies of potentially attractive therapeutic targets are required. These may include the expression and activation status of metabolic (PPAR-α and SREBP-1c) and pro-inflammatory (NF-κB and AP-1) transcription factors, and the activity of enzymes associated with insulin resistance, such as serine/threonine stress kinases and protein tyrosine phosphatases, which will undoubtedly contribute to understand the role of chronic and progressive oxidative stress and insulin resistance in determining steatosis and its progression to NASH. It is now increasingly accepted that bariatric surgery is the most effective method of achieving long-term weight control for patients with morbid obesity[10], with the consequent improvement of the key features of NAFLD and NASH. Thus, weight loss, as a central therapeutic measure, might be combined with antioxidants, in order to minimize or prevent the onset of oxidative stress-induced inflammatory response and insulin resistance, and/or *n-3* LCPUFA, to improve the efficiency of signaling cascades related to

hepatic lipid metabolism and insulin resistance.

Following acute T_3 administration, induction of a mild pro-oxidant state within a time window of 48 h triggers liver preconditioning[54]. This preconditioning strategy has clinical potential, considering that (1) pharmacological and other liver preconditioning maneuvers have not been transferred to clinical applications[53]; and that (2) T_3 is an endobiotic substance, and a widely used and well-tolerated therapeutic agent, which, at low doses, has either no significant or minimal adverse effects that can be readily controlled. However, prevention of IR injury in humans during liver surgery and liver transplantation, using reduced-size grafts from living donors, awaits further experimental and clinical studies.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The author wishes to thank Drs. V Fernández, G Tapia, P Varela, P Romanque, P Cornejo, R Rodrigo, J Araya, and J Poniachik for valuable discussion, and whose contributions are cited in this review article.

REFERENCES

1 **Sies H**. Biochemistry of oxidative stress. *Angew Chem Int Ed Engl* 1986; **25**: 1058-1071
2 **Videla LA**, Fernandez V. Biochemical aspects of cellular oxidative stress. *Arch Biol Med Exp* (Santiago) 1988; **21**: 85-92
3 **Fernandez V**, Videla LA. Biochemical aspects of cellular antioxidant systems. *Biol Res* 1996; **29**: 177-182
4 **Droge W**. Free radicals in the physiological control of cell function. *Physiol Rev* 2002; **82**: 47-95
5 **Martindale JL**, Holbrook NJ. Cellular response to oxidative stress: signaling for suicide and survival. *J Cell Physiol* 2002; **192**: 1-15
6 **Poli G**, Leonarduzzi G, Biasi F, Chiarpotto E. Oxidative stress and cell signalling. *Curr Med Chem* 2004; **11**: 1163-1182
7 **Varela P**, Tapia G, Fernandez V, Videla LA. The role of thyroid hormone calorigenesis in the redox regulation of gene expression. *Biol Res* 2006; **39**: 611-617
8 **Romanque UP**, Uribe M M, Videla LA. [Molecular mechanisms in liver ischemic-reperfusion injury and ischemic preconditioning] *Rev Med Chil* 2005; **133**: 469-476
9 **Videla LA**. Oxidative stress and insulin resistance as interdependent pathogenic mechanisms in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease associated with obesity. In: Alvarez S, Evelson P, editors. Free Radical Pathophysiology. Kerala, India: Transworld Research Network, 2008: 369-385
10 **Angulo P**. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *N Engl J Med* 2002; **346**: 1221-1231
11 **Videla LA**, Rodrigo R, Araya J, Poniachik J. Oxidative stress and depletion of hepatic long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids may contribute to nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2004; **37**: 1499-1507
12 **Aronis A**, Madar Z, Tirosh O. Mechanism underlying oxidative stress-mediated lipotoxicity: exposure of J774.2 macrophages to triacylglycerols facilitates mitochondrial reactive oxygen species production and cellular necrosis. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2005; **38**: 1221-1230
13 **Videla LA**, Rodrigo R, Orellana M, Fernandez V, Tapia G, Quinones L, Varela N, Contreras J, Lazarte R, Csendes A, Rojas J, Maluenda F, Burdiles P, Diaz JC, Smok G, Thielemann L, Poniachik J. Oxidative stress-related parameters in the liver of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease patients. *Clin Sci* (Lond) 2004; **106**: 261-268
14 **Araya J**, Rodrigo R, Videla LA, Thielemann L, Orellana M, Pettinelli P, Poniachik J. Increase in long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acid n - 6/n - 3 ratio in relation to hepatic steatosis in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Clin Sci* (Lond) 2004; **106**: 635-643
15 **Elizondo A**, Araya J, Rodrigo R, Signorini C, Sgherri C, Comporti M, Poniachik J, Videla LA. Effects of weight loss on liver and erythrocyte polyunsaturated fatty acid pattern and oxidative stress status in obese patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Biol Res* 2008; **41**: 59-68
16 **Evans JL**, Maddux BA, Goldfine ID. The molecular basis for oxidative stress-induced insulin resistance. *Antioxid Redox Signal* 2005; **7**: 1040-1052
17 **Clarke SD**. The multi-dimensional regulation of gene expression by fatty acids: polyunsaturated fats as nutrient sensors. *Curr Opin Lipidol* 2004; **15**: 13-18
18 **Seki S**, Kitada T, Yamada T, Sakaguchi H, Nakatani K, Wakasa K. In situ detection of lipid peroxidation and oxidative DNA damage in non-alcoholic fatty liver diseases. *J Hepatol* 2002; **37**: 56-62
19 **Orellana M**, Rodrigo R, Varela N, Araya J, Poniachik J, Csendes A, Smok G, Videla LA. Relationship between in vivo chlorzoxazone hydroxylation, hepatic cytochrome P450 2E1 content and liver injury in obese non-alcoholic fatty liver disease patients. *Hepatol Res* 2006; **34**: 57-63
20 **Caro AA**, Cederbaum AI. Oxidative stress, toxicology, and pharmacology of CYP2E1. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol* 2004; **44**: 27-42
21 **Babior BM**. NADPH oxidase. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2004; **16**: 42-47
22 **Malaguarnera L**, Di Rosa M, Zambito AM, dell'Ombra N, Nicoletti F, Malaguarnera M. Chitotriosidase gene expression in Kupffer cells from patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Gut* 2006; **55**: 1313-1320
23 **Videla LA**, Tapia G, Rodrigo R, Pettinelli P, Haim D, Santibanez C, Araya AV, Smok G, Csendes A, Gutierrez L, Rojas J, Castillo J, Korn O, Maluenda F, Diaz JC, Rencoret G, Poniachik J. Liver NF-kappaB and AP-1 DNA binding in obese patients. *Obesity* (Silver Spring) 2009; **17**: 973-979
24 **Videla LA**, Rodrigo R, Araya J, Poniachik J. Insulin resistance and oxidative stress interdependency in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Trends Mol Med* 2006; **12**: 555-558
25 **Houstis N**, Rosen ED, Lander ES. Reactive oxygen species have a causal role in multiple forms of insulin resistance. *Nature* 2006; **440**: 944-948
26 **Schwartz HL**, Oppenheimer JH. Physiologic and biochemical actions of thyroid hormone. *Pharmacol Ther B* 1978; **3**: 349-376
27 **Yen PM**. Physiological and molecular basis of thyroid hormone action. *Physiol Rev* 2001; **81**: 1097-1142
28 **Videla LA**, Fernandez V, Tapia G, Varela P. Thyroid hormone calorigenesis and mitochondrial redox signaling: upregulation of gene expression. *Front Biosci* 2007; **12**: 1220-1228
29 **Moreno M**, Lombardi A, Beneduce L, Silvestri E, Pinna G, Goglia F, Lanni A. Are the effects of T3 on resting metabolic rate in euthyroid rats entirely caused by T3 itself? *Endocrinology* 2002; **143**: 504-510
30 **Fernandez V**, Videla LA. Influence of hyperthyroidism on superoxide radical and hydrogen peroxide production by rat liver submitochondrial particles. *Free Radic Res Commun* 1993; **18**: 329-335
31 **Ram PA**, Waxman DJ. Thyroid hormone stimulation of NADPH P450 reductase expression in liver and extrahepatic tissues. Regulation by multiple mechanisms. *J Biol Chem* 1992; **267**: 3294-3301
32 **Fernandez V**, Barrientos X, Kipreos K, Valenzuela A, Videla LA. Superoxide radical generation, NADPH oxidase activity, and cytochrome P-450 content of rat liver microsomal fractions in an experimental hyperthyroid state: relation to lipid peroxidation. *Endocrinology* 1985; **117**: 496-501

33 **Fernandez V**, Massa L, Quinones L, Simon-Giavarotti KA, Giavarotti L, D'Almeida V, Azzalis LA, Junqueira VB, Videla LA. Effects of gamma-hexachlorocyclohexane and L-3,3',5-triiodothyronine on rat liver cytochrome P4502E1-dependent activity and content in relation to microsomal superoxide radical generation. *Biol Res* 2003; **36**: 359-365

34 **Huh K**, Kwon TH, Kim JS, Park JM. Role of the hepatic xanthine oxidase in thyroid dysfunction: effect of thyroid hormones in oxidative stress in rat liver. *Arch Pharm Res* 1998; **21**: 236-240

35 **Tapia G**, Pepper I, Smok G, Videla LA. Kupffer cell function in thyroid hormone-induced liver oxidative stress in the rat. *Free Radic Res* 1997; **26**: 267-279

36 **Venditti P**, Di Meo S. Thyroid hormone-induced oxidative stress. *Cell Mol Life Sci* 2006; **63**: 414-434

37 **Tsukamoto H**. Redox regulation of cytokine expression in Kupffer cells. *Antioxid Redox Signal* 2002; **4**: 741-748

38 **Bilzer M**, Roggel F, Gerbes AL. Role of Kupffer cells in host defense and liver disease. *Liver Int* 2006; **26**: 1175-1186

39 **Gomes LF**, Lorente S, Simon-Giavarotti KA, Areco KN, Araujo-Peres C, Videla LA. Tri-iodothyronine differentially induces Kupffer cell ED1/ED2 subpopulations. *Mol Aspects Med* 2004; **25**: 183-190

40 **Tapia G**, Fernandez V, Varela P, Cornejo P, Guerrero J, Videla LA. Thyroid hormone-induced oxidative stress triggers nuclear factor-kappaB activation and cytokine gene expression in rat liver. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2003; **35**: 257-265

41 **Tapia G**, Fernandez V, Pino C, Ardiles R, Videla LA. The acute-phase response of the liver in relation to thyroid hormone-induced redox signaling. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2006; **40**: 1628-1635

42 **Fernandez V**, Reyes S, Bravo S, Sepulveda R, Romanque P, Santander G, Castillo I, Varela P, Tapia G, Videla LA. Involvement of Kupffer cell-dependent signaling in T3-induced hepatocyte proliferation in vivo. *Biol Chem* 2007; **388**: 831-837

43 **Fernandez V**, Videla LA, Tapia G, Israel Y. Increases in tumor necrosis factor-alpha in response to thyroid hormone-induced liver oxidative stress in the rat. *Free Radic Res* 2002; **36**: 719-725

44 **Hirano T**, Ishihara K, Hibi M. Roles of STAT3 in mediating the cell growth, differentiation and survival signals relayed through the IL-6 family of cytokine receptors. *Oncogene* 2000; **19**: 2548-2556

45 **Fernandez V**, Tapia G, Varela P, Videla LA. Redox regulation of thyroid hormone-induced Kupffer cell-dependent IkappaB-alpha phosphorylation in relation to inducible nitric oxide synthase expression. *Free Radic Res* 2005; **39**: 411-418

46 **Fernandez V**, Tapia G, Varela P, Castillo I, Mora C, Moya F, Orellana M, Videla LA. Redox up-regulated expression of rat liver manganese superoxide dismutase and Bcl-2 by thyroid hormone is associated with inhibitor of kappaB-alpha phosphorylation and nuclear factor-kappaB activation. *J Endocrinol* 2005; **186**: 539-547

47 **Gloire G**, Legrand-Poels S, Piette J. NF-kappaB activation by reactive oxygen species: fifteen years later. *Biochem Pharmacol* 2006; **72**: 1493-1505

48 **Ramadori G**, Christ B. Cytokines and the hepatic acute-phase response. *Semin Liver Dis* 1999; **19**: 141-155

49 **Gruys E**, Toussaint MJM, Niewold TA, Koopmans SJ. Acute phase reaction and acute phase proteins. *J Zhejiang Univ SCI* 2005; **6B**: 1045-1056

50 **Agrawal A**, Cha-Molstad H, Samols D, Kushner I. Overexpressed nuclear factor-kappaB can participate in endogenous C-reactive protein induction, and enhances the effects of C/EBPbeta and signal transducer and activator of transcription-3. *Immunology* 2003; **108**: 539-547

51 **Fausto N**, Campbell JS, Riehle KJ. Liver regeneration. *Hepatology* 2006; **43**: S45-S53

52 **Fernández V**, Videla LA. Kupffer cell-dependent signaling in thyroid hormone calorigenesis: possible applications for liver preconditioning. *Curr Signal Trans Ther* 2009; **4**: 144-141

53 **Casillas-Ramirez A**, Mosbah IB, Ramalho F, Rosello-Catafau J, Peralta C. Past and future approaches to ischemia-reperfusion lesion associated with liver transplantation. *Life Sci* 2006; **79**: 1881-1894

54 **Fernandez V**, Castillo I, Tapia G, Romanque P, Uribe-Echevarria S, Uribe M, Cartier-Ugarte D, Santander G, Vial MT, Videla LA. Thyroid hormone preconditioning: protection against ischemia-reperfusion liver injury in the rat. *Hepatology* 2007; **45**: 170-177

55 **Fernandez V**, Tapia G, Varela P, Gaete L, Vera G, Mora C, Vial MT, Videla LA. Causal role of oxidative stress in liver preconditioning by thyroid hormone in rats. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2008; **44**: 1724-1731

56 **Kobayashi M**, Yamamoto M. Molecular mechanisms activating the Nrf2-Keap1 pathway of antioxidant gene regulation. *Antioxid Redox Signal* 2005; **7**: 385-394

S- Editor Zhang HN **L- Editor** Negro F **E- Editor** Ma WH

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.79

World J Hepatol 2009 October 31; 1(1): 79-89
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Aggressive liver resection including major-vessel resection for colorectal liver metastases

Kuniya Tanaka, Ryusei Matsuyama, Kazuhisa Takeda, Kenichi Matsuo, Yasuhiko Nagano, Itaru Endo

Kuniya Tanaka, Ryusei Matsuyama, Kazuhisa Takeda, Kenichi Matsuo, Yasuhiko Nagano, Itaru Endo, Department of Gastroenterological Surgery, Yokohama City University Graduate School of Medicine, Yokohama 236-0004, Japan
Author contributions: Tanaka K designed the research; Tanaka K, Nagano Y, and Endo I performed the surgical intervention; Tanaka K, Matsuyama R, Takeda K, and Matsuo K analyzed the data and Tanaka K wrote the manuscript.
Correspondence to: Kuniya Tanaka, MD, Department of Gastroenterological Surgery, Yokohama City University Graduate School of Medicine, 3-9 Fukuura, Kanazawa-ku, Yokohama 236-0004, Japan. ktrj112@urahp.yokohama-cu.ac.jp
Telephone: +81-45-7872650 Fax: +81-45-7829161
Received: June 5, 2009 Revised: September 10, 2009
Accepted: September 17, 2009
Published online: October 31, 2009

Abstract

AIM: To clarify short- and long-term outcomes of combined resection of liver with major vessels in treating colorectal liver metastases.

METHODS: Clinicopathologic data were evaluated for 312 patients who underwent 371 liver resections for metastases from colorectal cancer. Twenty-five patients who underwent resection and reconstruction of retrohepatic vena cava, major hepatic veins, or hepatic venous confluence during hepatectomies were compared with other patients, who underwent conventional liver resections.

RESULTS: Morbidity was 20% (75/371) and mortality was 0.3% (1/312) in all patients after hepatectomy. Hepatic resection combined with major-vessel resection/reconstruction could be performed with acceptable morbidity (16%) and no mortality. By multivariate analysis, repeat liver resection (relative risk or RR, 5.690; $P = 0.0008$) was independently associated with resection/reconstruction of major vessels during hepatectomy, as were tumor size exceeding 30 mm (RR, 3.338; $P = 0.0292$) and prehepatectomy chemotherapy (RR, 3.485; $P = 0.0083$). When 312 patients who underwent a first liver resection for initial liver metastases were divided into those with conventional resection ($n = 296$) and those with combined resection of liver and major vessels ($n = 16$), overall survival and disease-free rates were significantly poorer in the combined resection group than in the conventional resection group ($P = 0.02$ and $P < 0.01$, respectively). A similar tendency concerning overall survival was observed for conventional resection ($n = 37$) *vs* major-vessel resection combined with liver resection ($n = 7$) performed as a second resection following liver recurrences ($P = 0.09$). Combined major-vessel resection at first hepatectomy (not performed; 0.512; $P = 0.0394$) and histologic major-vessel invasion at a second hepatectomy (negative; 0.057; $P = 0.0005$) were identified as independent factors affecting survival by multivariate analysis.

CONCLUSION: Hepatic resection including major-vessel resection/reconstruction for colorectal liver metastases can be performed with acceptable operative risk. However, such aggressive approaches are beneficial mainly in patients responding to effective prehepatectomy chemotherapy.

Key words: Liver metastases; Colorectal cancer; Liver resection; Major-vessel resection

Peer reviewer: Robert A Fisher, MD, HM Lee Professor of Surgery (tenured), Department of Surgery, Division of Transplant Surgery, Medical College of Virginia Hospitals, Virginia Commonwealth University, MCV Campus, VA 23298-0057, United States

Tanaka K, Matsuyama R, Takeda K, Matsuo K, Nagano Y, Endo I. Aggressive liver resection including major-vessel resection for colorectal liver metastases. *World J Hepatol* 2009; 1(1): 79-89 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v1/i1/79.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.79

INTRODUCTION

Liver resections can be performed with increasing safety for metastatic liver cancer as a result of improved techniques and perioperative care. Major technical complications and fatal liver failure after hepatic resection have become rare. Classically, most reported surgical experience has involved patients with a small number of metastatic lesions in a distribution confined to the hemiliver, but recent advances involving surgical techniques and perioperative care have extended indications for hepatectomy in treatment of colorectal cancer metastases. While extensive hepatectomy, multiple partial liver resections, or both often are necessary to curatively resect aggressive and advanced metastases in the liver, these strategies all involve considerable reduction of hepatic mass, which can lead to clinical decompensation including hepatic insufficiency. Curative resection therefore is not always possible in such patients, despite modern hepatic surgical techniques.

Planned 2-stage hepatectomy, portal vein embolization (PVE), and hepatectomy together with local ablation have been studied as effective ways to completely remove diffuse liver metastases from colorectal cancer[1-4] while preserving functional remnant liver volume and broadening indications for curative resection in these patients. Another strategy is hepatectomy combined with major blood vessel resection and reconstruction. Advanced liver metastases occasionally invade major blood vessels such as the inferior vena cava (IVC), major hepatic veins, or hepatic venous confluence. Complete removal of such tumors requires patients to undergo vascular resection and reconstruction. In the past, involvement of the IVC has been considered a contraindication to resection of advanced liver tumors, because surgical risks were high and long-term prognosis was poor. Presently, liver resection combined with IVC resection and reconstruction has been reported to be a feasible procedure that can be performed with acceptable operative risk and improved long-term outcome in selected patients[5]. However, no definite consensus on long-term survival benefit of such challenging procedures has yet been reached.

In the present study, we retrospectively analyzed patients treated at our institution to estimate efficacy of hepatectomy combined with major blood vessel resection and reconstruction.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patients

From April 1992 to March 2009, a total of 394 liver resections for colorectal liver metastases were performed for 334 patients at our Department of Gastroenterological Surgery, Yokohama City University Graduate School of Medicine. A second liver resection was performed in 45 patients with liver recurrence with or without extrahepatic metastases. A third hepatectomy for a second liver recurrence was performed in 11 patients; fourth hepatectomy for third recurrence in 3; and fifth hepatectomy for fourth recurrence in 1. Among the 394 resections, 23 (22 first resections, 1 s resection) were excluded either because curative hepatectomy could not be undertaken or concomitant extrahepatic tumor precluded R0 resection despite curative liver resection. Data from the remaining 312 patients with 371 liver resections were included in the analysis. The mean follow-up duration for these 312 patients after initial liver resection was 49 mo (median, 35; range, 1 to 221). Among these patients, resection and reconstruction of retrohepatic vena cava, major hepatic veins, or hepatic venous confluence was performed during hepatectomy in 25.

Preoperative staging

Preoperative staging included a physical examination, measurement of serum carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) and carbohydrate antigen (CA) 19-9, colonoscopy, barium enema, abdominal ultrasonography, abdominal computed tomography (CT), and chest imaging by routine chest radiography or CT. Imaging by positron-emission tomography was introduced for preoperative staging after 2002.

Hepatectomy procedures

Hepatectomy was not necessarily performed according to anatomic principles of resection; the guiding aim was assurance of tumor-free margins. To determine whether or not a hepatectomy procedure was acceptable for a given patient, we employed a prediction score (PS) introduced by Yamanaka *et al*[6] calculated using the formula; PS = -84.6 + 0.933a + 1.11b + 0.999c. The three variables designated by letter were; a, resection fraction (%) calculated from CT volumetry; b, indocyanine green retention rate at 15 min; c, patient age. A PS less than 50 indicated that a given hepatectomy would be acceptable. When a single-stage combined resection was precluded by insufficient estimated postoperative liver volume, excessive indocyanine green retention rate, or patient age considerations[6] a different strategy was adopted. In such cases PVE, 2-stage hepatectomy, or resection and reconstruction of major vessels during a hepatectomy planned to maximally preserve functional liver parenchyma was performed.

Resection and reconstruction of major vessels were performed as described below. When tumor involvement of the IVC was slight, control of the IVC during resection of the involved portion was achieved simply by placing a vascular clamp in a position tangential to the vena cava; a primary IVC repair then was performed with lateral venorrhaphy, taking care not to narrow the IVC excessively (Figure 1A). Larger resections of the IVC that could not be repaired primarily were reconstructed with synthetic (Figure 1B)[7] or autogenous grafts[8], using venovenous bypass with an active centrifugal force pump if necessary. When the tumor had infiltrated the proximal side of a major hepatic vein or the hepatic venous confluence entering the IVC but extent of tumor involvement of the vein was 2 cm or less,

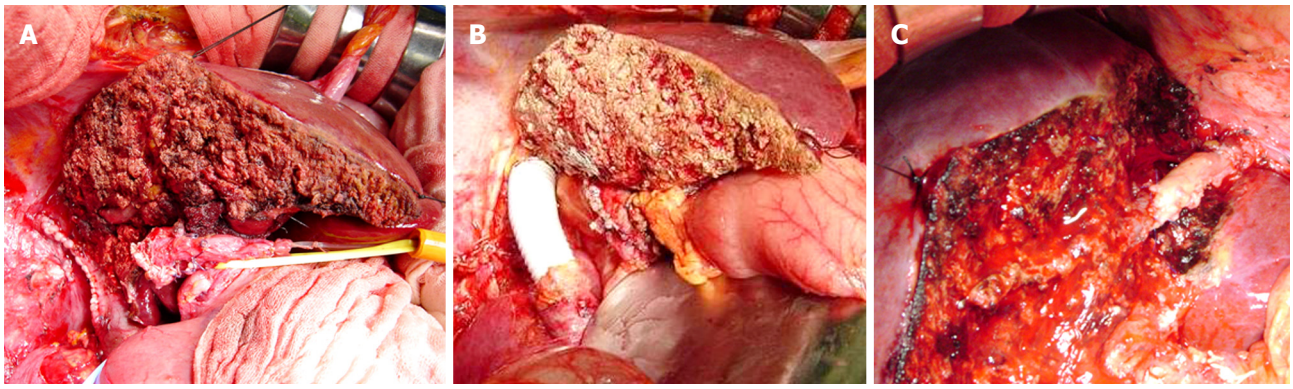


Figure 1 Combined resection of liver and major vessels. A: Extended right hemihepatectomy with resection of the hepatic vena cava repaired primarily; B: Extended right hemihepatectomy with reconstruction of the hepatic vena cava with a Gore-Tex graft; C: Left hemihepatectomy with resection of the middle hepatic venous confluence with the IVC reconstructed using a portal vein graft from the resected liver specimen.

end-to-end anastomosis was carried out. When resection exceeding 2 cm was needed, an autogenous graft of portal vein within resected liver parenchyma was normally used (Figure 1C).

Intraoperative ultrasonography was used to identify any occult tumors not detected preoperatively, and to confirm relationships between tumors and vasculobiliary structures. Parenchymal dissection was performed using ultrasonic dissectors. When necessary, the liver pedicle was clamped intermittently in cycles including 15 min of clamping and 5 min of reperfusion. The Brisbane 2000 terminology of the International Hepato-Pancreato-Biliary Association was used to categorize operative procedures[9].

Any extrahepatic metastases were resected whenever possible, as decided on a case-by-case basis. For resectable metastases in both liver and lung, liver resection and primary tumor resection were performed prior to pulmonary resection, aiming to eliminate the liver as a source of potentially disseminating neoplastic cells. When liver metastases were associated with extrahepatic intra-abdominal metastases, both were resected at the same time.

Principles underlying selection criteria for resection of recurrent hepatic metastases were the same as those for initial hepatectomy. Technical considerations predominated in surgical decisions regarding feasibility of repeat hepatic resection. Since quality and quantity of remaining hepatic parenchyma were highly important factors, patients were excluded from repeat hepatic resection when the PS was greater than 50[6].

Prehepatectomy chemotherapy

Some patients initially deemed to have unresectable liver involvement or patients with marginally resectable metastases (4 or more lesions distributed in 2 lobes; massive tumors; or unfavorably located tumors) underwent prehepatectomy chemotherapy. However, as the choice of treatment depended on several factors including initial assessment of resectability, treatment plans were made on a case-by-case basis. Treatment consisted of infusions into the hepatic artery (HAI) with a combination of 5-fluorouracil (5-FU), l-folinic acid (FA), and cisplatin (CDDP); systemic chemotherapy with 5-FU and FA with or without oxaliplatin or irinotecan; or a combination of both hepatic artery and systemic routes.

Adjuvant therapy

After resection for initial liver metastases, liver recurrence, or extrahepatic recurrence, adjuvant chemotherapy was carried out by HAI or intravenously, generally with 5-FU and FA and with or without addition of CDDP or irinotecan.

Postoperative complications

Among postoperative complications, hyperbilirubinemia was defined as a serum bilirubin concentration on postoperative day 7 of 3 mg/dL or greater. Biliary fistula was diagnosed when bile drainage from the abdominal wound or drain was apparent, with a total bilirubin concentration in the drainage fluid of more than 5 mg/mL or 3 times the serum concentration. Intra-abdominal abscess or liver stump abscess was confirmed by percutaneous drainage. Any medical problems that delayed postoperative recovery and prolonged hospital stay (e.g. ischemic heart disease) also were defined as postoperative morbidity.

Patient follow-up

Patients underwent monthly follow-up evaluation at our outpatient clinic. Data were obtained and recorded from each patient's clinical record. Long-term outcome was ascertained through clinical follow-up, tumor registry follow-up, and contact with the patient, family, or referring physician when necessary. No patients were lost to follow-up. Serum CEA was measured every month, CT was performed every 3 mo, and a chest roentgenogram was obtained every 6 mo for 5 years after the most recent operation.

Statistical analysis

Statistical comparisons of baseline data were performed

Table 1 Outcomes of patients undergoing major vessel resection/reconstruction

Patient No.	Resected vessel (s)	Reconstruction	No. of Hx	Age	Gender	Tumor distribution	No. of tumors	Maximum size (mm)	Resection margin	Outcome month	Status
1	IVC	Primary closure	1	72	F	Bilobar	2	42	Negative	45	DDT
2	IVC	Primary closure	1	70	M	Unilobar	2	15	Negative	67	DDT
3	IVC	Primary closure	1	61	M	Unilobar	1	33	Positive	12	DDT
4	IVC	Primary closure	1	64	M	Bilobar	5	58	Positive	39	DDT
5	IVC	Primary closure	1	70	F	Bilobar	3	75	Negative	33	DDT
6	IVC	Primary closure	1	54	M	Bilobar	27	75	Positive	4	DDT
7	IVC	Primary closure	1	61	F	Bilobar	6	110	Positive	37	DDT
8	IVC	Primary closure	1	72	M	Bilobar	5	20	Negative	11	DDT
9	IVC	Primary closure	1	69	F	Unilobar	1	35	Negative	34	NED
10	IVC	Primary closure	1	71	M	Unilobar	1	55	Positive	31	NED
11	IVC	Primary closure	1	68	F	Unilobar	2	74	Positive	4	NED
12	IVC	Graft replacement	1	70	F	Bilobar	6	63	Negative	16	AWD
13	IVC	Primary closure	2	73	M	Unilobar	1	40	Negative	125	DOD
14	IVC	Primary closure	2	47	F	Bilobar	4	38	Negative	75	DOD
15	IVC	Primary closure	2	65	M	Unilobar	1	42	Positive	38	DDT
16	IVC	Primary closure	2	61	M	Unilobar	1	29	Negative	22	DDT
17	IVC	Patch closure	2	53	F	Bilobar	3	40	Negative	59	DDT
18	IVC	Graft replacement	2	56	M	Unilobar	1	50	Negative	3	NED
19	IVC	Primary closure	3	57	F	Unilobar	1	36	Negative	25	DDT
20	IVC-LHV	Primary closure	3	54	F	Unilobar	1	23	Positive	45	DDT
21	MHV	Graft replacement	1	62	M	Bilobar	4	45	Positive	55	DDT
22	MHV	Graft replacement	1	60	M	Bilobar	2	56	Negative	52	AWD
23	MHV	Graft replacement	2	80	M	Unilobar	1	45	Negative	13	DDT
24	RHV	End-to-end	1	60	F	Unilobar	1	19	Negative	24	DDT
25	RHV	Patch closure	1	55	M	Bilobar	5	17	Positive	71	DDT

Hx: Hepatectomy; IVC: Inferior vena cava; LHV: Left hepatic vein; MHV: Middle hepatic vein; RHV: Right hepatic vein; F: Female; M: Male; N: No; Y: Yes; NED: No evidence of disease; AWD: Alive with disease; DDT: Died of disease treated; DOD: Died of other disease.

by the Mann-Whitney *U* test, the χ^2 test, or Fisher's exact test. Survival rates were calculated by the Kaplan-Meier method. Independent predictors of resection and reconstruction of major vessels being undertaken during hepatectomy were identified by multivariate analysis using multiple logistic regression. Multivariate regression analysis for identifying prognosticators was carried out by a proportional hazard method using a Cox model. Differences between survival curves were analyzed by the log-rank test. A difference was considered significant when the two-sided *P* value was below 0.05.

RESULTS

Details and outcomes in patients with resection/reconstruction of major vessels during hepatectomy

Vascular resection/reconstruction was performed on the IVC alone (n = 19), on the IVC including the confluence of the left hepatic vein (n = 1), on the middle hepatic vein (n = 3), and on the right hepatic vein (n = 2). In the 20 patients with IVC resection, direct suturing of the IVC was performed in 17 patients, an autogenous pericardial patch was applied in 1 patient, and the IVC segment was replaced by a synthetic graft (Gore-Tex; W. L. Gore & Assoc., USA) in 2 patients. All 3 patients with resection of the middle hepatic vein underwent reconstruction of the hepatic vein using a portion of the portal vein within the resected specimen. Vascular continuity was reestablished by end-to-end anastomosis in 1 patient with right hepatic vein resection and by a pericardial patch graft in the other. The patient whose IVC resection/reconstruction used a synthetic graft required venovenous bypass. Patient characteristics and outcomes are shown in Table 1. Negative resection margins were achieved in 15 of these 25 patients. Direct invasion of the IVC wall or major hepatic veins was confirmed histologically in 12 patients. Operative feasibility, hospital stays, and postoperative complications are shown in Table 2. No patients died within 60 d of hepatectomy. Morbidity occurred in 16% (4/25), and 1 patient had both severe ascites and hyperbilirubinemia. Preserved vascular patency was demonstrated by contrast-enhanced CT images approximately 1 mo after resection in all 25 patients with resection/reconstruction of major vessels during hepatectomy. Their 1-, 3-, and 5-year overall survival rates after hepatectomy were 87.0%, 58.6%, and 24.9%, respectively; disease-free rates at these time points were 21.9%, 8.8%, and 8.8%, respectively. mean ± SE and median for survival time in months were 45 ± 7 and 39; mean and median disease-free months respectively were 9 ± 1 and 8 (Figure 2).

Predictive factors of resection/reconstruction of major vessels during hepatectomy

Univariate analysis identified initial *vs* repeat hepatectomy ($P < 0.01$), maximum size of metastases ($P < 0.01$), and prehepatectomy chemotherapy ($P < 0.01$) as significant predictors of resection/reconstruction (Table 3). Multivariate analysis including factors for which univariate

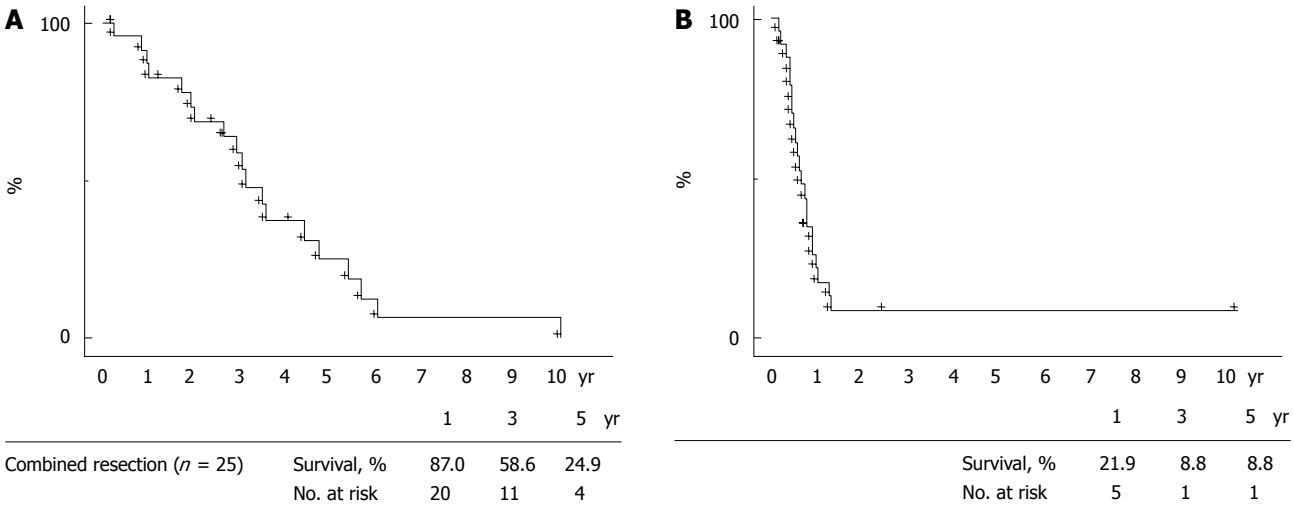


Figure 2 Overall survival (A) and disease-free rate (B) in years following surgery for 25 patients with resection/reconstruction of major vessels during hepatectomy for colorectal liver metastases.

Table 2 Feasibility of combined resection

Variable	Patients (*n* = 25)
Resected liver volume (g)	386 ± 242
(median, range)	(360, 21-972)
Operative time, mean ± SE (min)	488 ± 130
(median, range)	(460, 270-735)
Total blood loss, mean ± SE (L)	1.6 ± 1.3
(median, range)	(1.4, 0.3-5.7)
Patients transfused	17 (68%)
Hospital stay, in days, mean ± SE	19 ± 8
(median, range)	(18, 10-41)
Morbidity	4 (16%)
Ascites	2
Hyperbilirubinemia	1
Bile leakage	1
Intra-abdominal abscess	1

analysis yielded *P* values below 0.1 (initial *vs* repeat hepatectomy, maximum size of metastases, prehepatectomy chemotherapy, primary Dukes stage, extent of hepatectomy, and PVE following hepatectomy) identified 3 factors independently associated with resection/reconstruction of major vessels during hepatectomy: repeat liver resection (relative risk or RR, 5.690; 95% CI, 2.053 to 15.765; $P = 0.0008$), maximum tumor diameter more than 30 mm (RR, 3.338; CI, 1.224 to 9.108; $P = 0.0292$), and prehepatectomy chemotherapy (RR, 3.485; CI, 1.379 to 8.807; $P = 0.0083$; Table 4).

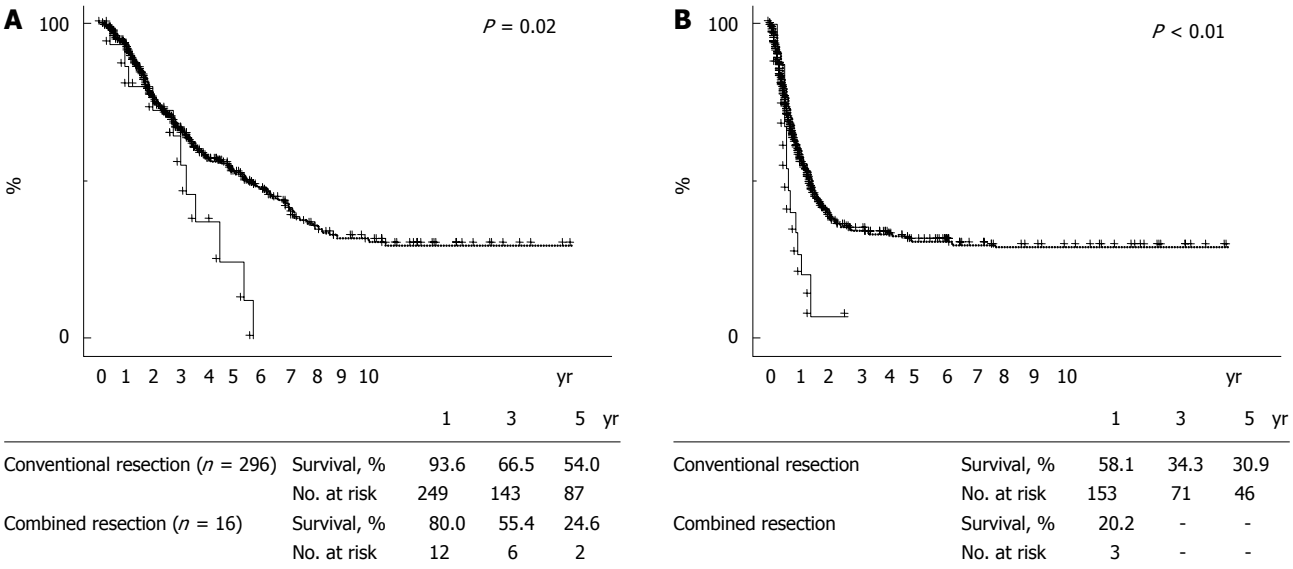
Outcome of hepatectomy with major-vessel resection/reconstruction vs conventional hepatectomy outcome for initial or repeat liver resections

When 312 patients who underwent a first liver resection for initial liver metastases were divided into those with conventional resection ($n = 296$) and those with combined resection of liver and major vessels ($n = 16$), 2 patient- or tumor-related variables, maximum tumor diameter and prehepatectomy CEA, were significantly greater

Table 3 Univariate analysis of predictive factors for combined major-vessel resection

Variables		Conventional (*n* = 346) *n* (%)	Combined (*n* = 25) *n* (%)	*P* value
Patient-related				
Age (yr)	≤ 64	179 (52)	14 (56)	0.84
	≥ 65	167 (48)	11 (44)	
Gender	Male	209 (60)	14 (56)	0.68
	Female	137 (40)	11 (44)	
Primary-related				
Site	Colon	204 (59)	19 (76)	0.14
	Rectum	142 (41)	6 (24)	
Histology	Moderate	223 (64)	14 (56)	0.40
	Others	123 (36)	11 (44)	
Dukes stage	A/B	120 (35)	4 (16)	0.08
	C	226 (65)	21 (84)	
Liver-related				
Hepatectomy	Initial	296 (86)	16 (64)	< 0.01
	Repeat	50 (14)	9 (36)	
Distribution	Unilobar	213 (62)	12 (48)	0.21
	Bilobar	133 (38)	13 (52)	
Number	≤ 2	222 (64)	14 (56)	0.52
	≥ 3	124 (36)	11 (44)	
Maximum tumor size (mm)	≤ 30	197 (57)	6 (24)	< 0.01
	> 30	149 (43)	19 (76)	
Prehepatectomy CEA (ng/mL)	< 10	175 (54)	17 (68)	0.21
	≥ 10	150 (46)	8 (32)	
Treatment-related				
Extent of hepatectomy	Major	112 (32)	13 (52)	0.05
	Minor	234 (68)	12 (48)	
PVE	Performed	44 (13)	7 (28)	0.06
	Not performed	302 (87)	18 (72)	
Staged procedure	Performed	20 (6)	1 (4)	> 0.99
	Not performed	326 (94)	24 (96)	
Hepatectomy with ablation	Performed	26 (8)	4 (16)	0.13
	Not performed	320 (92)	21 (84)	
Prehepatectomy chemotherapy	Performed	63 (18)	11 (44)	< 0.01
	Not performed	283 (82)	14 (56)	

Moderate: Moderately differentiated adenocarcinoma; CEA: Carcinoembryonic antigen; PVE: Portal vein embolization.



		1 yr	3 yr	5 yr
Conventional resection (n = 296)	Survival, %	93.6	66.5	54.0
	No. at risk	249	143	87
Combined resection (n = 16)	Survival, %	80.0	55.4	24.6
	No. at risk	12	6	2

		1 yr	3 yr	5 yr
Conventional resection	Survival, %	58.1	34.3	30.9
	No. at risk	153	71	46
Combined resection	Survival, %	20.2	-	-
	No. at risk	3	-	-

Figure 3 Overall survival (A) and disease-free rate (B) in years since a first liver resection. When patients undergoing initial liver resections were divided into those with combined major vessel resection during hepatectomy (continuous lines, n = 16) *vs* with conventional hepatectomy (broken lines, n = 296), overall survival (panel A, P = 0.02) and disease-free rates (panel B, P < 0.01) were poorer in the combined resection group than in the conventional resection group.

Table 4 Multivariate analysis of predictive factors for combined major vessel resection, by logistic regression analysis

Variables	RR	*P* value
Hepatectomy		
Repeat	5.690 (2.053-15.765)	0.0008
Maximum tumor size (mm)		
> 30	3.338 (1.224-9.108)	0.0186
Prehepatectomy chemotherapy		
Performed	3.485 (1.379-8.807)	0.0083

Values in parentheses are 95% confidence intervals. RR: Risk ratio, followed in parentheses by confidence interval.

in the combined resection group than in the conventional resection group (P = 0.02 and P < 0.01, respectively; Table 5). When survival was compared between these groups, overall survival and disease-free rates were significantly poorer in the combined resection group than in the conventional resection group (P = 0.02 and P < 0.01, respectively, Figure 3). Univariate analysis of these 312 patients identified tumor distribution (P < 0.01), number of metastases (P < 0.01), maximum tumor size (P < 0.01), prehepatectomy CEA (P = 0.01), extrahepatic metastases (P < 0.01), extent of hepatectomy (P < 0.01), tumor-free margin (P < 0.01), PVE (P < 0.01), staged hepatectomy (P < 0.01), prehepatectomy chemotherapy (P = 0.01), adjuvant chemotherapy after resection (P = 0.02), and combined major-vessel resection (P = 0.02) as significant prognostic determinants of the initial resection (Table 6). Multivariate analysis, including factors identified as significant by univariate analysis, identified factors independently affecting survival as number of metastases (≤ 2; RR, 0.543; CI, 0.378 to 0.779; P = 0.0009), prehepatectomy CEA (< 10 ng/mL; RR, 0.683; CI, 0.485 to 0.961; P = 0.0288), extrahepatic metastases (none; RR, 0.549; CI, 0.358 to 0.842; P = 0.0060), staged hepatectomy not performed (RR, 0.481; CI, 0.273 to 0.848; P = 0.0114), use of adjuvant chemotherapy (RR, 0.539; CI, 0.335 to 0.866; P = 0.0107), and no combined major-vessel resection performed (0.512; CI, 0.271 to 0.968; P = 0.0394).

When 44 patients who underwent a second liver resection for liver recurrence were divided into those with conventional resection (n = 37) and those with combined major-vessel resection to liver resection (n = 7), maximum tumor diameter was greater in the combined resection group than in the conventional resection group (P = 0.05, Table 5). Overall survival tended to be poorer in the combined resection group than in the conventional resection group, although significance was not reached (P = 0.09, Figure 4). Univariate analysis identified patient age (P = 0.03), extent of hepatectomy (P = 0.02), adjuvant chemotherapy (P = 0.03), and histologic major-vessel invasion (P < 0.01) as significant prognostic determinants (Table 7). Multivariate analysis identified factors independently affecting survival as extent of hepatectomy (major; RR, 0.264; CI, 0.072 to 0.970; P = 0.0449), use of adjuvant chemotherapy (RR, 0.119; CI, 0.019 to 0.751; P = 0.0235), and lack of histologic major-vessel invasion (0.057; CI, 0.011 to 0.286; P = 0.0005).

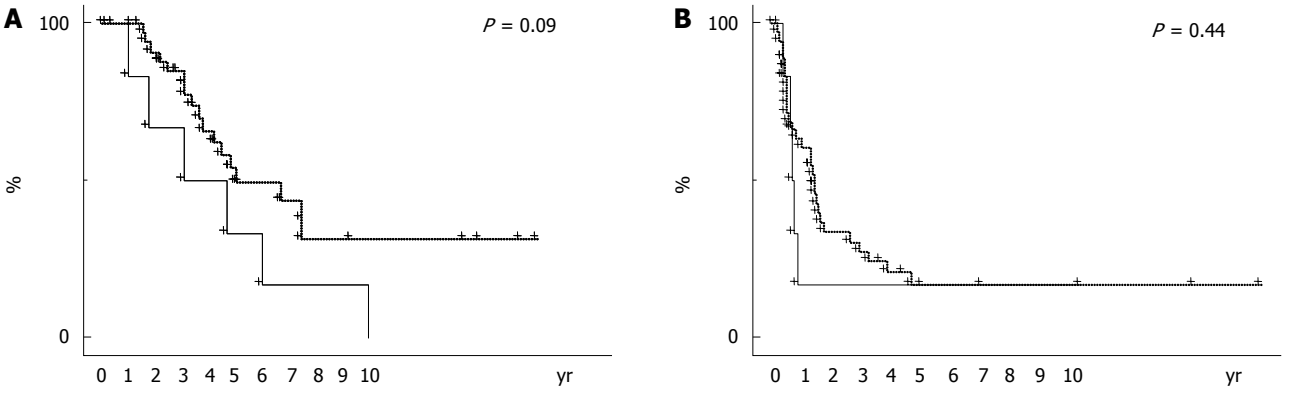
DISCUSSION

In the present study, hepatic resection combined with major blood vessel resection/reconstruction for colorectal liver metastases could be performed with acceptable morbidity and no mortality, although the procedure was associated with greater blood loss and required blood transfusion more frequently than conventional liver resections. For vascular control during combined resections including the IVC, total hepatic vascular exclu-

Table 5 Outcomes of patients undergoing major vessel resection/reconstruction

Variables		Initial resection			Second resection		
		Conventional (*n* = 296)	Combined (*n* = 16)	*P* value	Conventional (*n* = 37)	Combined (*n* = 7)	*P* value
Patient-related							
Age, years		64 (30-85)	66 (54-72)	0.60	63 (32-83)	61 (47-80)	0.91
Gender	Male	186 (63%)	9 (56%)	0.60	19 (51%)	5 (71%)	0.43
	Female	110 (37%)	7 (44%)		18 (49%)	2 (29%)	
Primary-related							
Site	Colon	169 (57%)	11 (69%)	0.61	27 (73%)	6 (86%)	0.66
	Rectum	127 (43%)	5 (31%)		10 (27%)	1 (14%)	
Dukes stage	A or B	103 (35%)	3 (19%)	0.33	13 (35%)	1 (14%)	0.53
	C	193 (65%)	13 (81%)		24 (65%)	6 (86%)	
Histology	Well	99 (33%)	7 (44%)	0.62	11 (30%)	2 (29%)	> 0.99
	Moderate	184 (62%)	8 (50%)		26 (70%)	5 (71%)	
	Others	13 (4%)	1 (6%)		-	-	
Liver-related							
Timing	Synchronous	146 (49%)	10 (63%)	0.44			
	Metachronous	150 (51%)	6 (38%)				
Distribution	Unilobar	175 (59%)	6 (38%)	0.12	27 (73%)	5 (71%)	> 0.99
	Bilobar	121 (41%)	10 (63%)		10 (27%)	2 (29%)	
Number		2 (1-38)	3.5 (1-27)	0.11	1 (1-7)	1 (1-4)	0.57
Maximum tumor size (mm)		28 (5-185)	50 (15-110)	0.02	29 (10-80)	40 (29-50)	0.05
Extrahepatic disease	Present	40 (14%)	4 (25%)	0.26	8 (22%)	1 (14%)	> 0.99
Prehepatectomy CEA (ng/mL)		8.3 (1-10536)	43.9 (2-4498)	< 0.01	8.6 (3-360)	21.5 (2-559)	0.45

Well, well differentiated adenocarcinoma; Moderate, moderately differentiated adenocarcinoma; CEA: Carcinoembryonic antigen.



		1	3	5 yr
Conventional resection (*n* = 37)	Survival, %	100	84.6	53.8
	No. at risk	35	24	12
Combined resection (*n* = 7)	Survival, %	100	66.7	33.3
	No. at risk	6	4	2

		1	3	5 yr
Conventional resection	Survival, %	60.3	27.4	16.7
	No. at risk	21	9	3
Combined resection	Survival, %	16.7	16.7	16.7
	No. at risk	1	1	1

Figure 4 Overall survival (A) and disease-free rate (B) in years since repeat resection for liver recurrence. When patients were divided into a combined resection group (continuous lines, *n* = 7) and a conventional group (broken lines, *n* = 37), overall survival (panel A, *P* = 0.09) tended to be poorer in the combined resection group than in the conventional resection group.

sion[10] and/or hypothermic isolated hepatic perfusion[11] have been used previously. However, most patients in this study did not require venovenous bypass or hypothermic isolated hepatic perfusion, which can involve a clinically significant hemodynamic instability. Such measures could be avoided probably because most of our patients had the IVC reconstructed by primary closure during clamping of a single side of the IVC or total hepatic IVC (clamping below the hepatic venous confluence). The resected IVC can be repaired primarily if

Table 6 Univariate analysis for prognostic factors of the initial resection

Variables		*n*	Survival (%)		*P* value
			3 years	5 years	
Patient-related					
Age (yr)	≤ 64	158	66.9	53.1	0.83
	≥ 65	154	64.9	52.3	
Gender	Male	195	68.2	53.0	0.77
	Female	117	62.4	51.9	
Primary-related					
Site	Colon	180	67.7	53.7	0.87
	Rectum	132	63.5	50.9	
Histology	Moderate	192	67.1	52.1	0.41
	Others	120	64.1	53.5	
Dukes stage	A/B	104	72.2	59.9	0.11
	C	208	62.7	48.8	
Liver-related					
Timing	Synchronous	156	63.7	48.5	0.17
	Metachronous	156	68.1	56.5	
Distribution	Unilobar	181	72.2	59.0	< 0.01
	Bilobar	131	57.2	43.6	
Number	≤ 2	188	72.6	61.2	< 0.01
	≥ 3	124	55.6	39.1	
Maximum tumor size (mm)	≤ 30	169	75.0	61.7	< 0.01
	> 30	143	55.3	41.5	
Prehepatectomy CEA (ng/mL)					
	< 10	158	72.6	60.8	0.01
	≥ 10	145	60.1	44.5	
Extrahepatic metastases	Present	44	40.9	26.7	< 0.01
	Absent	268	70.6	57.3	
Treatment-related					
Extent of hepatectomy	Major	113	57.9	39.8	< 0.01
	Minor	199	70.6	59.8	
Tumor-free margin	Not exposed	256	70.5	58.7	< 0.01
	Exposed	56	46.6	27.9	
PVE	Performed	49	51.0	37.4	< 0.01
	Not performed	263	68.8	55.2	
Staged procedure	Performed	21	33.2	22.1	< 0.01
	Not performed	291	68.5	55.0	
Hepatectomy with ablation	Performed	27	60.5	34.1	0.08
	Not performed	285	66.5	54.2	
Prehepatectomy chemotherapy					
	Performed	68	56.0	35.1	0.01
	Not performed	244	68.4	56.0	
Adjuvant chemotherapy	Performed	257	67.0	54.6	0.02
	Not performed	55	63.1	42.0	
Combined resection	Performed	16	55.4	24.6	0.02
	Not performed	296	66.5	54.0	
Major vessel invasion	Positive	7	66.0	52.9	0.10
	Negative	305	66.0	52.9	

Moderate, moderately differentiated adenocarcinoma; CEA: Carcinoembryonic antigen; PVE: Portal vein embolization.

the resected segment is small[5,12]. Importantly, however, persistent leg edema has been reported when the IVC was narrowed by 50%, despite maintenance of IVC patency[13]. Therefore, the partially resected IVC was often reconstructed using a patch graft. Grafts for patch repair have reportedly included saphenous vein[14], superficial femoral vein[15], and left renal vein[5]. We used a pericardial patch graft for the IVC defect. This graft can be obtained easily even in repeat resections where severe intra-abdominal adhesions may be encountered. This also avoids additional skin incisions and risk of compromising renal function.

Repeat liver resection, large tumors, and prehepatectomy chemotherapy were selected factors predicting resection and reconstruction of major vessels during hepatectomy. A trend associating increased frequency of tumor invasion of major vessels with increased size of metastases readily can be expected. Prehepatectomy chemotherapy was given to patients initially deemed to have unresectable liver involvement or marginally resectable metastases and so one also might expect their tumors to invade major vessels frequently. Distortion and anatomic disorientation caused by rotation of the liver remnant often accompanies regeneration after repeat

Table 7 Univariate analysis for prognostic factors of the second resection

Variables		*n*	Survival (%)		*P* value
			3 years	5 years	
Patient-related					
Age (yr)	≤ 63	23	95.0	62.9	0.03
	≥ 64	21	67.9	34.5	
Gender	Male	24	85.6	56.5	0.21
	Female	20	77.8	43.5	
Primary-related					
Site	Colon	33	82.9	49.1	0.80
	Rectum	11	80.0	54.9	
Histology	Moderate	31	85.9	52.3	0.40
	Others	13	72.7	45.5	
Dukes stage	A/B	14	71.4	38.1	0.15
	C	30	87.9	57.7	
Liver-related					
Distribution	Unilobar	32	79.1	46.5	0.63
	Bilobar	12	90.0	60.0	
Number	1	24	76.1	40.0	0.61
	≥ 2	20	88.9	62.3	
Maximum tumor size (mm)	≤ 30	22	73.3	47.5	0.41
	> 30	22	90.2	52.4	
Prehepatectomy CEA (ng/mL)					
	< 9	18	76.0	53.2	0.56
	≥ 9	18	93.8	67.7	
Extrahepatic metastases	Present	9	77.8	62.2	0.99
	Absent	35	83.2	47.2	
Treatment-related					
Extent of hepatectomy	Major	10	90.0	64.3	0.02
	Minor	34	79.7	46.1	
Tumor-free margin	Not exposed	37	81.2	53.9	0.39
	Exposed	7	85.7	34.3	
Hepatectomy with ablation	Performed	3	66.7	33.3	0.98
	Not performed	41	83.3	52.2	
Prehepatectomy chemotherapy					
	Performed	6	50.0	50.0	0.73
	Not performed	38	80.0	50.0	
Adjuvant chemotherapy	Performed	37	86.1	52.9	0.03
	Not performed	7	0.0	0.0	
Combined resection	Performed	7	66.7	33.3	0.09
	Not performed	37	84.6	53.8	
Major vessel invasion	Positive	4	33.3	0.0	< 0.01
	Negative	40	85.9	54.8	

Moderate, moderately differentiated adenocarcinoma; CEA: Carcinoembryonic antigen.

resections. Repeat resections often induce adhesions of unencapsulated liver surfaces to surrounding organs. Such alteration of anatomy was probably the main reason for repeat resection as a risk factor for major-vessel invasion.

Resection of colorectal liver metastases infiltrating major vessels is technically feasible although its long-term outcome has yet to be fully described. Miyazaki *et al*[5] reported 5-year and median survivals of 22% and 19.2 mo following colorectal metastasis resection combined with IVC resection. Aoki *et al*[16] reported a median survival time for patients with resection/reconstruction of the IVC or hepatic venous confluence of 25.8 mo. Similar results were obtained in the present study; 5-year and median survival of the 25 patients with resection of major vessels were 24.9% and 39 mo after hepatectomy. When patients were divided into conventional resection *vs* combined major vessel resection both at initial and second hepatectomy, overall survival and the disease-free rate in the combined resection group were significantly poorer than in the conventional resection group at initial hepatectomy, although preoperative tumor-related factors (tumor size and CEA) differed significantly between the groups.

Combined major-vessel resection/reconstruction was also identified as a prognosticator at initial hepatectomy for liver metastases by multivariate analysis. Even at a second hepatectomy performed in a limited number of patients with liver recurrence, overall survival tended to be poorer in the combined resection group than in the conventional resection group. As for prognostic factors in the second resection, combined major-vessel resection/reconstruction tended to be a negative prognosticator but fell short of significance by univariate analysis.

The presence of histologic major-vessel invasion was identified as a factor adversely affecting survival. Most

reported surgical experience with combined major-vessel resection/reconstruction for colorectal liver metastases has involved small numbers of patients, precluding definite conclusions about long-term survival. In previous reported series, however, the prognosis for patients with advanced tumors invading the IVC or major hepatic venous confluence seemed unsatisfactory compared to the prognosis for patients without major vessel invasion[5,16]. Impact of combined major-vessel resection/reconstruction on survival may be clearly demonstrated when comparison is made between patients who did not get the surgery and those that did. However, reasons for not performing such surgery were heterogeneous, (intrahepatic and extrahepatic disease status and patients' status), and so it was difficult to obtain similar background characteristics between these patients. Comparison of nutritional or functional assessment was also difficult for the same reasons.

Even in reports including several kinds of liver cancers, 5-year survival was unsatisfactory in cases with vascular invasion, approximately 30%[13,17]. Early tumor recurrence in patients with extensive local tumor spread also has been reported after *ex situ* liver surgery[18]. In treating hepatocellular carcinoma, Yang *et al*[19] reported that portal vein invasion predominated in patients whose first recurrence was in the liver, while hepatic vein invasion was predominant in patients who had only extrahepatic metastases without intrahepatic metastases. When colorectal liver metastases invade the IVC or major hepatic vein, dissemination of tumor cells through these veins may lead to extrahepatic recurrences, as occurs with hepatocellular carcinoma. However, the site of initial recurrence did not differ significantly between our combined and conventional groups after initial liver resection (extrahepatic recurrence, 64% *vs* 64%; $P = 0.82$) or second resection (extrahepatic recurrence, 80% *vs* 54%; $P = 0.07$; data not shown).

Current chemotherapy regimens can achieve either stabilization or decrease in tumor in more than 80% of patients[20,21]. Chemotherapy prior to hepatectomy allows us to extend indications for surgery in the presence of multiple metastases, permitting long-term survival, especially in chemotherapy responders[22-24]. Ng *et al*[25] reported that in response to chemotherapy, death of viable cells is randomly distributed. Necrotic elements in the center of the tumor are replaced by fibrosis, which draws remaining viable cells toward the center, reducing tumor volume. Furthermore, chemotherapy-associated decreases in micrometastases surrounding liver tumors are related to clinical responses and a favorable outcome[22], allowing complete removal of liver tumors to be achieved by a less extensive resection. Therefore, aggressive surgical approaches for liver metastases involving major vessels are best limited to patients showing a response or at least stability during effective prehepatectomy chemotherapy.

Hepatic resection combined with major-vessel resection/reconstruction for colorectal liver metastases can be performed with acceptable operative risk. Although no definite conclusion on long-term survival can be drawn from our study because of a limited number of patients, their overall survival was unsatisfactory. Ongoing advances in perioperative chemotherapy will be necessary to achieve better survival.

COMMENTS

Background

No definite consensus on long-term survival benefit of combined resection of liver with major vessels in treating colorectal liver metastases has yet been reached.

Research frontiers

Only a little information exists about the impact of combined resection of liver with major vessels on the long-term outcome in patients following liver resection for colorectal metastases.

Innovations and breakthroughs

Hepatic resection combined with major-vessel resection/reconstruction for colorectal liver metastases can be performed with acceptable operative risk.

Applications

Surgical approaches for liver metastases involving major vessels are best limited to patients showing a response during prehepatectomy chemotherapy.

Peer review

This study is fair, which can be accepted after answering some questions and revising. In fact, the greatest weakness of this retrospective study is that comparing 25 pts with vascular resection (to create a clear margin without adenoma) to 312 pts without need of vascular resection (to create a clear margin without adenoca) is like the trite old saying "comparing apples to oranges".

REFERENCES

1 **Wicherts DA**, Miller R, de Haas RJ, Bitsakou G, Vibert E, Veilhan LA, Azoulay D, Bismuth H, Castaing D, Adam R. Long-term results of two-stage hepatectomy for irresectable colorectal cancer liver metastases. *Ann Surg* 2008; **248**: 994-1005

2 **Kianmanesh R**, Farges O, Abdalla EK, Sauvanet A, Ruszniewski P, Belghiti J. Right portal vein ligation: a new planned two-step all-surgical approach for complete resection of primary gastrointestinal tumors with multiple bilateral liver metastases. *J Am Coll Surg* 2003; **197**: 164-170

3 **Jaeck D**, Oussoultzoglou E, Rosso E, Greget M, Weber JC, Bachellier P. A two-stage hepatectomy procedure combined with portal vein embolization to achieve curative resection for initially unresectable multiple and bilobar colorectal liver metastases. *Ann Surg* 2004; **240**: 1037-1049; discussion 1049-1051

4 **Tanaka K**, Shimada H, Nagano Y, Endo I, Sekido H, Togo S. Outcome after hepatic resection versus combined resection and microwave ablation for multiple bilobar colorectal metastases to the liver. *Surgery* 2006; **139**: 263-273

5 **Miyazaki M**, Ito H, Nakagawa K, Ambiru S, Shimizu H, Okuno A, Nukui Y, Yoshitomi H, Kusashio K, Furuya S, Nakajima N. Aggressive surgical resection for hepatic metastases involving the inferior vena cava. *Am J Surg* 1999; **177**: 294-298

6 **Yamanaka N**, Okamoto E, Oriyama T, Fujimoto J, Furukawa K, Kawamura E, Tanaka T, Tomoda F. A prediction scoring system to select the surgical treatment of liver cancer. Further refinement based on 10 years of use. *Ann Surg* 1994; **219**: 342-346

7 **Kumada K**, Shimahara Y, Fukui K, Itoh K, Morikawa S, Ozawa K. Extended right hepatic lobectomy: combined resection of inferior vena cava and its reconstruction by EPTFE graft (Gore-Tex). Case report. *Acta Chir Scand* 1988; **154**: 481-483

8 **Togo S**, Tanaka K, Endo I, Kurosawa H, Morioka D, Miura Y, Nagano Y, Masui H, Sekido H, Shimada H. Reconstruction of the hepatic vein using a patch graft from the autologous pericardium. *Int Surg* 2002; **87**: 233-235

9 **The Brisbane 2000 Terminology of Liver Anatomy and Resection**. Terminology Committee of the International Hepato-Pancreato-Biliary Association. *HPB* 2000; **2**: 333-339

10 **Huguet C**, Nordlinger B, Galopin JJ, Bloch P, Gallot D. Normothermic hepatic vascular exclusion for extensive hepatectomy. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 1978; **147**: 689-693

11 **Hannoun L**, Delriviere L, Gibbs P, Borie D, Vaillant JC, Delva E. Major extended hepatic resections in diseased livers using hypothermic protection: preliminary results from the first 12 patients treated with this new technique. *J Am Coll Surg* 1996; **183**: 597-605

12 **Lodge JP**, Ammori BJ, Prasad KR, Bellamy MC. Ex vivo and in situ resection of inferior vena cava with hepatectomy for colorectal metastases. *Ann Surg* 2000; **231**: 471-479

13 **Hemming AW**, Reed AI, Langham MR Jr, Fujita S, Howard RJ. Combined resection of the liver and inferior vena cava for hepatic malignancy. *Ann Surg* 2004; **239**: 712-719; discussion 719-721

14 **Moriura S**, Nimura Y, Hayakawa N, Maeda S, Kamiya J, Kondo S, Shionoya S, Nagino M. Combined resection of the inferior vena cava for hepato-biliary and pancreatic malignancies. *Hepatogastroenterology* 1990; **37**: 253-255

15 **Emre S**, Schwartz ME, Katz E, Miller CM. Liver resection under total vascular isolation. Variations on a theme. *Ann Surg* 1993; **217**: 15-19

16 **Aoki T**, Sugawara Y, Imamura H, Seyama Y, Minagawa M, Hasegawa K, Kokudo N, Makuuchi M. Hepatic resection with reconstruction of the inferior vena cava or hepatic venous confluence for metastatic liver tumor from colorectal cancer. *J Am Coll Surg* 2004; **198**: 366-372

17 **Azoulay D**, Andreani P, Maggi U, Salloum C, Perdigao F, Sebagh M, Lemoine A, Adam R, Castaing D. Combined liver resection and reconstruction of the supra-renal vena cava: the Paul Brousse experience. *Ann Surg* 2006; **244**: 80-88

18 **Oldhafer KJ**, Lang H, Schlitt HJ, Hauss J, Raab R, Klempnauer J, Pichlmayr R. Long-term experience after ex situ liver surgery. *Surgery* 2000; **127**: 520-527

19 **Yang Y**, Nagano H, Ota H, Morimoto O, Nakamura M, Wada H, Noda T, Damdinsuren B, Marubashi S, Miyamoto A, Takeda Y, Dono K, Umeshita K, Nakamori S, Wakasa K, Sakon M, Monden M. Patterns and clinicopathologic features of extrahepatic recurrence of hepatocellular carcinoma after curative resection. *Surgery* 2007; **141**: 196-202

20 **Giacchetti S**, Perpoint B, Zidani R, Le Bail N, Faggiuolo R, Focan C, Chollet P, Llory JF, Letourneau Y, Coudert B, Bertheaut-Cvitkovic F, Larregain-Fournier D, Le Rol A, Walter S, Adam R, Misset JL, Levi F. Phase III multicenter randomized trial of oxaliplatin added to chronomodulated fluorouracil-leucovorin as first-line treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2000; **18**: 136-147

21 **Douillard JY**, Cunningham D, Roth AD, Navarro M, James RD, Karasek P, Jandik P, Iveson T, Carmichael J, Alakl M, Gruia G, Awad L, Rougier P. Irinotecan combined with fluorouracil compared with fluorouracil alone as first-line treatment for metastatic colorectal cancer: a multicentre randomised trial. *Lancet* 2000; **355**: 1041-1047

22 **Tanaka K**, Shimada H, Kubota K, Ueda M, Endo I, Sekido H, Togo S. Effectiveness of prehepatectomy intra-arterial chemotherapy for multiple bilobar colorectal cancer metastases to the liver: a clinicopathologic study of peritumoral vasculobiliary invasion. *Surgery* 2005; **137**: 156-164

23 **Bismuth H**, Adam R, Levi F, Farabos C, Waechter F, Castaing D, Majno P, Engerran L. Resection of nonresectable liver metastases from colorectal cancer after neoadjuvant chemotherapy. *Ann Surg* 1996; **224**: 509-520; discussion 520-522

24 **Adam R**, Avisar E, Ariche A, Giachetti S, Azoulay D, Castaing D, Kunstlinger F, Levi F, Bismuth F. Five-year survival following hepatic resection after neoadjuvant therapy for nonresectable colorectal. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2001; **8**: 347-353

25 **Ng JK**, Urbanski SJ, Mangat N, McKay A, Sutherland FR, Dixon E, Dowden S, Ernst S, Bathe OF. Colorectal liver metastases contract centripetally with a response to chemotherapy: a histomorphologic study. *Cancer* 2008; **112**: 362-371

S- Editor Zhang HN **L- Editor** Hughes D **E- Editor** Ma WH

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.90

World J Hepatol 2009 October 31; 1(1): 90-97
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Metabolic restaging of hepatocellular carcinoma using whole-body ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT

Long Sun, Yong-Song Guan, Wei-Min Pan, Zuo-Ming Luo, Ji-Hong Wei, Long Zhao, Hua Wu

Long Sun, Wei-Min Pan, Zuo-Ming Luo, Ji-Hong Wei, Long Zhao, Hua Wu, Minnan PET Center and Department of Nuclear Medicine, The First Hospital of Xiamen University, Xiamen 316003, Fujian Province, China
Yong-Song Guan, State Key Laboratory of Biotherapy, West China Medical School, Sichuan University, Gaopeng Street, Keyuan Road 4, Chengdu 610041, Sichuan Province, China
Author contributions: Sun L wrote the paper and organized the figures and patient data; Pan WM, Luo ZM, Zhao L and Wei JH completed patient follow-ups and data collection; Wu H and Guan YS supervised the writing and organization process.
Correspondence to: Hua Wu, MD, Minnan PET Center and Department of Nuclear Medicine, The First Hospital of Xiamen University, Xiamen 316003, Fujian Province, China. wuhua1025@163.com
Telephone: +86-592-2139527 Fax: +86-592-2139527
Received: February 24, 2009 Revised: April 10, 2009
Accepted: April 17, 2009
Published online: October 31, 2009

Abstract

AIM: To evaluate the ability of ^{18}F-fluorodeoxyglucose positron emission and computed tomography (^{18}F-FDG PET/CT) in restaging of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) after treatment.

METHODS: We reviewed a database of the diagnostic performance of ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT scan for patients with HCC following local or regional treatment. The database consisted of ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT information of 21 male and 4 female (age range, 27-81 years; mean age, 51.6 years) patients who had received surgical resection and/or interventional treatments and then underwent ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT scan. All patients had received enhanced CT scan of the liver two weeks before or after the ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT scan. Intrahepatic recurrence and/or extrahepatic metastases were confirmed by histological analysis or clinical and imaging follow-up. The accuracy of ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT study was determined by histopathological results or by clinical and imaging follow-up.

RESULTS: ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT was abnormal in 19 of the 25 (76.0%) patients. In detecting HCC recurrence, ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT scored 17 true positives, 5 true negatives, 2 false positives and 1 false negative. The sensitivity, specificity and accuracy of ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT in detecting HCC recurrence was 89.5%, 83.3% and 88%, respectively. ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT had an impact on management of these patients by settling the problem of an unexplained increase in alpha-fetoprotein after treatment (14 patients), by monitoring response to the treatment and guiding additional regional therapy (12 patients), by identifying extrahepatic metastases (10 patients), by identifying tumor growth or thrombosis in the portal vein (6 patients), or by guiding surgical resection of extrahepatic metastases (2 patients).

CONCLUSION: Our results suggest that whole body ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT may be useful in the early evaluation of residual, intrahepatic recurrent or extrahepatic metastatic lesions and able to provide valuable information for the management of HCC recurrence.

Key words: ^{18}F-fluorodeoxyglucose; Positron emission tomography/computed tomography; Hepatocellular carcinoma; Surgeon resection; Interventional treatment; Residual lesion; Intrahepatic recurrence; Extrahepatic metastases; Restaging

Peer reviewer: Bin Wang, Professor, PhD, MD, Deputy President of Weifang Medical University; Dean of School of Radiology, Director of Centre of Molecular Imaging, Chairman Medical Imaging Center, the Affiliated Hospital, Weifang Medical University, 7166 Baotong West Street, Weifang 261053, Shandong Province, China

Sun L, Guan YS, Pan WM, Luo ZM, Wei JH, Zhao L, Wu H. Metabolic restaging of hepatocellular carcinoma using whole-body ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT. *World J Hepatol* 2009; 1(1): 90-97 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v1/i1/90.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.90

INTRODUCTION

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is one of the most common solid malignancies worldwide, with up to 1 million new cases per year. Its mortality is second to lung cancer in urban and to gastric carcinoma in rural regions of China[1,2]. Surgical treatments, including hepatic resection and liver transplantation, are considered as the most effective treatment of HCC. However, less than 20% of HCC patients can be treated surgically[3]. Interventional treatments have been applied to patients with inoperable HCC[4,5]. Despite initial remission of HCC, after surgical and interventional treatments, recurrence is common. Since patients with recurrent HCC may be amenable to potentially curative resection, early detection of intrahepatic recurrence and/or extrahepatic metastases is extremely important and can facilitate successful retreatment at an early stage. Late diagnosis makes retreatment difficult[6,7].

Conventional computed tomography (CT) and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) are the main techniques that are used during the follow-up of HCC. However, these techniques may not be reliable enough in detecting residual, recurrent or metastatic lesions[8,9]. The reported increase in sensitivity of ^{18}F-fluorodeoxyglucose positron emission tomography/computed tomography (^{18}F-FDG PET/CT) over CT and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) has been attributed to the ability of ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT to detect metabolic abnormalities that precede the morphological changes seen by CT[10]. This study was undertaken to further define the usefulness of ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT imaging in evaluating residual, intrahepatic recurrent or extrahepatic metastatic lesions of HCC after primary treatment.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patients

During the period from January 2007 to Oct July 2008, thirty ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT scans were performed in 25 patients (age range, 27-81; 21 men and 4 women), who had undergone both/either surgical resection and/or interventional therapy for HCC. These patients, with/without suspicious intrahepatic recurrence and/or extrahepatic metastases in conventional imaging or according to clinical findings, were retrospectively enrolled in our study. All patients had received enhanced CT scan of the liver during the two weeks preceding or following the ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT scan. The standard for the ultimate diagnosis of tumor recurrence consisted of histopathological confirmation or of clinical and imaging follow-up information for at least 12 mo after the PET/CT examination.

^{18}F-FDG PET/CT technique

Patients were asked to fast for at least 4 h before undergoing ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT examination. Their blood glucose level had to be within the normal range (70-120 mg/dL) prior to the intravenous injection of ^{18}F-FDG with a radiation dosage within 370 and 666 MBq (10-18 mCi). Data acquisition was performed within 60 min after the injection with an integrated PET/CT system (Discovery STE; GE Medical Systems, Milwaukee, WI, USA). The procedure of data acquisition was as follows: the CT scan was performed covering the patient from the head to the pelvic floor, with 110 kV, 110 mA, tube rotation time of 0.5 s, and 3.3-mm section thickness, which was matched to the PET section thickness. Immediately after CT scanning, a PET emission scan, covering the same transverse field of CT view, was obtained. Acquisition time was 3 min per table position. PET image data sets were reconstructed iteratively by applying the CT data for attenuation correction. Finally, coregistered images were displayed on a workstation.

PET/CT image interpretation

Reviewer 1 and reviewer 2, who were aware of the clinical and other imaging data, read the ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT images on a high-resolution computer screen. The reviewers reached a consensus in cases of discrepancy. Reviewer 1 had 21 years of experience in both nuclear medicine and radiology, and reviewer 2 had 6 years of experience in both expertises. If a focus within the liver had hypermetabolic activity greater than that of the adjacent normal liver tissue, it was considered intrahepatic recurrence. ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT scan was considered positive or suspiciously positive for metastases whenever abnormal non-physiologic metabolic activity was identified at extrahepatic sites. Diffuse mild activity in the intestinal tract was considered normal physiologic uptake. Quantification of tumor metabolic activity was obtained using the Standardized Uptake Value (SUV) normalized to body weight. mean ± SD of maximum-pixel SUV (SUVmax) of the lesions were calculated.

RESULTS

Clinical presentation of recurrent disease

The characteristics of the patients are shown in Table 1. Mean time after treatment to PET/CT exam was 13 mo (10 d-12 year) and mean follow up time after PET/CT exam was 12 mo. At the time of intrahepatic recurrence and extrahepatic metastases being suspected, the mean patients' age was 51.6 years with a tendency to a preponderant male gender distribution (84%). The suspicion of intrahepatic recurrence and/or extrahepatic metastases leading to a ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT was based on an unexplained increase in alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) (n = 14) (Figure 1), suspected intrahepatic recurrence routine follow-up after TACE (n = 8), or suspected extrahepatic metastases at CT or MRI (n = 7). The features of recurrent HCC after treatment are summarized in Table 2.

Residual, intrahepatic recurrent or extrahepatic metastatic lesions

The accuracy of ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT detection was determined by histopathological examination or based on other clinical evidence. The ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT of the

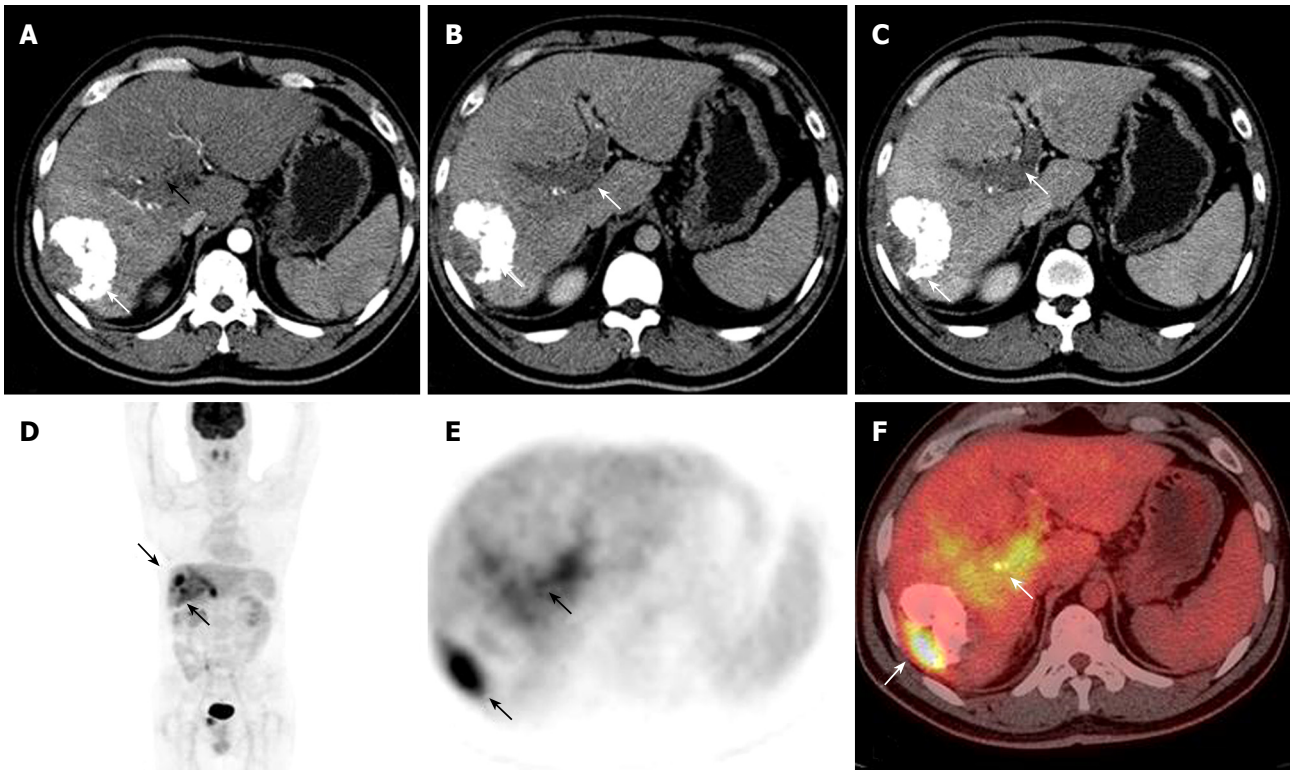


Figure 1 A 38-year man, who had TACE 1 mo before, underwent PET/CT to monitor response to the treatment. Contrast-enhanced arterial-phase axial CT image showed the mass with partial accumulation of iodized oil in the right lobe of the liver (arrows, A, B). A filling defect was detected in the left branch during the portal phases (arrow, C). PET and PET/CT fused images (arrows, D, E and F) revealed residual viable tumor and a highly metabolically active tumor thrombus in the left branch of the portal vein.

Table 1 Patients' features

Clinical characteristics	Data
Mean age (yr)	51.6 (range 27-81 yr)
Gender	
Males	21
Females	4
Prior therapy	
TACE	6
Liver resection	9
TACE after surgery	8
TACE + RFA or PEI	2
Unexplained AFP increase after treatment	14
Mean time from treatment to recurrence	11.5 mo
Mean time after treatment to PET/CT exam	10 d - 12 yr; mean 13 mo
Mean follow up time after PET/CT exam	3 mo - 21 mo; mean 12 mo

Table 2 Characteristics of recurrent HCC in 17 true positive patients

Characteristics	*n*
Intrahepatic recurrence	8
Intrahepatic recurrence and extrahepatic metastases	5
Extrahepatic metastases without intrahepatic recurrence	4
Single intrahepatic recurrence	7
Multiple intrahepatic recurrence	8
Lung	4
Bone	1
Omentum and mesentery	3
Retroperitoneal lymph nodes	2
Adrenal	1

25 cases of HCC with a post-treatment follow-up lead to 17 true positive (Figures 2 and 3), 1 false negative, 5 true negative and 2 false positive results. The 2 false positive PET/CT findings were later verified as post-operative inflammation (Figure 4). Regarding the single patient with a false negative PET/CT, the final diagnosis was low-level metabolism metastasis of the left adrenal gland.

The sensitivity, specificity and accuracy levels of the ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT in detecting post-treatment HCC recurrence were 89.5%, 83.3% and 88%, respectively. ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT imaging had an impact on management of these patients, by solving the problem of an unexplained increase in AFP after treatment (14 patients), by monitoring the response to treatment and guiding additional regional therapy (12 patients), by identifying extrahepatic metastases (10 patients), by identifying tumor growth or thrombosis in the portal vein (6 patients), or by guiding surgical resection of extrahepatic metastases (2 patients).

Of the cases with positive post-treatment findings, 90% occurred within the first 1 year, while less than 9% occurred after 2 years. Positive findings were frequently detected as both intrahepatic lesions and extrahepatic metastases.

Afp and recurrent disease

^{18}F-FDG PET/CT study was performed in 14 patients,

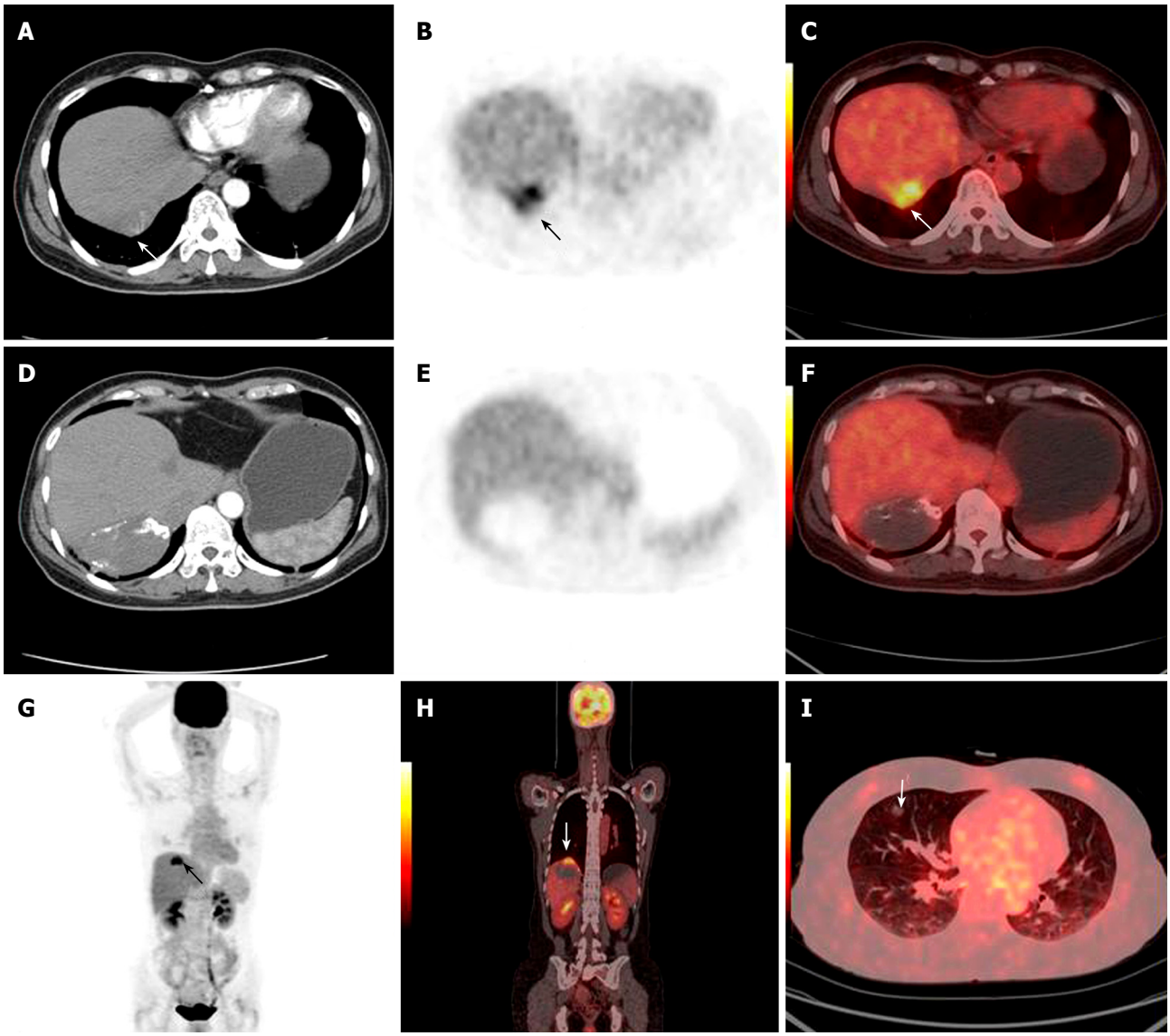


Figure 2 A 50-year woman who had HCC resection 2 years before had an intrahepatic HCC recurrence and received combined RFA and TACE treatment. A highly metabolically active lesion was detected on the top of the lesion by PET and PET/CT fused images (white arrows, A-C and G). Contrast-enhanced CT image showed the non enhanced mass with faint accumulation of iodized oil in the right lobe of the liver (D-F). PET/CT fused images revealed a low FDG uptake benign lesion in the right lung (I). All findings were later verified by clinical follow-up.

who had undergone either surgical resection or interventional therapy for HCC, but who had subsequently developed increasing serum levels of AFP during routine follow-up. In 5 of these patients, ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT was carried out due to suspected disease recurrence upon liver enhanced CT scan. The remaining 9 had high post-treatment AFP serum levels during routine follow-up, but liver enhanced CT scan and physical examinations were normal. ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT findings were abnormal in 11 of the 14 patients with unexplained increase in AFP after treatment. Intrahepatic lesions were detected in 8 and extrahepatic metastases were found in 3 patients with abnormal PET/CT findings.

DISCUSSION

Mortality due to HCC ranks as the second highest in cancer-related deaths nationwide and its morbidity is increasing among the male population[11]. In the past decades, numerous non-surgical interventional therapies have been continuously introduced as a result of the technical developments of locoregional approaches for HCC. The therapy consisting in surgical resection combined with interventional treatment has played an important role in the treatment of HCC[12]. However, intrahepatic recurrence and extrahepatic metastases are still the major obstacles to improve further the prognosis of HCC. The recurrence rate of intrahepatic carcinomas varies from 36.8% to 82%, while 30% of the recurrences are extrahepatic[13]. The 5-year recurrence rates are, respectively, 38% and 61.5%, while the 5-year disease-free survival are 16% or 38.6% after curative resection; overall, recurrent HCC is the single most important cause of death after treatment[14].

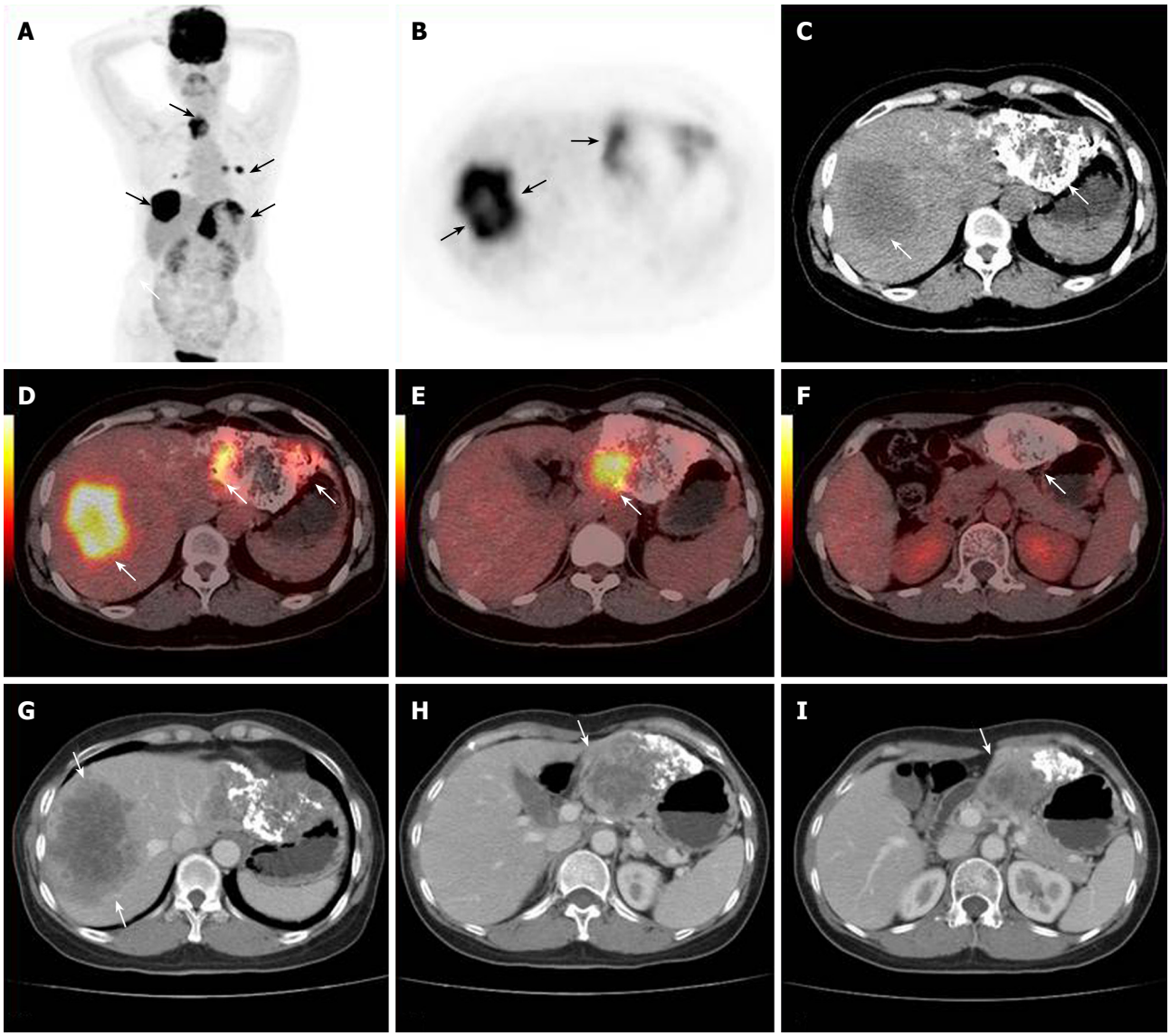


Figure 3 A 55-year woman suffering from HCC received TACE treatment. Extrahepatic metastases (arrows, A) were detected by PET and PET/CT fused images. Highly metabolic new recurrent lesion of the right lobe (arrows, B-D) and a resident lesion of the left lobe (arrows, E, F) were detected by PET/CT fused imaging. Contrast-enhanced CT follow-up after 1 mo later confirmed the progression of lesions.

Despite the high recurrence rate of HCC, long-term survival can be achieved after treatment by early detection. This is critical, because recurrences confined to the liver may be amenable to treatment with an additional survival benefit. Surgical resection for isolated extrahepatic recurrence of HCC is also recommended to increase long-term survival[15,16]. So far, contrast enhanced CT or MRI are considered as the most sensitive test for assessing therapeutic efficacy. These imaging examinations play a crucial role in the follow-up of HCC treated by surgical resection and interventional procedures, since local treatment efficacy, recurrent disease and some of therapy-induced complications can be evaluated[17,18]. However, CT and MRI have both advantages and disadvantages in the evaluation of local treatment efficacy, recurrent disease and some of the therapy-induced complications, while local CT or MRI have also limitations in the detection of extrahepatic HCC[19,20].

Major advantages of whole body ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT are the capability to perform full-body examinations, the potential to detect intrahepatic recurrence and extrahepatic metastases in one single examination and the possibility of distinguishing new active disease from scar or necrotic tissue[21]. The whole-body nature of the ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT study also contributes to the increased sensitivity through detection of distant metastatic lesions[22]. Tumors with increased ^{18}F-FDG uptake are more metabolically active and biologically aggressive. The degree of ^{18}F-FDG uptake and its distribution within the tumor and the surrounding hepatic parenchyma could provide useful information for specifying the degree of tumor necrosis and working out strategies for subsequent additional locoregional therapy[23,24].

AFP is a useful marker for monitoring treatment effects on HCC patients. It is considered a relatively specific test for HCC among high-risk patients, particu-

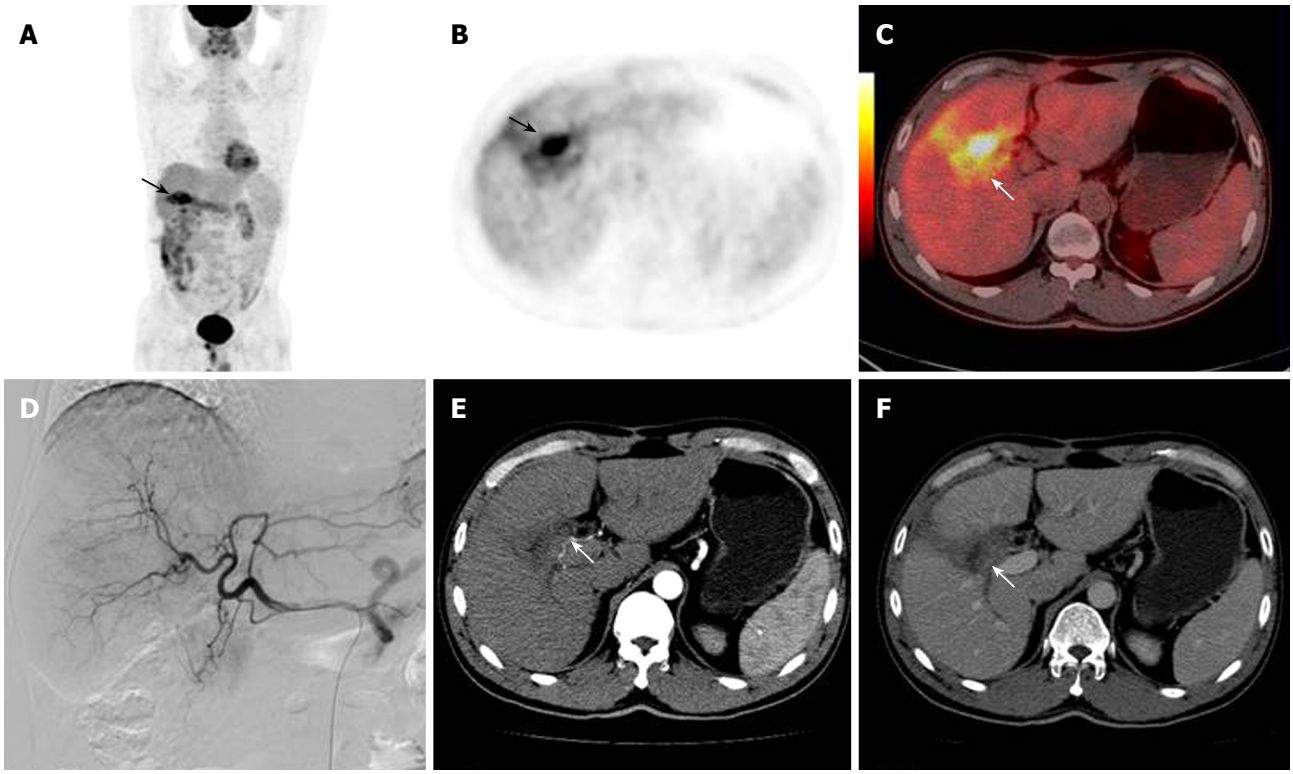


Figure 4 A 48-year man who had HCC resection 2 mo before the imaging, followed by TACE 40 d later. PET and PET/CT fused images revealed highly metabolic lesions (arrows, A-C). Both contrast-enhanced axial CT imaging and arteriography failed to show lesions in the right lobe of the liver (arrows, D-F). These findings of PET/CT were later verified as inflammatory by post-operative tissue examination.

larly those with advanced disease and with levels tending to increase in follow-up examinations. However, measurements of AFP have been demonstrated to have limited value for detecting recurrence at an early stage. In addition, elevated AFP level may also be transiently present in patients with cirrhosis and/or hepatitis[25,26]. In some patients with elevated serum level of AFP, no tumors can be detected by conventional enhanced CT and MRI scanning. Our results suggest that ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT is a valuable imaging tool in patients who have rising AFP levels after HCC treatment, even when conventional examinations are normal. Whole-body ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT scan provides also an important and valuable imaging study for detecting extrahepatic metastases.

Iodized oil is widely used in transcatheter arterial chemoembolization (TACE). It is difficult to completely kill the tumor cells with TACE in only one session, and it is very important to objectively assess the viability and necrosis of the tumors after TACE, in order to assess the indication to additional treatment sessions, with the aim to improve the general therapeutic effects and the survival rate[27]. Generally, the CT follow-up of patients treated with TACE alone could be affected by artifacts produced by high local concentrations of lipiodol, making it difficult to evaluate the characteristics of the lesion. On the other hand, the homogeneous and complete deposition of lipiodol within the lesion would indicate a high degree of necrosis of the tumors: however, it is difficult to estimate correctly the viability and necrosis of the tumors in case of inhomogeneous deposition, because lipiodol-negative areas do not correspond to viable areas of the tumors[28,29]. On the contrary, whole-body ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT scan may represent an important and valuable imaging tool to detect residual, intrahepatic metastatic or extrahepatic metastatic lesions. In particular, the capability of detecting residual lesions is not affected by high concentrations of lipiodol.

The same diagnostic criteria described above for lesions treated with TACE can be applied to assess the therapeutic responses to percutaneous ethanol injection (PEI) and radio-frequency ablation (RFA). The imaging appearances of the lesions after these two treatments are very similar. However, the absence of contrast enhancement within the ablated lesion at CT and MRI performed during follow-up after treatment cannot always indicate a successful treatment, as later follow-up studies may demonstrate tumor regrowth at the periphery of the ablated lesion[30]. ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT is useful to assess residual HCC after treatment with RFA and to guide its further local treatment.

HCC carries a high risk of invasion of the portal vein. The detection and etiologic characterization of these thrombi are essential for treatment planning, particularly in patients with hepatic tumors, because malignant thrombosis is a negative prognostic factor. The management of HCC with portal vein tumor thrombosis is complicated and controversial. In our group, five consecutive patients with biopsy-proven HCC, and thrombosis of the main portal vein and/or left/right portal vein on ultrasound (US), CT or MRI were identified

by ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT. ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT showed a highly metabolically active thrombus in 4 of the 5 patients. ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT scored a true positive result in all 4 patients, and a true negative result in the other patient. No false positive results were observed using ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT[31,32].

Resection of isolated extrahepatic HCC metastases has been advocated to obtain long-term survival. Accurate re-staging plays the most important role in making a decision on extrahepatic metastases resection. In our study, in a 60-year old woman with increasing AFP levels after HCC resection, conventional chest and abdominal CT did not find any evidence of intrahepatic recurrence or extrahepatic metastases. ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT detected a lymph node with high metabolic activity at the level of the omentum. After excision of this lymph node, histopathological examination revealed a metastatic HCC and AFP level returned to normal. This case shows that ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT may provide a highly significant, additional information regarding the accurate detection of extrahepatic spread of tumors and additional important information in patients with presumably resectable extrahepatic metastases[33]. This test should be used for patients at high risk of extrahepatic disease and should be evaluated prospectively in all patients considered for resection of intrahepatic recurrence and extrahepatic metastases[34].

The diagnostic contrast-enhanced multiphase CT, as part of the combined ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT protocol, has the potential to provide considerable added value in specific clinical conditions leading, as a result, to a change in the management of a substantial proportion of patients. The greatest benefit of the diagnostic CT lies in the possibility of localizing a pathological FDG uptake and of correctly delineating the tumor boundaries, leading to changes in the interpretation of ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT, at least in some patients.

Our study has some limitations. First, it was a retrospective analysis. Second, we recognize that not all of the extrahepatic lesions had evidence for metastatic HCC at biopsy. However, in a patient with a known HCC and with no other primary tumor, the development of a new lesion (e.g. a new bone lesion) or the increase over time of previously diagnosed extrahepatic lesions strongly suggest metastatic HCC. These criteria for metastatic disease are used by oncologists and surgeons in planning therapy.

In conclusion, High recurrence rates after treatment of HCC indicate that there is substantial room for improvement of current imaging strategies for the early detection of recurrent lesions. Whole body ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT scan may provide valuable information for the early detection and guide salvage treatment for recurrent HCC.

COMMENTS

Background

Despite initial remission of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) after surgical and interventional treatments, recurrence is common. Since patients with recurrent HCC may be amenable to potentially curative resection, early detection of intrahepatic recurrence and/or extrahepatic metastases is extremely important and can facilitate successful retreatment at an early stage. Late diagnosis makes retreatment difficult. This study was undertaken to further define the usefulness of ^{18}F-fluorodeoxyglucose positron emission and computed tomography (^{18}F-FDG PET/CT) imaging in evaluating residual, intrahepatic recurrent or extrahepatic metastatic lesions of HCC after primary treatment.

Research frontiers

^{18}F-FDG PET and, particularly, ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT are widely accepted imaging methods in the management of a wide variety of cancers. The reported increase in sensitivity of ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT over CT and MRI has been attributed to the ability of ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT to detect metabolic abnormalities that precede the morphologic changes seen by CT. However, the usefulness and limitations of ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT in evaluating residual, intrahepatic recurrent or extrahepatic metastatic lesions of HCC after primary treatment still need further clinical evaluation.

Innovations and breakthroughs

Whole body ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT was effective in detecting relapse in evaluating residual, intrahepatic recurrent or extrahepatic metastatic lesions of HCC after primary treatment and also had important clinical impacts on the management of recurrent HCC.

Applications

High recurrence rates after treatment of HCC indicate that there is substantial room for improvement of current imaging strategies for the early detection of recurrent lesions. Whole body ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT scan could provide valuable information for early detection and might guide salvage treatment for recurrent HCC.

Peer review

This is an interesting report of PET and PET/CT for HCC. Whereas it is of clinical significance, the presentation of the paper needs some modification. It deserves some comments for further consideration.

REFERENCES

1 **Schafer DF**, Sorrell MF. Hepatocellular carcinoma. *Lancet* 1999; **353**: 1253-1257

2 **Kudo M**. Hepatocellular carcinoma 2009 and beyond: from the surveillance to molecular targeted therapy. *Oncology* 2008; **75** Suppl 1: 1-12

3 **Alsowmely AM**, Hodgson HJ. Non-surgical treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2002; **16**: 1-15

4 **Livraghi T**. Radiofrequency ablation, PEIT, and TACE for hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 2003; **10**: 67-76

5 **Llovet JM**, Real MI, Montana X, Planas R, Coll S, Aponte J, Ayuso C, Sala M, Muchart J, Soll R, Rodes J, Bruix J. Arterial embolisation or chemoembolisation versus symptomatic treatment in patients with unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2002; **359**: 1734-1739

6 **Zangos S**, Eichler K, Balzer JO, Straub R, Hammerstingl R, Herzog C, Lehnert T, Heller M, Thalhammer A, Mack MG, Vogl TJ. Large-sized hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC): a neoadjuvant treatment protocol with repetitive transarterial chemoembolization (TACE) before percutaneous MR-guided laser-induced thermotherapy (LITT). *Eur Radiol* 2007; **17**: 553-563

7 **Vogl TJ**, Eichler K, Zangos S, Mack M, Hammerstingl R. [Hepatocellular carcinoma: Role of imaging diagnostics in detection, intervention and follow-up] *Rofo* 2002; **174**: 1358-1368

8 **Vogl TJ**, Trapp M, Schroeder H, Mack M, Schuster A, Schmitt J, Neuhaus P, Felix R. Transarterial chemoembolization for hepatocellular carcinoma: volumetric and morphologic CT criteria for assessment of prognosis and therapeutic success-results from a liver transplantation center. *Radiology* 2000; **214**: 349-357

9 **Kamel IR**, Bluemke DA, Eng J, Liapi E, Messersmith W,

Reyes DK, Geschwind JF. The role of functional MR imaging in the assessment of tumor response after chemoembolization in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 2006; **17**: 505-512
10 **Sun L**, Wu H, Guan YS. Positron emission tomography/computer tomography: challenge to conventional imaging modalities in evaluating primary and metastatic liver malignancies. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 2775-2783
11 **Tang ZY**. Hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2000; **15** Suppl: G1-G7
12 **Herber S**, Schneider J, Brecher B, Hohler T, Thelen M, Otto G, Pitton MB. [TACE: therapy of the HCC before liver transplantation--experiences] *Rofo* 2005; **177**: 681-690
13 **Taura K**, Ikai I, Hatano E, Fujii H, Uyama N, Shimahara Y. Implication of frequent local ablation therapy for intrahepatic recurrence in prolonged survival of patients with hepatocellular carcinoma undergoing hepatic resection: an analysis of 610 patients over 16 years old. *Ann Surg* 2006; **244**: 265-273
14 **Sasaki A**, Iwashita Y, Shibata K, Matsumoto T, Ohta M, Kitano S. Improved long-term survival after liver resection for hepatocellular carcinoma in the modern era: retrospective study from HCV-endemic areas. *World J Surg* 2006; **30**: 1567-1578
15 **Shah SA**, Cleary SP, Wei AC, Yang I, Taylor BR, Hemming AW, Langer B, Grant DR, Greig PD, Gallinger S. Recurrence after liver resection for hepatocellular carcinoma: risk factors, treatment, and outcomes. *Surgery* 2007; **141**: 330-339
16 **Verhoef C**, Holman FA, Hussain SM, de Man RA, de Wilt JH, IJzermans JN. Resection of extrahepatic hepatocellular carcinoma metastasis can result in long-term survival. *Acta Chir Belg* 2005; **105**: 533-536
17 **Guan YS**, Sun L, Zhou XP, Li X, Zheng XH. Hepatocellular carcinoma treated with interventional procedures: CT and MRI follow-up. *World J Gastroenterol* 2004; **10**: 3543-3548
18 **Guan YS**, Hu Y, Liu Y. Multidetector-row computed tomography in the management of hepatocellular carcinoma with transcatheter arterial chemoembolization. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2006; **21**: 941-946
19 **Iwazawa J**, Ohue S, Mitani T, Abe H, Hashimoto N, Hamuro M, Nakamura K. Identifying feeding arteries during TACE of hepatic tumors: comparison of C-arm CT and digital subtraction angiography. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2009; **192**: 1057-1063
20 **Herber S**, Biesterfeld S, Franz U, Schneider J, Thies J, Schuchmann M, Duber C, Pitton MB, Otto G. Correlation of multislice CT and histomorphology in HCC following TACE: predictors of outcome. *Cardiovasc Intervent Radiol* 2008; **31**: 768-777
21 **Langenhoff BS**, Oyen WJ, Jager GJ, Strijk SP, Wobbes T, Corstens FH, Ruers TJ. Efficacy of fluorine-18-deoxyglucose positron emission tomography in detecting tumor recurrence after local ablative therapy for liver metastases: a prospective study. *J Clin Oncol* 2002; **20**: 4453-4458
22 **Ruf J**, Lopez Hanninen E, Oettle H, Plotkin M, Pelzer U, Stroszczynski C, Felix R, Amthauer H. Detection of recurrent pancreatic cancer: comparison of FDG-PET with CT/MRI. *Pancreatology* 2005; **5**: 266-272
23 **Barker DW**, Zagoria RJ, Morton KA, Kavanagh PV, Shen P. Evaluation of liver metastases after radiofrequency ablation: utility of 18F-FDG PET and PET/CT. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2005; **184**: 1096-1102
24 **Chen YK**, Hsieh DS, Liao CS, Bai CH, Su CT, Shen YY, Hsieh JF, Liao AC, Kao CH. Utility of FDG-PET for investigating unexplained serum AFP elevation in patients with suspected hepatocellular carcinoma recurrence. *Anticancer Res* 2005; **25**: 4719-4725
25 **Wudel LJ Jr**, Delbeke D, Morris D, Rice M, Washington MK, Shyr Y, Pinson CW, Chapman WC. The role of [18F]fluorodeoxyglucose positron emission tomography imaging in the evaluation of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Am Surg* 2003; **69**: 117-124; discussion 124-126
26 **Takayasu K**, Arii S, Matsuo N, Yoshikawa M, Ryu M, Takasaki K, Sato M, Yamanaka N, Shimamura Y, Ohto M. Comparison of CT findings with resected specimens after chemoembolization with iodized oil for hepatocellular carcinoma. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2000; **175**: 699-704
27 **Meyer BC**, Frericks BB, Voges M, Borchert M, Martus P, Justiz J, Wolf KJ, Wacker FK. Visualization of hypervascular liver lesions During TACE: comparison of angiographic C-arm CT and MDCT. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2008; **190**: W263-W269
28 **Herber S**, Biesterfeld S, Franz U, Schneider J, Thies J, Schuchmann M, Duber C, Pitton MB, Otto G. Correlation of multislice CT and histomorphology in HCC following TACE: predictors of outcome. *Cardiovasc Intervent Radiol* 2008; **31**: 768-777
29 **Fujita T**, Ito K, Tanabe M, Yamatogi S, Sasai H, Matsunaga N. Iodized oil accumulation in hypervascular hepatocellular carcinoma after transcatheter arterial chemoembolization: comparison of imaging findings with CT during hepatic arteriography. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 2008; **19**: 333-341
30 **Gervais DA**, Kalva S, Thabet A. Percutaneous image-guided therapy of intra-abdominal malignancy: imaging evaluation of treatment response. *Abdom Imaging* 2009; **34**: 593-609
31 **Sun L**, Guan YS, Pan WM, Chen GB, Luo ZM, Wei JH, Wu H. Highly metabolic thrombus of the portal vein: 18F fluorodeoxyglucose positron emission tomography/computer tomography demonstration and clinical significance in hepatocellular carcinoma. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 1212-1217
32 **Sun L**, Wu H, Pan WM, Guan YS. Positron emission tomography/computed tomography with (18)F-fluorodeoxyglucose identifies tumor growth or thrombosis in the portal vein with hepatocellular carcinoma. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 4529-4532
33 **Sun L**, Guan YS, Pan WM, Chen GB, Luo ZM, Wu H. Positron emission tomography/computer tomography in guidance of extrahepatic hepatocellular carcinoma metastasis management. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 5413-5415
34 **Yoon KT**, Kim JK, Kim do Y, Ahn SH, Lee JD, Yun M, Rha SY, Chon CY, Han KH. Role of 18F-fluorodeoxyglucose positron emission tomography in detecting extrahepatic metastasis in pretreatment staging of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Oncology* 2007; **72** Suppl 1: 104-110

S- Editor Zhang HN **L- Editor** Negro F **E- Editor** Ma WH

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.98

World J Hepatol 2009 October 31; 1(1): 98-102
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

BRIEF ARTICLE

Partial blockage of hepatocyte maturation in hepatoma-derived growth factor transgenic mice

Hirayuki Enomoto, Hideji Nakamura, Naoko Komatsu-Kanatani, Yu Liu, Kenya Yoshida, Yorihide Okuda, Teruhisa Yamamoto, Weidong Liu, Shuhei Nishiguchi

Hirayuki Enomoto, Hideji Nakamura, Teruhisa Yamamoto, Weidong Liu, Shuhei Nishiguchi, Division of Hepatobiliary and Pancreatic Medicine, Department of Internal Medicine, Hyogo College of Medicine, Mukogawa-cho 1-1, Nishinomiya, Hyogo 663-8501, Japan
Naoko Komatsu-Kanatani, Yu Liu, Kenya Yoshida, Yorihide Okuda, Department of Molecular Medicine, Osaka University Graduate School of Medicine, Suita, Osaka 565-0871, Japan
Author contributions: Enomoto H and Nakamura H designed the research; Enomoto H, Komatsu-Kanatani N, Liu Y, Yoshida K, Okuda Y, Yamamoto T, and Liu W performed the research; Enomoto H, Nakamura H, and Nishiguchi S analyzed the data; Enomoto H and Nakamura H wrote the manuscript.
Correspondence to: Hideji Nakamura, MD, PhD, Division of Hepatobiliary and Pancreatic Medicine, Department of Internal Medicine, Hyogo College of Medicine, Mukogawa-cho 1-1, Nishinomiya, Hyogo 663-8501, Japan. nakamura@hyo-med.ac.jp
Telephone: +81-798-456472 Fax: +81-798-456474
Received: June 16, 2009 Revised: September 10, 2009
Accepted: September 17, 2009
Published online: October 31, 2009

Abstract

AIM: To investigate the role of hepatoma-derived growth factor (HDGF) in liver development, especially in the hepatocyte differentiation.

METHODS: We generated transgenic mice which overexpressed HDGF in hepatocytes under the transcriptional control of mouse albumin promoter/enhancer. To examine the effects of HDGF overexpression on hepatocyte differentiation, we investigated the expression patterns of the differentiation marker genes.

RESULTS: The HDGF transgenic mice developed normally and showed no apparent abnormality in the liver. However, the gene expression patterns of the liver in adult transgenic mice were similar to those of the neonatal liver in control mice.

CONCLUSION: These findings suggest that HDGF-overexpression partially suppresses hepatocyte maturation.

Key words: Hepatoma-derived growth factor; Hepatocyte; Maturation; Transgenic mice

Peer reviewer: Nathalie Wong, Professor, Department of Anatomical and Cellular Pathology, The Chinese University of Hong Kong, Shatin NT, Hong Kong, China

Enomoto H, Nakamura H, Komatsu-Kanatani N, Liu Y, Yoshida K, Okuda Y, Yamamoto T, Liu W, Nishiguchi S. Partial blockage of hepatocyte maturation in hepatoma-derived growth factor transgenic mice. *World J Hepatol* 2009; 1(1): 98-102 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v1/i1/98.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.98

INTRODUCTION

The liver is the major hematopoietic organ during the fetal period, and immature hepatocytes function as stromal cells which support hematopoiesis. During liver development, immature hepatocytes differentiate and acquire many functions in preparation for the metabolic conditions after birth[1,2]. The expression patterns of differentiation marker genes can represent the maturational stage of hepatocytes. Alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) is one of the early marker genes of the immature hepatocytes and its expression remarkably decreases after birth[3]. The expression of albumin, the most abundant protein synthesized by hepatocytes, begins during the mid-gestational stage, and this expression increases with the progression of liver development, especially after birth[4]. In the late-gestational stage hepatocytes begin to produce metabolic enzymes including tyrosine amino transferase (TAT) and glucose-6-phosphatase (G-6-Pase)[5,6]. Subsequently, hepatocytes

gain a fully matured phenotype, characterized by the expression of tryptophan oxygenase (TO) within two weeks after birth[7]. The expression levels of TAT and G-6-Pase peak in the neonatal liver and decrease in the adult liver. In contrast, TO is barely expressed in the fetal and neonatal liver and is highly expressed in the adult liver. Although the gene expression patterns of hepatocytes continue to alter after birth, few studies have documented the growth and differentiation of post-natal hepatocytes.

Hepatoma- derived growth factor (HDGF) is a heparin-binding protein, which has been identified from the conditioned media of HuH-7 hepatoma cells[8,9]. HDGF stimulates the proliferation of fibroblasts, endothelial cells, vascular smooth muscle cells and hepatocytes[8-11]. Its primary sequence contains nuclear localization signals and the HDGF can be transported to the nucleus, thus indicating that HDGF is a unique nuclear/growth factor[12,13]. Recently, several novel genes have been identified for proteins which share a highly homologous amino terminal region consisting of about 100 amino acids; so-called HDGF- related proteins (HRPs)[14,15]. It is thought that HDGF and HRPs form a new gene family. Although HDGF was initially identified in human hepatoma-derived cells, HDGF mRNA is expressed in various normal adult tissues of mice and humans, thus suggesting that HDGF has some physiological functions in non-tumor cells[9].

Previous studies have suggested that HDGF participates in fetal organ development and adult tissue repair as an autocrine growth factor[10,11,16]. We have shown that HDGF is highly expressed in immature fetal hepatocytes and promotes their proliferation[16]. Furthermore, HDGF is induced in two animal models of liver regeneration[17], suggesting that HDGF plays an important role in the proliferation of both fetal and adult hepatocytes. Although the involvement of HDGF in cell differentiation has not been clarified, the suppressive effects of HDGF on gut cell maturation have been suggested[18]. We generated transgenic mice which overexpressed HDGF in hepatocytes under the control of the albumin promoter/enhancer, in order to examine the functional role of HDGF in liver development. The gene expression patterns of hepatocytes in adult transgenic mice resemble those of neonatal hepatocytes of wild-type mice, thus suggesting that HDGF-overexpression partially suppresses hepatocyte maturation.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Mice

The DNA fragment covering the entire coding region of mouse HDGF was cloned into the Eco RI site of an expression vector which contains the promoter and enhancer of the mouse albumin gene[19]. A schematic representation of the constructed transgene (Alb-HDGF) is illustrated in Figure 1. Transgenic founders were generated by pronuclear injection according to standard techniques. Using a ^{32}P-labeled fragment of HDGF-specific cDNA as a probe, transgene integration and expression were identified by Southern and Northern blot analyses, respectively. C57BL/6CrSlc mice (Nihon SLC, Shizuoka, Japan) or non-transgenic mice were used as controls. All animal experiments were performed according to the guidelines of Osaka University Medical School.

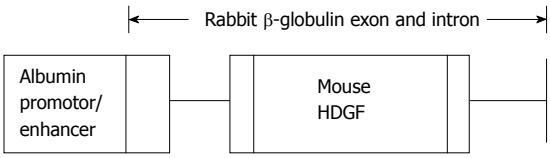


Figure 1 Schematic representation of the constructed transgene of HDGF. Schematic representation of the constructed fragments used in the generation of transgenic mice. A DNA fragment covering the entire cDNA of the mouse HDGF was inserted into the expression vector, which contains promoter and enhancer of mouse albumin gene.

Hybridization probes

The probes used for the Northern blot analysis were as follows: a 0.4 kb fragment of mouse HDGF cDNA[9], a 0.5 kb fragment of mouse G-6-Pase cDNA[20], and TO cDNA[20].

Southern blot and Northern blot analyses

Genomic DNA was isolated from individual mouse tails, and then was blotted onto nylon membranes according to standard protocols. Total RNA was extracted from liver tissues using ISOGEN (Nippon Gene, Tokyo, Japan), denatured with formamide and blotted onto nylon membranes. The mouse cDNAs described above were labeled with (α-^{32}P) dCTP using a Megaprime DNA labeling kit (Amersham Life Science, Tokyo, Japan) and then were used for hybridization[16,17].

RESULTS

An expression unit was constructed that contained the entire HDGF cDNA under the control of the mouse albumin promoter/enhancer (Alb-HDGF, Figure 1). Purified fragments were used for pronuclear injection and potential founders were analyzed for the genomic integration(s) of the transgene. Three founders containing the Alb-HDGF sequence were identified by Southern blot, and the transgenes were successfully transmitted in two lines (Figure 2A: Tg-48, and Tg-21). Northern blot analysis revealed that HDGF was highly expressed in the adult liver of Tg-48 mice, whereas HDGF expression in the liver of Tg-21 mice was almost equal to the wild-type mice (Figure 2B). We therefore used the Tg-48 mice to analyze the effects of HDGF overexpression in hepatocytes.

HDGF overexpressing mice (Tg-48) developed normally and did not show any abnormality in appearance. In addition, no obvious histological abnormality associated with the expression of HDGF was detected in these mice up to 12 mo of age (data not shown). The expression patterns of genes related to hepatocyte differentiation were investigated by Northern blotting to examine the effects of HDGF overexpression on liver development in detail. In normal mice, consistent with the previous studies, G-6-

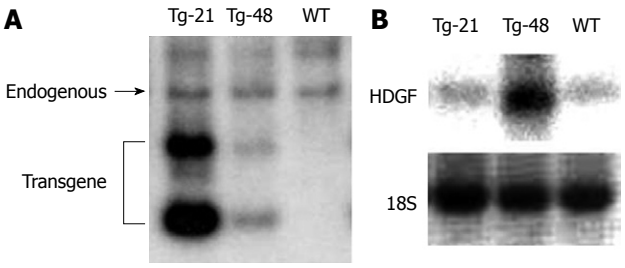


Figure 2 Genomic integration and mRNA expression of the HDGF-transgene. A: Southern blot analysis with HDGF cDNA probe. Genomic DNA was isolated from individual mouse tails and Southern blot analysis was performed according to standard methods. The bands representing endogenous HDGF and transgenes are shown. Genomic DNA of a transgenic mice (line number 21: Tg-21) contains high copy numbers of the transgene. Genomic DNA of the other transgenic mice (line number 48: Tg-48) contains low copy numbers of the transgene; B: Northern blot analysis with HDGF cDNA probe. Total RNA was isolated from liver tissues of both transgenic (Tg) and wild-type (WT) mice. Twenty micrograms of total RNA extracted was loaded and hybridized with mouse cDNA of the HDGF-specific sequence. HDGF expression was high in the liver of the Tg-48 mouse. The expression level of HDGF in the liver of Tg-21 was almost equal to the level expressed in the control liver. Ribosomal RNA of 18S is shown in the lower panel.

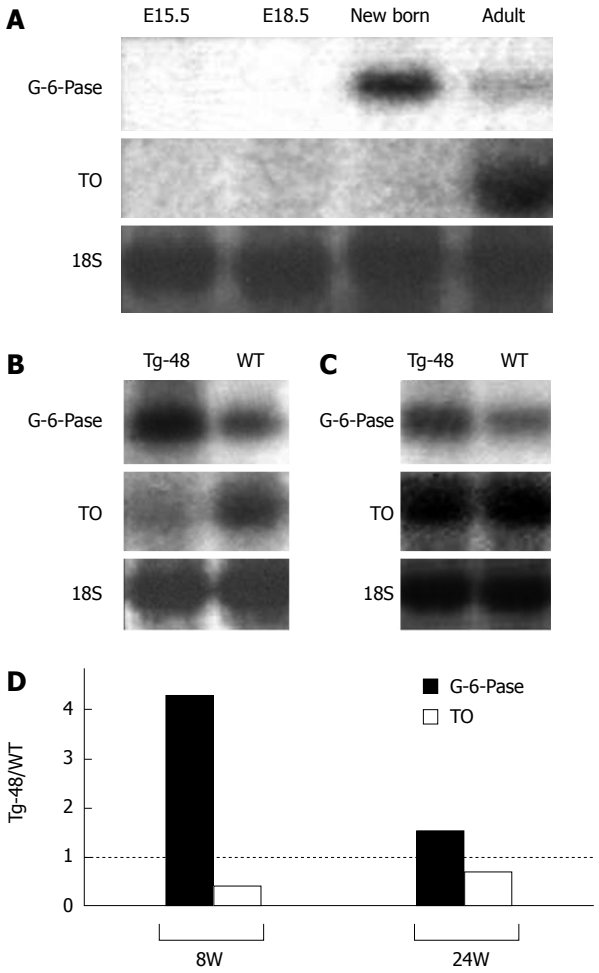


Figure 3 The expression of differentiation marker genes of hepatocytes. A: The expression of differentiation marker genes of hepatocytes in normal mice. RNA was extracted from fetal mice of E (embryonic day) 13.5 and 15.5, and postnatal mice of zero weeks (new born) and 8 wk after birth. Twenty micrograms of total RNA was loaded and hybridized with mouse cDNA probes. Ribosomal RNA of 18S is shown in the lowest panel; B: The expression of differentiation marker genes of hepatocytes in adult (8 wk) transgenic mice. In the control liver of 8-wk-old mouse, G-6-Pase expression is low and TO expression is high. In contrast, G-6-Pase expression is high and TO expression is low in the transgenic liver. Ribosomal RNA of 18S is shown in the lowest panel; C: The expression of differentiation marker genes of hepatocytes in adult (24w) transgenic mice. Unlike the 8-wk-old mouse, expression levels of G-6-Pase and TO show small differences between the transgenic liver and the normal liver. Ribosomal RNA of 18S is shown in the lowest panel. D: Densitometry measurements of Northern blot analysis. Northern blot signals in Figure 3B and 3C were measured and normalized by the internal control bands (18S). The expression levels of G-6-Pase and TO in the liver of Tg-48 mouse were compared with the levels in the control liver. The ratios of band intensities (Tg-48/WT) were graphically shown. Two independent experiments were conducted in duplicate, and similar results were obtained.

Pase expression was high in the neonatal liver and relatively low in adult (8 wk old) liver, whereas TO expression was higher in the adult liver in comparison to the neonatal liver (Figure 3A). Conversely, the expression of G-6-Pase was high, while the TO expression was low in the adult livers of transgenic mice (Figure 3B and D). These gene expression patterns observed in the livers of adult transgenic mice, were similar to the patterns observed in the neonatal stage of control livers. These findings have indicated that HDGF overexpressing hepatocytes in adult (8 wk old) transgenic mice appear to have the characteristics of hepatocytes in neonatal wild-type mice, suggesting the possible maturational retardation of hepatocytes in the transgenic mice. However, G-6-Pase expression in the transgenic liver in 24 wk-old mice decreased to the level of the normal liver, and the expression level of TO in the transgenic liver was increased almost to the level of the control liver, although small differences were still observed (Figure 3C and D). Therefore, HDGF overexpression did not completely block hepatocyte maturation and HDGF overexpressing hepatocytes could acquire almost fully differentiated phenotypes. These findings suggest that HDGF-overexpression partially suppresses the hepatocyte differentiation observed in the post-natal stage and thus causes the maturational delay of the hepatocytes.

DISCUSSION

A number of studies have suggested that HDGF is involved in the development of various organs[10,11,16,18,21]. We have demonstrated that HDGF is a unique growth factor, which is highly expressed in fetal liver and promotes fetal hepatocyte proliferation[16]. However, familial genes often compensate for the functions of other family members, and HDGF-null mice have been reported to show no obvious phenotype, perhaps as a result of the redundant functions of HDGF related genes[22]. We therefore generated the HDGF transgenic mice and examined the functional role of HDGF *in vivo* according to the gain-of-function method.

Although several other groups have also reported the involvement of HDGF in the development of various organs through its growth stimulating activity, little is known about the role of HDGF in cellular maturation. As for hepatocyte differentiation, Kamiya *et al*[20] established a primary culture system of murine fetal hepatocytes to investigate the mechanism that controls late fetal liver

development. In the culture system, the administration of Oncostain M and dexamethasone can induce hepatocyte differentiation and recapitulate the maturational process of hepatocytes ranging from mid-gestation to new-born stage. This culture system was used to clarify the involvement of HDGF in hepatocyte differentiation although down-regulation of HDGF could not induce the cellular differentiation process of the late gestation stage[16].

In the present study, the overexpression of HDGF under the control of the albumin promoter did not cause any apparent morphological abnormalities in the liver. However, the gene expression patterns showed the possibility that the maturational process of hepatocytes during the post-natal stage was disturbed. This result is consistent with the report by Lepourcelet *et al*[18], which documented that overexpression of HDGF in the mouse fetal gut explants retards epithelial differentiation, suggesting a suppressive role of HDGF in epithelial differentiation.

Several proteins strongly expressed in both tumors and fetal organs, such as carcinoembryonic antigen and AFP, are known as oncofetal proteins[23,24]. HDGF is expressed exclusively in both fetal and cancer tissues, indicating that HDGF can also be regarded as an oncofetal protein. Although several oncofetal proteins are clinically used as tumor markers, there are few proteins whose functional roles in cancer cells have so far been demonstrated. HDGF expression is strongly associated with the prognosis of many malignant diseases including pancreatic cancer, esophageal cancer, colorectal cancer, gastrointestinal stromal tumor, gastric cancer and heptocellular carcinoma (HCC)[25-31]. Recently, Lee *et al*[32] showed that individuals with HCC who shared a gene expression pattern with fetal hepatoblasts had a poor prognosis. The gene expression pattern that distinguished this subtype from other types of HCC contained the markers of oval cells (hepato-cholangio progenitor cells), thus suggesting that the HCC of this subtype may be derived from hepatic progenitor/stem cells. Two groups have shown that high expression of HDGF is closely related to the poor prognosis of HCC[30,31] and HDGF stimulates the growth of immature fetal hepatocytes[16]. Recently, we have found that HDGF is highly expressed in oval cells and promotes their proliferation (Iwamoto et al. in preparation), thereby suggesting the involvement of HDGF in the proliferation of immature hepatic cells. Therefore, HDGF may stimulate the proliferation of HCC cells derived from hepatic progenitor/stem cells and thereby cause the poor prognosis. HDGF expression may maintain the characteristics of immature cells and be associated with high growth activity of malignant cells. HDGF not only promotes hepatocyte proliferation but also inhibits their differentiation, indicating that HDGF is an oncofetal protein which participates both in the cellular growth and differentiation. Clarifying the functional role of HDGF would give us new insights into molecular mechanisms common to normal and malignant hepatic cell growth.

Since HDGF-null mice did not show any remarkable abnormalities, perhaps as a result of the compensation by HDGF-related genes, the down-regulation of HDGF should inhibit the growth of cancer cells without any serious side effects on normal organs. Therefore, HDGF is considered to be a candidate therapeutic target. Although little is known about the regulation of HDGF expression, we recently have found that Vitamin K2 negatively controls the transcription of HDGF in hepatoma cells[33]. However, the suppressive effects of the Vitamin K2 are limited and it is necessary to elucidate the whole regulation of the HDGF expression in hepatic cells, especially in hepatoma cells.

In conclusion, HDGF overexpressing transgenic mice showed the possible inhibitory role of HDGF on hepatocyte differentiation. The identification of both the regulation and signal transduction of HDGF makes it possible to obtain a better understanding of liver development, regeneration, and carcinogenesis.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank T Komori (Nagasaki University) for the helpful discussion.

COMMENTS

Background

During liver development, immature hepatocytes differentiate and acquire many metabolic functions. However, few studies have documented the growth and differentiation of post-natal hepatocytes.

Research frontiers

Hepatoma-derived growth factor (HDGF) is a heparin-binding protein, which is involved in the hepatocyte proliferation during liver development. However, the role of HDGF in hepatocyte differentiation has not been elucidated. In this study, the authors show the inhibitory role of HDGF in the hepatocyte maturation by use of the transgenic mice.

Innovations and breakthroughs

In this article, transgenic mice were established which overexpressed HDGF in hepatocytes under the transcriptional control of the mouse albumin promoter/enhancer. This is the first report about the transgenic mouse of HDGF. Furthermore, this is the first study to clarify the functional role of HDGF in the hepatocyte maturation.

Applications

The results show the possibility that HDGF may maintain the characteristics of immature cells with high growth activity. This study might represent a future strategy for the prevention or treatment of the diseases by the targeting of HDGF.

Terminology

HDGF is a heparin-binding acidic glycoprotein consisted of 240 amino acids, which is identified from the conditioned media of HuH-7 hepatoma cells. HDGF plays an important role in the organ development and tissue repair. HDGF has been demonstrated to be a unique growth factor involved in liver development, regeneration and carcinogenesis.

Peer review

On the whole, this study holds novelty and importance in understanding the process of hepatocyte maturation. While the study seemed well conducted, it is not sure from the text whether repeated analysis of Western blot has been conducted and to what extent the G-6-Pase and TO expressions were raised or dropped with time. I suggest densitometry measurements of repeated Western blot analysis and to provide a bar chart on the normalized readings.

REFERENCES

1 **Panduro A**, Shalaby F, Shafritz DA. Changing patterns of transcriptional and post-transcriptional control of liver-specific gene expression during rat development. *Genes Dev* 1987; **1**: 1172-1182

2 **Derman E**, Krauter K, Walling L, Weinberger C, Ray M,

Darnell JE Jr. Transcriptional control in the production of liver-specific mRNAs. *Cell* 1981; **23**: 731-739
3 **Shiojiri N**, Lemire JM, Fausto N. Cell lineages and oval cell progenitors in rat liver development. *Cancer Res* 1991; **51**: 2611-2620
4 **Tilghman SM**, Belayew A. Transcriptional control of the murine albumin/alpha-fetoprotein locus during development. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1982; **79**: 5254-5257
5 **Greengard O**. The developmental formation of enzymes in rat liver. In: Litwack G, editor. Biochemical Actions of Hormones. New York: Academic Press Inc, 1970: 53-87
6 **Haber BA**, Chin S, Chuang E, Buikhuisen W, Naji A, Taub R. High levels of glucose-6-phosphatase gene and protein expression reflect an adaptive response in proliferating liver and diabetes. *J Clin Invest* 1995; **95**: 832-841
7 **Nagao M**, Nakamura T, Ichihara A. Developmental control of gene expression of tryptophan 2,3-dioxygenase in neonatal rat liver. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1986; **867**: 179-186
8 **Nakamura H**, Kambe H, Egawa T, Kimura Y, Ito H, Hayashi E, Yamamoto H, Sato J, Kishimoto S. Partial purification and characterization of human hepatoma-derived growth factor. *Clin Chim Acta* 1989; **183**: 273-284
9 **Nakamura H**, Izumoto Y, Kambe H, Kuroda T, Mori T, Kawamura K, Yamamoto H, Kishimoto T. Molecular cloning of complementary DNA for a novel human hepatoma-derived growth factor. Its homology with high mobility group-1 protein. *J Biol Chem* 1994; **269**: 25143-25149
10 **Oliver JA**, Al-Awqati Q. An endothelial growth factor involved in rat renal development. *J Clin Invest* 1998; **102**: 1208-1219
11 **Everett AD**, Lobe DR, Matsumura ME, Nakamura H, McNamara CA. Hepatoma-derived growth factor stimulates smooth muscle cell growth and is expressed in vascular development. *J Clin Invest* 2000; **105**: 567-575
12 **Kishima Y**, Yamamoto H, Izumoto Y, Yoshida K, Enomoto H, Yamamoto M, Kuroda T, Ito H, Yoshizaki K, Nakamura H. Hepatoma-derived growth factor stimulates cell growth after translocation to the nucleus by nuclear localization signals. *J Biol Chem* 2002; **277**: 10315-10322
13 **Everett AD**, Stoops T, McNamara CA. Nuclear targeting is required for hepatoma-derived growth factor-stimulated mitogenesis in vascular smooth muscle cells. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276**: 37564-37568
14 **Izumoto Y**, Kuroda T, Harada H, Kishimoto T, Nakamura H. Hepatoma-derived growth factor belongs to a gene family in mice showing significant homology in the amino terminus. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1997; **238**: 26-32
15 **Ikegame K**, Yamamoto M, Kishima Y, Enomoto H, Yoshida K, Suemura M, Kishimoto T, Nakamura H. A new member of a hepatoma-derived growth factor gene family can translocate to the nucleus. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1999; **266**: 81-87
16 **Enomoto H**, Yoshida K, Kishima Y, Kinoshita T, Yamamoto M, Everett AD, Miyajima A, Nakamura H. Hepatoma-derived growth factor is highly expressed in developing liver and promotes fetal hepatocyte proliferation. *Hepatology* 2002; **36**: 1519-1527
17 **Enomoto H**, Nakamura H, Liu W, Yoshida K, Okuda Y, Imanishi H, Saito M, Shimomura S, Hada T, Nishiguchi S. Hepatoma-derived growth factor is induced in liver regeneration. *Hepatol Res* 2009; **39**: 988-997
18 **Lepourcelet M**, Tou L, Cai L, Sawada J, Lazar AJ, Glickman JN, Williamson JA, Everett AD, Redston M, Fox EA, Nakatani Y, Shivdasani RA. Insights into developmental mechanisms and cancers in the mammalian intestine derived from serial analysis of gene expression and study of the hepatoma-derived growth factor (HDGF). *Development* 2005; **132**: 415-427
19 **Pinkert CA**, Ornitz DM, Brinster RL, Palmiter RD. An albumin enhancer located 10 kb upstream functions along with its promoter to direct efficient, liver-specific expression in transgenic mice. *Genes Dev* 1987; **1**: 268-276
20 **Kamiya A**, Kinoshita T, Ito Y, Matsui T, Morikawa Y, Senba E, Nakashima K, Taga T, Yoshida K, Kishimoto T, Miyajima A. Fetal liver development requires a paracrine action of oncostatin M through the gp130 signal transducer. *EMBO J* 1999; **18**: 2127-2136
21 **Cilley RE**, Zgleszewski SE, Chinoy MR. Fetal lung development: airway pressure enhances the expression of developmental genes. *J Pediatr Surg* 2000; **35**: 113-118; discussion 119
22 **Gallitzendoerfer R**, Abouzied MM, Hartmann D, Dobrowolski R, Gieselmann V, Franken S. Hepatoma-derived growth factor (HDGF) is dispensable for normal mouse development. *Dev Dyn* 2008; **237**: 1875-1885
23 **Orell SR**, Dowling KD. Oncofetal antigens as tumor markers in the cytologic diagnosis of effusions. *Acta Cytol* 1983; **27**: 625-629
24 **Garrett PE**, Kurtz SR. Clinical utility of oncofetal proteins and hormones as tumor markers. *Med Clin North Am* 1986; **70**: 1295-1306
25 **Uyama H**, Tomita Y, Nakamura H, Nakamori S, Zhang B, Hoshida Y, Enomoto H, Okuda Y, Sakon M, Aozasa K, Kawase I, Hayashi N, Monden M. Hepatoma-derived growth factor is a novel prognostic factor for patients with pancreatic cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2006; **12**: 6043-6048
26 **Yamamoto S**, Tomita Y, Hoshida Y, Morii E, Yasuda T, Doki Y, Aozasa K, Uyama H, Nakamura H, Monden M. Expression level of hepatoma-derived growth factor correlates with tumor recurrence of esophageal carcinoma. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2007; **14**: 2141-2149
27 **Hu TH**, Lin JW, Chen HH, Liu LF, Chuah SK, Tai MH. The expression and prognostic role of hepatoma-derived growth factor in colorectal stromal tumors. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2009; **52**: 319-326
28 **Chang KC**, Tai MH, Lin JW, Wang CC, Huang CC, Hung CH, Chen CH, Lu SN, Lee CM, Changchien CS, Hu TH. Hepatoma-derived growth factor is a novel prognostic factor for gastrointestinal stromal tumors. *Int J Cancer* 2007; **121**: 1059-1065
29 **Yamamoto S**, Tomita Y, Hoshida Y, Takiguchi S, Fujiwara Y, Yasuda T, Doki Y, Yoshida K, Aozasa K, Nakamura H, Monden M. Expression of hepatoma-derived growth factor is correlated with lymph node metastasis and prognosis of gastric carcinoma. *Clin Cancer Res* 2006; **12**: 117-122
30 **Yoshida K**, Tomita Y, Okuda Y, Yamamoto S, Enomoto H, Uyama H, Ito H, Hoshida Y, Aozasa K, Nagano H, Sakon M, Kawase I, Monden M, Nakamura H. Hepatoma-derived growth factor is a novel prognostic factor for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2006; **13**: 159-167
31 **Hu TH**, Huang CC, Liu LF, Lin PR, Liu SY, Chang HW, Changchien CS, Lee CM, Chuang JH, Tai MH. Expression of hepatoma-derived growth factor in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer* 2003; **98**: 1444-1456
32 **Lee JS**, Heo J, Libbrecht L, Chu IS, Kaposi-Novak P, Calvisi DF, Mikaelyan A, Roberts LR, Demetris AJ, Sun Z, Nevens F, Roskams T, Thorgeirsson SS. A novel prognostic subtype of human hepatocellular carcinoma derived from hepatic progenitor cells. *Nat Med* 2006; **12**: 410-416
33 **Yamamoto T**, Nakamura H, Liu W, Cao K, Yoshikawa S, Enomoto H, Iwata Y, Koh N, Saito M, Imanishi H, Shimomura S, Iijima H, Hada T, Nishiguchi S. Involvement of hepatoma-derived growth factor in the growth inhibition of hepatocellular carcinoma cells by vitamin K(2). *J Gastroenterol* 2009; **44**: 228-235

S- Editor Zhang HN **L- Editor** Hughes D **E- Editor** Ma WH

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.103

World J Hepatol 2009 October 31; 1(1): 103-109
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

CASE REPORT

Synchronous development of HCC and CCC in the same subsegment of the liver in a patient with type C liver cirrhosis

Takuya Watanabe, Jun Sakata, Takashi Ishikawa, Yoshio Shirai, Takeyasu Suda, Haruka Hirono, Katsuhiko Hasegawa, Kenji Soga, Koichi Shibasaki, Yukifumi Saito, Hajime Umezu

Takuya Watanabe, Haruka Hirono, Katsuhiko Hasegawa, Kenji Soga, Koichi Shibasaki, Department of Internal Medicine and Gastroenterology, Medical Hospital, The Nippon Dental University School of Life Dentistry at Niigata, 1-8, Hamauracho, Chuo-ku, Niigata 951-8580, Japan
Jun Sakata, Takashi Ishikawa, Takeyasu Suda, Department of Surgery, Medical Hospital, The Nippon Dental University School of Life Dentistry at Niigata, 1-8, Hamauracho, Chuo-ku, Niigata 951-8580, Japan
Yoshio Shirai, Department of Surgery, Niigata University Graduate School of Medical and Dental Sciences, 1-754, Asahimachidori, Chuo-ku, Niigata 951-8510, Japan
Yukifumi Saito, Saito Clinic for Internal Medicine and Gastroenterology, 1-7-11, Jousho, Konan-ku, Niigata 950-0136, Japan
Hajime Umezu, Division of Cellular and Molecular Pathology, Niigata University Graduate School Medical and Dental Sciences, 1-754, Asahimachidori, Chuo-ku, Niigata 951-8510, Japan
Author contributions: Watanabe T wrote the paper; Watanabe T, Sakata J, Ishikawa T, Shirai Y, Suda T, Hirono H, Hasegawa K, Soga K, Shibasaki K, Saito Y and Umezu H performed examinations, diagnosis and therapies for the patient who has been reported in this paper; Watanabe T, Suda T, Hirono H, Hasegawa K, Soga K and Shibasaki K finally approved the submission of the paper.
Correspondence to: Takuya Watanabe, MD, PhD, Assistant professor, Department of Internal Medicine and Gastroenterology, Medical Hospital, The Nippon Dental University School of Life Dentistry at Niigata, 1-8 Hamauracho, Chu-o-ku, Niigata 951-8580, Japan. nabetaku@dia-net.ne.jp
Telephone: +81-25-2671500 Fax: +81-25-2671582
Received: April 8, 2009 Revised: September 2, 2009
Accepted: September 9, 2009
Published online: October 31, 2009

Abstract

As a result of having undergone computed tomography (CT), a 75-year-old woman with type-C liver cirrhosiswas shown to have two tumors on the ventral and dorsal sides of subsegment 3 (S3). The tumor on the ventral side was diagnosed as a classic hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), while that on the dorsal side was considered atypical for a HCC. Although the indocyanine green (ICG) findings indicated poor hepatic reserve, the prothrombin time (PT) was relatively good. An operation was performed in February 2007; however, this resulted in exploratory laparotomy. Dynamic CT performed 12 mo after the operation revealed that the tumor on the dorsal side of S3 had apparently increased. The marginal portion of the tumor was shown to be in the early and parenchymal phases, while the internal portion was found to have grown only slightly in the delayed phase. We diagnosed this tumor as a cholangiocellular carcinoma (CCC). S3 subsegmentectomy was performed in April 2008. The tumor on the ventral side was pathologically diagnosed as a moderately differentiated HCC, and that on the dorsal side was diagnosed as a CCC. We can therefore report a rare case of synchronous development of HCC and CCC in the same subsegment of the liver in a patient with type-C liver cirrhosis. We also add a literature review for all the reported cases published in Japan and around the world, and summarize the features of double cancer exhibiting both HCC and CCC.

Key words: Double cancer; Hepatocellular carcinoma; Cholangiocellular carcinoma; Synchronous; Literature review

Peer reviewer: Stephen Anderson Harrison, MD, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Department of Medicine, Brooke Army Medical Center, 3851 Roger Brooke Drive, Fort Sam Houston, TX 78234, United States

Watanabe T, Sakata J, Ishikawa T, Shirai Y, Suda T, Hirono H, Hasegawa K, Soga K, Shibasaki K, Saito Y, Umezu H. Synchronous development of HCC and CCC in the same subsegment of the liver in a patient with type C liver cirrhosis. *World J Hepatol* 2009; 1(1): 103-109 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v1/i1/103.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v1.i1.103

INTRODUCTION

The incidence of synchronous development of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) and cholangiocellular carcinoma (CCC) (combined HCC and CCC) has been reported to be low (constituting between 0.54% and 0.70% of primary liver cancers)[1-3]. Allen and Lisa defined three types of HCC-CCC: (a) separate masses composed of either hepatocellular or cholangiocellular components (mixed type); (b) contiguous but independent masses of hepatocellular and cholangiocellular components (combined type); and (c) an intimate intermingling of hepatocellular and glandular elements (double cancer)[4]. A literature search of Japana Centra Revuo Medicina found 18 cases[5-22] of synchronous double cancer with HCC and CCC, while a search of MEDLINE found only 16 such cases[13,23-36] (including 13 cases reported in Japan). In this report, we describe a rare case of synchronous development of HCC and CCC in the same subsegment of the liver in a patient with type-C liver cirrhosis. We also review all the previously reported cases of synchronous double cancer.

CASE REPORT

A 75-year-old woman diagnosed with chronic hepatitis or liver cirrhosis (type C) had been followed as an outpatient since 1982. Although endoscopic variceal ligation and endoscopic injection sclerotherapy (EIS) had been carried out several times, the esophageal varices ruptured in December 2002. Five EIS treatments were thenfollowed, after which the condition of the patient maintained static, that is, without the esophageal varices showing red.

Dynamic computed tomography (CT) of the liver performed on December 18, 2006, revealed two tumors, each 1 cm or less in diameter, on the ventral and dorsal sides of S3 (Figure 1A-C). The patient was hospitalized for further examination and therapy in January 2007. We could not detect the tumors by ultrasonography and were unable to perform a tumor biopsy. With abdominal angiography, the left hepatic arterial angiogram (LHAG) showed no tumor stain on S3 and the superior mesenteric arterial angiogram (SMAG) showed a large shunt through the epigastric vein during the portal phase (Figure 1D). CT during arterial portography showed a 1 cm defect on the ventral side of S3; however, no defect was evident on the dorsal side (Figure 1E). Because CT had shown the tumor on the ventral side of S3 to be densely enhanced in the early phase and washed out in the delayed phase, we diagnosed the tumor as a classic HCC. The values for indocyanine green (ICG) dye retention at 15 min (R15) and elimination (K) were 32.0% and 0.070, respectively. However, because prothrombin time (PT) was 82.7%, indicating good hepatic reserve, the operation was performed in February 2007. Since the epigastric veins were overdeveloped, the liver appeared very cirrhotic and we were unable to detect the two masses by intraoperative ultrasonography. The first operation therefore resulted in exploratory laparotomy.

Dynamic CT of the liver performed 12 mo after the first operation revealed the tumor on the ventral side of S3 to be a classic HCC. Furthermore, the tumor on the dorsal side of S3 had apparently increased to 3 cm or less in diameter. It was discovered that the peripheral portion of the tumor showed typical signs of early and parenchymal phases, while the internal portion was slightly and gradually enhanced in the delayed phase. The peripheral portion of the tumor was typically found to be enhanced in the early and parenchymal phases, while the internal portion was found to be slightly and gradually enhanced in the delayed phase. (Figure 2A-C). Subcutaneous ultrasonography of the abdomen revealed a hyperechoic mass, 14 mm in diameter, at the site of the tumor on the ventral side, a finding characteristic of HCC rich in fat (Figure 2D). The tumor on the dorsal side of S3 was also represented by a hyperechoic mass, 30 mm or less in diameter, with irregular and unclear margins, but this finding was not typical for HCC (Figure 2D). In abdominal angiography, the LHAG showed no tumor stain and because the shunt through the epigastric vein was resected at the first operation, the SMAG did not show this shunt. 12 mo after the first operation, the patient's platelet count was 8.4 $\times 10^4/mm^3$. The ICG R15 and K values were 35.9% and 0.066, respectively; however, PT was 81.3%. Although the ICG findings indicated poor hepatic reserve, PT was relatively good. We diagnosed the tumor on the ventral side of S3 as HCC and that on the dorsal side of S3 as a CCC tumor. Because of the poor hepatic reserve, lateral segmentectomy was ruled out.

S3 subsegmentectomy was performed in April 2008 (Figure 3A and B). The tumor on the ventral side was pathologically diagnosed as a moderately differentiated HCC (with nodular, trabecular, and plate-like components) (Figure 3C) and that on the dorsal side was diagnosed as CCC (diffuse type showing a vestigial remnant of the tumor) (Figure 3D). Pathological examination also confirmed that the larger CCC tumor on the dorsal side was partially in contact with the HCC tumor on the ventral side of S3 (Figure not shown). We administered two courses of chemotherapy with gemcitabine hydrochloride (Gemzar®, Eli Lilly Japan, Kobe, Japan) followed by oral administration of S-1 (TS-1®, Taiho Pharma, Tokyo, Japan).

DISCUSSION

The present report describes a case of synchronous development of HCC and CCC in the same subsegment of the liver. Only three similar cases[19,22,30] have been previously reported, and this condition is considered to be very rare. According to several earlier reports[37-39], hepatitis C virus (HCV)-related chronic hepatitis and cirrhosis are major risk factors for both HCC and CCC. The patient described in this report was found to be positive for HCV.

Earlier research has suggested the existence of amphi-potential progenitor cells that can differentiate into hepatocytes as well as cholangiocytes[40].

The following points may explain the mechanism un-

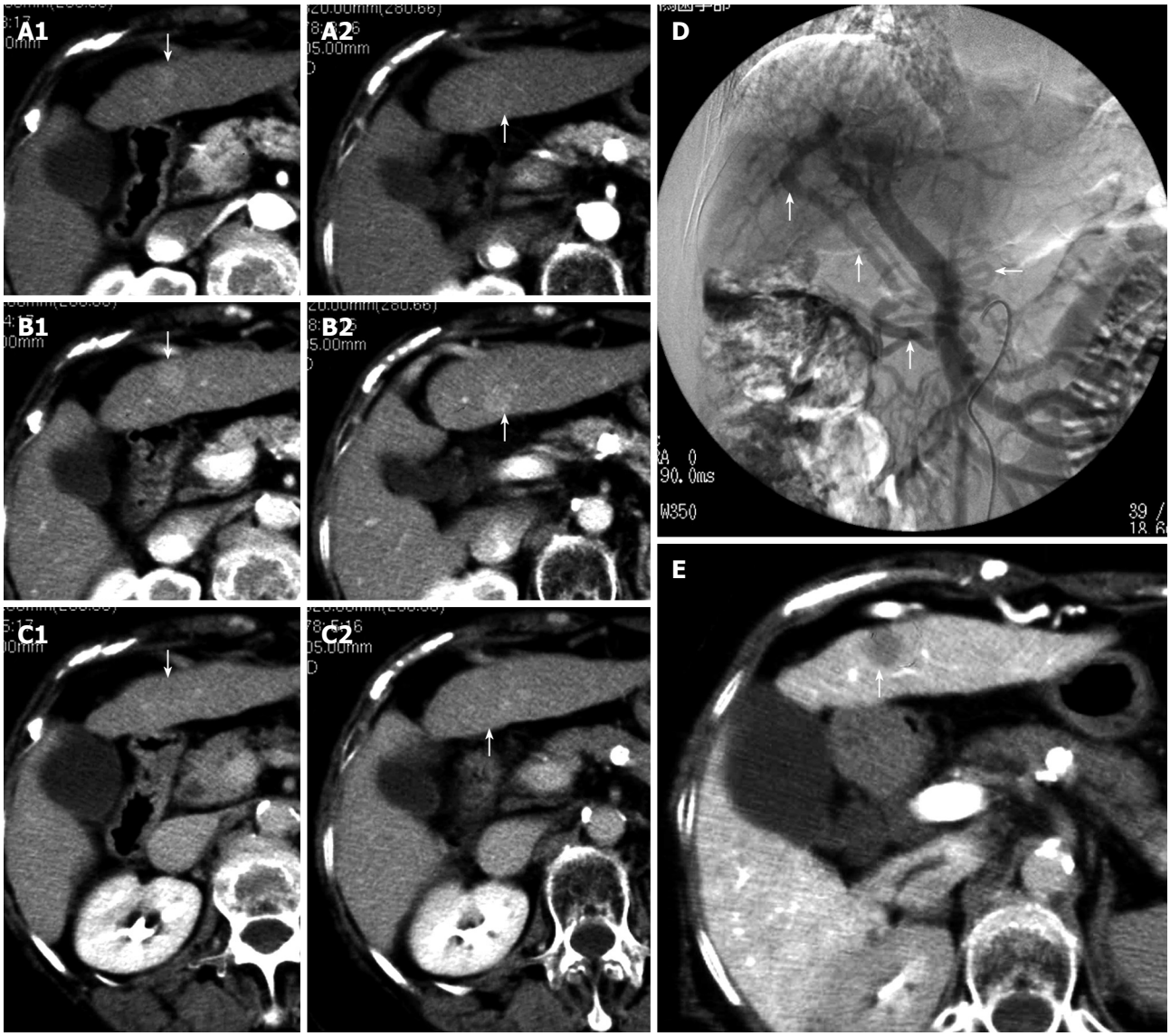


Figure 1 Dynamic computed tomography findings at the onset of double cancer with hepatocellular and cholangiocellular carcinomas. Two tumors, ~1 cm in diameter, were detected on the ventral and dorsal sides of S3. Arrows indicate the tumors (A1, A2 arterial phase; B1, B2 parenchymal phase; C1, C2 delayed phase). Angiographic findings at the onset of double cancer; D: A superior mesenteric arterial angiogram showing a large shunt through the epigastric vein during the portal phase (the arrows); E: Computed tomography during arterial portography (CTAP) showing a ~1 cm defect on the ventral side of S3 (the arrow), which was diagnosed as a classic hepatocellular carcinoma. No defect can be seen on the dorsal side of S3.

derlying the development of combined HCC and CCC: (1) during the differentiation of the tumor into the two cancer phenotypes HCC and CCC, a trigger may cause the amphi-potential progenitor cells to turn malignant, undergo proliferation, and become tumorous in the same lesion, and (2) the cells that have already differentiated and matured into hepatocytes and cholangiocytes may become malignant and undergo proliferation in the presence of chronic liver inflammation. In the present case, although the cells involved belonged to the same subsegment of the liver, these cells could have metachronously turned malignant, undergone proliferation, and become tumorous, resulting in a synchronous double cancer (HCC-CCC) by either of the mechanisms described above.

In the present case, on performing dynamic CT in December, 2006, HCC and CCC were observed as being situated far from each other. However, we had pathologically confirmed that the larger CCC on the dorsal side was partially in contact with the HCC on the ventral side of S3 in the resected specimen, thus demonstrating that these tumors constituted a combined type of HCC-CCC, which had developed from different lesions in the liver. In this paper we have described the entire course of the two tumors involved in a combined type of HCC-CCC, making these findings valuable for research as well as clinical purposes.

The usual gross appearance of a mass-forming CCC is a large, white, firm tumor that is solid and fibrous, with a sclerotic appearance on the cut surface of the specimen, accompanied by a frequent finding of dense fibrous stranding in the central portion[41]. In most cases of mass-forming CCCs, ultrasonography reveals a hypoechoic mass with satellite nodules around the tumor[42]. However, the echo patterns are diverse and non-specific[43]. Dynamic

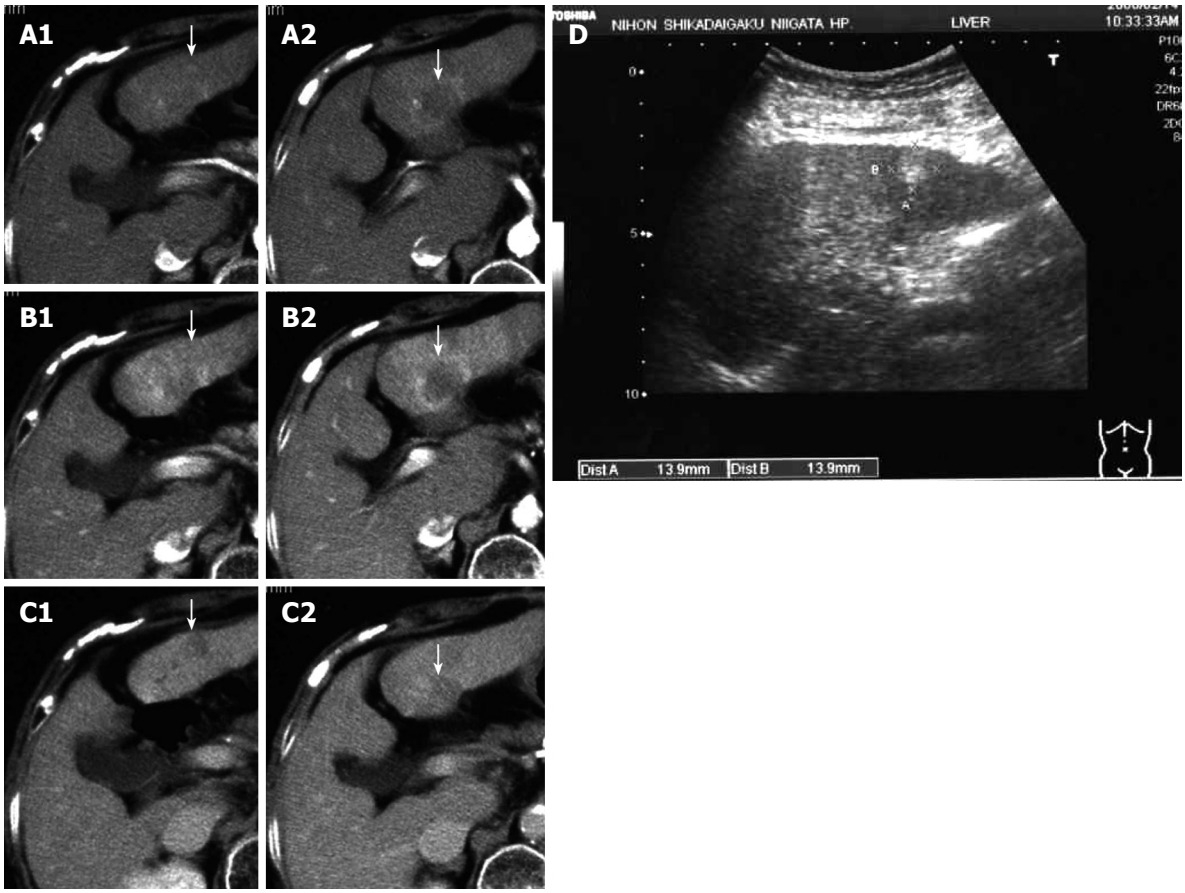


Figure 2 Dynamic computed tomography performed 12 mo after the first operation. The tumor on the ventral side of S3 appears to be a classic hepatocellular carcinoma and that on the dorsal side of S3 appears to be increased to ~3 cm in diameter. Typical findings including enhancement of the peripheral portion of the tumor in the early (A1) and parenchymal (B2) phases, and the slight and gradual enhancement of the internal portion in the delayed phase were observed (C2). Arrows indicate the tumors (A1, A2 arterial phase; B1, B2 parenchymal phase; C1, C2 delayed phase). Subcutaneous ultrasonography performed 12 mo after the first operation (D); The tumor on the ventral side of S3 is represented by a hyperechoic mass, 14 mm in diameter, a finding characteristic of hepatocellular carcinoma rich in fat. The tumor on the dorsal side of S3 is also represented by a hyperechoic lesion, ~30 mm in diameter, with irregular and unclear margins. Arrows indicate the tumors (D).

CT and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) reveal rim-like or band-like peripheral contrast enhancement of variable thickness around the tumor during the early phase, with progressive and concentric filling of the contrast material at a later phase[44]. CCCs appear hypointense on T1-weighted images and hyperintense on T2-weighted images[45,46].

In the present case, the size of the CCC was small (1 cm in diameter) when first discovered. We could not detect the tumor by ultrasonography because of overdeveloped epigastric veins, and were unable to identify the typical findings of an enhanced marginal portion in the early phase and the gradual enhancement of the internal portion in the delayed phase. The existence of this tumor was therefore questionable. However, abdominal ultrasonography performed 12 mo after the first operation showed a heterogeneously hyperechoic area with irregular margins on the dorsal side of S3. Dynamic CT of the liver performed during the same period showed a rim-like or band-like enhancement around the tumor in the early phase and a slight enhancement of the central portion of the tumor in the delayed phase. We preoperatively diagnosed the tumor on the dorsal side of S3 as a CCC. Early diagnosis of CCCs is very important for an improvement in prognosis. We hope that imaging studies will eventually be conducted for preoperative diagnosis of CCCs that are $\leqslant$ 1 cm in diameter.

In the present case, however, because of progressive liver cirrhosis, with poor hepatic reserve and an enlarged lateral segment of the liver, we performed an S3 subsegmentectomy. Because type-C liver cirrhosis generally results in poor hepatic reserve, it is imperative to consistently monitor the development of not only HCCs, but also CCCs, and facilitate early detection and treatment by curative hepatectomy.

Literature review of reported synchronous double cancer cases with HCC and CCC

Synchronous double cancer is particularly rare in the case of combined HCC and CCC. A literature search of Japana Centra Revuo Medicina database, version 4 (systematic literature search system through a computer web site for Japanese literature) found 18 cases[5-22] of synchronous double cancer with HCC and CCC, while a search of MEDLINE found only 16 such cases[13,23-36] (including 13 cases reported in Japan). The Japana

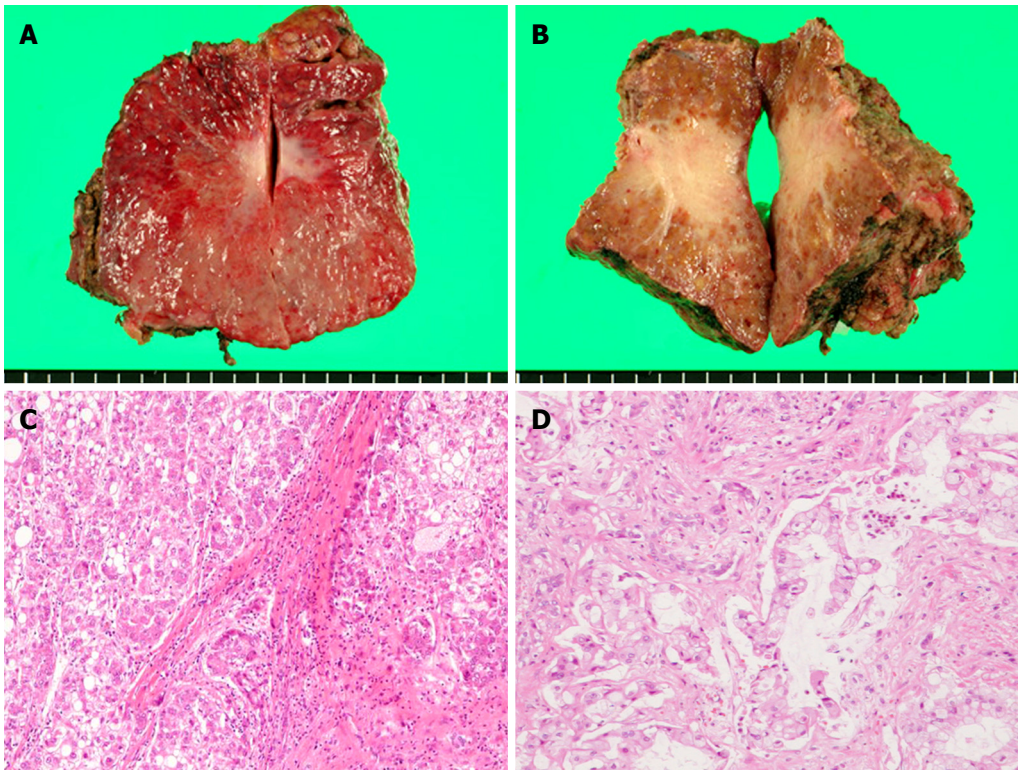


Figure 3 Gross findings of the resected S3 subsegment. A: The cut surface of the tumor on the ventral side of S3; B: The cut surface of the tumor on the dorsal side of S3. Histopathological findings of the two resected tumors; C: The tumor on the ventral side was pathologically diagnosed as a moderately differentiated hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) (with nodular, trabecular, and plate-like components); D: The tumor on the dorsal side was pathologically diagnosed as a cholangiocellular carcinoma (CCC) (diffuse type showing a vestigial remnant of the tumor).

Centra Revuo Medicina database available for analysis has a good reputation for accuracy and completeness. We review all 33 cases in the following section (Table 1). (A literature search of both Japana Centra Revuo Medicina and MEDLINE found one duplicated case, which Yoshikawa *et al*[13] have reported).

Since Mitsui's report in 1986[5], a total of 33 cases of synchronous double cancer with HCC and CCC have been reported in MEDLINE and Japana Centra Revuo Medicina databases. The patients were aged 66.7 ± 7.4 years (mean ± SD) and the male to female ratio was 30:3. Twenty-four out of 33 cases (72.7%) were positive for HCV and many double cancers developed in livers with HCV infections. Three out of 33 cases (9.4%) were positive for HBs antigen and about 10% of double cancers developed in livers with HBV infections. Two out of 33 cases (6.1%) had neither HBV nor HCV infection, while one had both HBV and HCV infections. Double cancer with HCC and CCC tended to develop in livers with HCV infection, followed by HBV infection, as in HCC. In contrast, Zhang *et al*[47] reported that 7 out of 12 cases (58.3%) of the combined type (or mixed type) of HCC and CCC were positive for HBs antigen, but no cases were positive for HCV. It is suggested that the background of double cancer is distinctly different from that of the combined (or mixed) type HCC and CCC. High levels of serum carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) (> 3.0 ng/mL), CA19-9 (> 37 ng/mL), and α fetoprotein (AFP) (> 10 ng/mL) were detected in 11 of 24 cases (45.8%), 12 of 21 cases (57.1%), and 25 of 33 cases (75.8%) (except unknown cases), respectively. Regarding the localization of HCCs and CCCs, only 3 cases of double cancer that developed in the same subsegment of the liver have been reported. In addition, 5 out of 33 cases (15.2%) of double cancer revealed synchronous development in the segments of the liver accessed by the same portal vein (for example, in S5 and S8, or in S2 and S3). In the cases of these double cancers, it is conceivable that (1) the amphi-potential progenitor tumor cells disseminated to a different subsegment in the same portal vein-accessed segment of the liver *via* the portal vein before they differentiated to either HCC or CCC, and double cancer (HCC-CCC) developed in the same segment of the liver or that (2) in a different subsegment in the same portal vein-accessed segment of the liver, hepatocytes and cholangiocytes with HCV infection became cancerous and underwent proliferation. Twenty-two of 33 cases (66.7%) with double cancer exhibited synchronous development in a different portal vein-accessed segment of the liver. In these cases, it is conceivable that the second mechanism was responsible for the development of the double cancer (multicentric development of HCC). Further laboratory studies are needed to clarify and explain the mechanisms of development of synchronous double cancer.

Across the 33 previously reported cases, the mean maximum size of the HCC and CCC tumors (if the tumors were multiple) were 3.9 ± 2.7 cm and 3.3 ± 3.0 cm,

Table 1 Clinical status of reported cases of synchronous double cancer with hepatocellular carcinoma and cholangiocellular carcinoma

Clinical status	Compiled numbers
Age, in years (mean ± SD) (range)	66.7 ± 7.4 (51-84) (y/o)
Sex	Total: 33
Male	30 (90.9%)
Female	3 (9.1%)
Anti-HCV	Total: 33
Positive	24 (72.7%)
Negative	9 (27.3%)
HBs antigen	Total: 33
Positive	3 (9.1%)
Negative	30 (90.9%)
	Total: 33
Neither HBV nor HCV infection	2 (6.1%)
	Total: 33
Both positive HBV and HCV infections	1 (3.0%)
Tumor markers	The number/Total number
High levels of CEA (> 3.0 ng/mL)	11/24 (45.8%)
High levels of CA19-9 (> 37 ng/mL)	12/21 (57.1%)
High levels of AFP (> 10 ng/mL)	25/33 (75.8%)
Localization of HCCs and CCCs	Total: 33
In the same subsegment	3 (9.1%)
In the segment of the liver accessed by the same portal vein	5 (15.2%)
In a segment of the liver accessed by a different portal vein	22 (66.7%)
Mean maximum size of the tumors (mean ± SD) (range)	Total: 33
HCC	3.9 ± 2.7 (0.8-10.0) (cm)
CCC	3.3 ± 3.0 (0.6-14.0) (cm)
Pathological diagnosis of the non-cancerous portions of the liver	Total: 33
Chronic hepatitis	19 (57.6%)
Liver cirrhosis	12 (36.4%)
Therapeutic procedures	Total: 33
Surgery	24 (72.8%)
TAE	2 (6.1%)
Hepatic arterial infusion therapy	1 (3.0%)
Surgery plus PEIT	1 (3.0%)
Surgery plus MCT	1 (3.0%)
Liver transplantation	1 (3.0%)
Unknown	3 (9.1%)

y/o: Years old; HCV: Hepatitis C virus; HB(V): Hepatitis B (virus); CEA: Carcinoembryonic antigen; AFP: α fetoprotein; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; CCC: Cholangiocellular carcinoma; TAE: Transcatheter arterial embolization; PEIT: Percutaneous ethanol injection therapy; MCT: Microwave coagulation therapy.

respectively. According to the pathological diagnosis of the non-cancerous portions of the liver, 19 cases (57.6%) were diagnosed with chronic hepatitis and 12 (36.4%) with liver cirrhosis. Double cancers were more likely to develop from chronic hepatitis than from liver cirrhosis. We think that the cases that undergo appropriate examinations and successful treatments because of their higher hepatic reserve tended to get reported and documented. There is thus a possibility of bias in the selection of the reported cases. Most such cases underwent surgery (24 out of 30 cases or 80.0%); the other treatment techniques performed included transcatheter arterial embolization, hepatic arterial infusion therapy, surgery plus percutaneous ethanol injection therapy, and surgery plus microwave coagulation therapy and liver transplantation. The surgical procedure is planned according to the hepatic reserve; many cases of double cancer with HCC and CCC were treated surgically by curative resection.

REFERENCES

1 **Yamaoka Y**, Ikai I, Sakai Y, Okita K, Omata M, Kojiro M, Kobayashi K, Nakanuma Y, Nikawa T, Makuuchi M. Report of the 15th nationwide follow-up survey of primary liver cancer in Japan (In Japanese). *Kanzo* 2003; **44**: 157-175

2 **Ikai I**, Arii S, Ichida T, Okita K, Omata M, Kojiro M, Takayasu K, Nakanuma Y, Makuuchi M, Matsuyama Y, Yamaoka Y. Report of the 16th follow-up survey of primary liver cancer. *Hepatol Res* 2005; **32**: 163-172

3 **Ikai I**, Arii S, Okazaki M, Okita K, Omata M, Kojiro M, Takayasu K, Nakanuma Y, Makuuchi M, Matsuyama Y, Monden M, Kudo M. Report of the 17th Nationwide Follow-up Survey of Primary Liver Cancer in Japan. *Hepatol Res* 2007; **37**: 676-691

4 **Allen RA**, Lisa JR. Combined liver cell and bile duct carcinoma. *Am J Pathol* 1949; **25**: 647-655

5 **Mitsui T**, Makuuchi M, Kurohiji T. [Resected case of primary liver cancer with separate two tumors of hepatocellular carcinoma and cholangiocellular carcinoma.] *Kanzo* 1986; **27**: 64-69

6 **Okada S**, Hayashi G, Matsuzaki O, Wakatsuki S, Sumida M. [A case of combined hepatocellular and cholangiocellular carcinoma with ante mortem diagnosis from image findings.] *Kanzo* 1990; **31**: 1228-1234

7 **Taniguchi M**, Yoshikawa K, Hashimoto T, Yamaguchi T, Dousei T, Moriguchi A, Ueda H, Taketani S, Utsumi T, Shhara H, Kawano K, Tsujimura T. [Resected case of combined type of hepatoma contained two components of hepatocellular and cholangiocellular carcinomas.] (In Japanese). *Jpan J Gastroenterol Surg* 1994; **27**: 1085-1089

8 **Sato Y**, Ikeda Y, Hara H, Nakamura A, Morishita S, Enomoto K, Inomoto T, Kariya T, Ban K, Imanari T, Yamamoto T, Inoue Y. [A case of double cancer of hepatocellular carcinoma and cholangiocarcinoma diagnosed by follow-up examination of chronic hepatitis C.] *Liver Cancer* 1995; **1**: 59-63

9 **Ide Y**, Hashimoto T, Yanagibashi K, Konishi Y, Tani T, Kajiwara T, Ibuki Y, Orino A, Shirane H. [A case of combined hepatocellular and cholangiocellular carcinoma.] *Shokaki Gazo* 1999; **1**: 841-846

10 **Oiya H**, Kioka K, Nakai T, Aoki T, Kawasaki Y, Kurai O, Nebiki H, Okawa K, Oka H, Harihara S, Kawai S, Yamasaki O, Inoue T, Kuroki T. [A resected case of double cancer of hepatocellular carcinoma and cholangiocellular carcinoma associated liver cirrhosis C.] *Nippon Shokakibyou Gakkai Zassshi* 2000; **97**: 729-734

11 **Ogata S**, Koike J, Maeyama S, Uchikoshi T. [Separate type of small sized combined liver cancers arising on chronic hepatitis C -A case report-.] *Kanzo* 2000; **41**: 419-424

12 **Kaneko T**, Ito H, Sumi Y, Sawada S, Yoshida N, Suzuki M, Matsuyama R, Matsushima A, Fukazawa M, Itakura Y, Ozeki Y, Seki N. [A case of small cholangiocellular carcinoma found during hepatectomy for hepatocellular carcinoma.] *Nihon Rinsho Geka Gakkai Zasshi* 2001; **62**: 2510-2514

13 **Yoshikawa T**, Hirota S, Matsumoto S, Izaki K, Fukuda T, Sugimura K, Maeda S, Kitagaki H. Double cancer, cholangiocellular and hepatocellular carcinomas, in the cirrhotic liver. *Radiat Med* 2002; **20**: 33-36

14 **Ariizumi S**, Takasaki K, Otsubo T, Yamamoto M, Katsuragawa H, Katagiri S, Yoshitoshi K, Saito A, Nakano M. [Intrahepatic recurrence of hepatocellular and cholangiocellular carcinoma of the liver treated with hepatic srterial infusion chemotherapy showing efficacy only for the hepatocellular carcinoma components.] *Liver Cancer* 2002; **8**: 59-64

15 **Okamoto N**, Teramoto K, Takamatsu S, Ochiai T, Irie T, Noguchi N, Kawamura T, Arii S, Igari T. [A case of double

cancer of hepatocellular carcinoma and cholangiocellular carcinoma after disappearance of hepatitis C virus.] *Jpan J Gastroenterol Surg* 2004; **37**: 1401-1406
16 **Sugimura K**, Murase K, Nitta T, Kondo T, Sugimoto T, Koike D, Hayashi N, Nakahori Y, Ozeki Y, Onishi Y. [A case of double cancer of hepatocellular carcinoma and cholangiocellular carcinoma.] *Liver Cancer* 2004; **10**: 189-195
17 **Koga Y**, Beppu T, Ishiko T, Doi K, Matsuda T, Nakano S, Ikeda K, Kawano I, Hirota M, Egami H. [A longtime-survived case of double cancer in the liver treated with microwave coagulation therapy and hepatectomy.] *Jpan J Gastroenterol Surg* 2005; **38**: 502-508
18 **Iso Y**, Shimoda M, Rokkaku K, Abe A, Sawada T, Kubota K. [A case of double cancer of hepatocellular carcinoma and cholangiocellular carcinoma with dissemination.] *Liver Cancer* 2005; **11**: 205-210
19 Takagi K, Takayama T, Higaki T, Watanabe Y, Hasegawa H. Synchronous hepatocellular carcinoma and cholangiocellular carcinoma. *Nihon Univ J Med* 2005; 4: 203-207
20 **Nakano M**, Hayashi T, Watanabe N, Murayama Y, Ikarashi T, Shimizu H. [A case report of simultaneous of combined hepatocellular and cholangiocellular carcinoma and rectal cancer.] *Nihon Rinsho Geka Gakkai Zasshi* 2006; **67**: 2232-2237
21 **Ogawa T**, Itamoto T, Tashiro H, Asahara T, Arihiro K, Kitamoto M. [Double cancer of hepatocellular carcinoma and intraductal growth type of intrahepatic cholangiocar cinomaassociated with hepatolithiasis.] *Nihon Rinsho Geka Gakkai Zasshi* 2007; **68**: 1528-1534
22 **Yukawa N**, Rino Y, Kanari M, Saeki H, Wada N, Hasuo K, Oshiro H, Masuda M, Imada T. A Case of Synchronous Combined Cholangiocellular and Hepatocellular Carcinoma Observed after Resection of Intraductal Papillary-mucinous Tumor. *Nihon Gekakei Rengo Gakkaishi* 2007; **32**: 808-813
23 **Takayasu K**, Muramatsu Y, Moriyama N, Makuuchi M, Yamazaki S, Kishi K, Yoshino M. Hepatocellular and cholangiocellular carcinoma, double cancer of the liver: report of two cases resected synchronously and metachronously. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1989; **84**: 544-547
24 **Haratake J**, Hashimoto H. An immunohistochemical analysis of 13 cases with combined hepatocellular and cholangiocellular carcinoma. *Liver* 1995; **15**: 9-15
25 **Ohwada S**, Yoshihiro O, Iwazaki S, Tanahashi Y, Sawada T, Takeyoshi I, Kawashima Y, Nakaura S, Iino Y, Morishita Y. Double cancer in different hepatic lobes: hepatocellular and cholangiocellular carcinoma. *Hepatogastroenterology* 1995; **42**: 411-414
26 **Imai Y**, Oda H, Arai M, Shimizu S, Nakatsuru Y, Inoue T, Ishikawa T. Mutational analysis of the p53 and K-ras genes and allelotype study of the Rb-1 gene for investigating the pathogenesis of combined hapatocellular-cholangiocellular carcinomas. *Jpn J Cancer Res* 1996; **87**: 1056-1062
27 **Nagafuchi Y**, Okamoto K, Shono M, Higure A, Todoroki H, Itoh H, Takeda S, Katumoto F, Toyoshima S. Separate histogenesis of combined hepatocellular and cholangiocellular carcinoma in two patients. *Hepatogastroenterology* 1998; **45**: 523-527
28 **Itamoto T**, Asahara T, Katayama K, Momisako H, Dohi K, Shimamoto F. Double cancer - hepatocellular carcinoma and intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma with a spindle-cell variant. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 1999; **6**: 422-426
29 **Kim YW**, Park YK, Park JH, Lee J, Lee SM, Hong SW, Yang MH. A case with intrahepatic double cancer: hepatocellular carcinoma and cholangiocarcinoma associated with multiple von Meyenburg complexes. *Yonsei Med J* 1999; **40**: 506-509
30 **Suzuki H**, Kuwano H, Masuda N, Hashimoto S, Saitoh T, Kanoh K, Nomoto K, Shimura T. Resected case of a double cancer, a hepatocellular carcinoma and a cholangiocellular carcinoma, and their spread to the skin. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2003; **50**: 362-365
31 **Ito Y**, Fujioka H, Matsuzaki S, Yamamoto O, Okudaira S, Azuma T, Furui J, Kanematsu T. Occurrence of hepatocellular and cholangiocellular carcinoma in different hepatic lobes. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2003; **50**: 65-68
32 **Chang JY**, Kim BH, Hong SW, Kim YW, Oh JH. A case report of synchronous double primary liver cancers combined with early gastric cancer. *Korean J Intern Med* 2003; **18**: 115-118
33 **Fuji N**, Taniguchi H, Amaike H, Oka K, Tsuchihashi Y, Urasaki K, Naito K. Synchronously resected double primary hepatic cancer, hepatocellular carcinoma and cholangiocarcinoma. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2005; **20**: 967-969
34 **Sotiropoulos GC**, Molmenti EP, Frilling A, Paul A, Malamutmann E, Broelsch CE, Malago M. Liver transplantation for double primary hepatic cancer-hepatocellular carcinoma and intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. *Transplantation* 2006; **82**: 718-719
35 **Matsuda M**, Hara M, Suzuki T, Kono H, Fujii H. Synchronously resected double primary hepatic cancers - hepatocellular carcinoma and cholangiolocellular carcinoma. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 2006; **13**: 571-576
36 **Inaba K**, Suzuki S, Sakaguchi T, Kobayasi Y, Takehara Y, Miura K, Baba S, Nakamura S, Konno H. Double primary liver cancer (intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma and hepatocellular carcinoma) in a patient with hepatitis C virus-related cirrhosis. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 2007; **14**: 204-209
37 **Tomimatsu M**, Ishiguro N, Taniai M, Okuda H, Saito A, Obata H, Yamamoto M, Takasaki K, Nakano M. Hepatitis C virus antibody in patients with primary liver cancer (hepatocellular carcinoma, cholangiocarcinoma, and combined hepatocellular-cholangiocarcinoma) in Japan. *Cancer* 1993; **72**: 683-688
38 **Yamamoto M**, Takasaki K, Nakano M, Saito A. Minute nodular intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. *Cancer* 1998; **82**: 2145-2149
39 **Kobayashi M**, Ikeda K, Saitoh S, Suzuki F, Tsubota A, Suzuki Y, Arase Y, Murashima N, Chayama K, Kumada H. Incidence of primary cholangiocellular carcinoma of the liver in japanese patients with hepatitis C virus-related cirrhosis. *Cancer* 2000; **88**: 2471-2477
40 **Yano Y**, Yamamoto J, Kosuge T, Sakamoto Y, Yamasaki S, Shimada K, Ojima H, Sakamoto M, Takayama T, Makuuchi M. Combined hepatocellular and cholangiocarcinoma: a clinicopathologic study of 26 resected cases. *Jpn J Clin Oncol* 2003; **33**: 283-287
41 **Ros PR**, Buck JL, Goodman ZD, Ros AM, Olmsted WW. Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma: radiologic-pathologic correlation. *Radiology* 1988; **167**: 689-693
42 **Choi BI**, Han JK, Kim TK. Diagnosi and staging of cholangiocarcinoma by computed tomography. In: Meyers MA, editor. Neoplasms of the digestive tract: imging, staging and management. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven, 1998: 503-516
43 **Choi BI**, Lee JM, Han JK. Imaging of intrahepatic and hilar cholangiocarcinoma. *Abdom Imaging* 2004; **29**: 548-557
44 **Choi BI**, Han JK, Hong ST, Lee KH. Clonorchiasis and cholangiocarcinoma: etiologic relationship and imaging diagnosis. *Clin Microbiol Rev* 2004; **17**: 540-552, table of contents
45 **Malhi H**, Gores GJ. Cholangiocarcinoma: modern advances in understanding a deadly old disease. *J Hepatol* 2006; **45**: 856-867
46 **Slattery JM**, Sahani DV. What is the current state-of-the-art imaging for detection and staging of cholangiocarcinoma? *Oncologist* 2006; **11**: 913-922
47 **Zhang F**, Chen XP, Zhang W, Dong HH, Xiang S, Zhang WG, Zhang BX. Combined hepatocellular cholangiocarcinoma originating from hepatic progenitor cells: immunohistochemical and double-fluorescence immunostaining evidence. *Histopathology* 2008; **52**: 224-232

S- Editor Zhang HN **L- Editor** Herholdt A **E- Editor** Ma WH

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: www.wjgnet.com/wjhoffice
wjh@wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com/wjh

World J Hepatol 2009 October 31; 1(1): I
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

Acknowledgments to reviewers of *World Journal of Hepatology*

Many reviewers have contributed their expertise and time to the peer review, a critical process to ensure the quality of *World Journal of Hepatology*. The editors and authors of the articles submitted to the journal are grateful to the following reviewers for evaluating the articles (including those published in this issue and those rejected for this issue) during the last editing time period.

Inci Alican, MD, PhD, Professor of Physiology, Marmara University School of Medicine, Department of Physiology, 34668, Haydarpasa, Istanbul, Turkey

Pietro Andreone, Professore di Medicina Interna, Dipartimento Universitario di Medicina Clinica, Università di Bologna, DAI di Gastroenterologia e Medicina Interna, Azienda Ospedaliero-Universitaria di Bologna, Policlinico Sant'Orsola-Malpighi, Via Massarenti, 9, 40138 Bologna, Italy

Patricia Cristina Baré, PhD, Virology, Instituto de Investigaciones Hematológicas, Academia Nacional de Medicina, Pacheco de Melo 3081, Buenos Aires, 1425, Argentina

Dr. Melchiorre Cervello, Istituto di Biomedicina e Immunologia Molecolare "Alberto Monroy", Consiglio Nazionale delle Ricerche (CNR), Via Ugo La Malfa 153, Palermo 90146, Italy

Olivier Detry, MD, PhD, Department of Abdominal Surgery and Transplantation, CHU de Liège, University of Liège, Sart Tilman B35, B4000 Liège, Belgium

Ajay Duseja, MD, DM, FACG, Consultant, Department of Hepatology, Post Graduate Institute of Medical Education & Research, Chandigarh 160012, India

Robert A Fisher, MD, HM Lee Professor of Surgery (tenured), Department of Surgery, Division of Transplant Surgery, Medical College of Virginia Hospitals, Virginia Commonwealth University, MCV Campus, VA 23298-0057, United States

Erich Gulbins, MD, Professor, Department of Molecular Biology, University of Duisburg-Essen, Hufelandstrasse 55, 45122 Essen, Germany

Tian-Quan Han, Professor, Department of Surgery, Shanghai Institute of Digestive Surgery, Ruijin Hospital, Shanhai Jiaotong University Medical College, 197 Ruijin 2nd Road, Shanghai 200025, China

Stephen Anderson Harrison, MD, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Department of Medicine, Brooke Army Medical Center, 3851 Roger Brooke Drive, Fort Sam Houston, TX 78234, United States

Donald Peter McManus, Professor and Head, Molecular Parasitology Laboratory, Division of Infectious Diseases, Queensland Institute of Medical Research, 300 Herston Road, Brisbane, Queensland 4006, Australia

Atsushi Nakajima, MD, Professor, Gastroenterology Division, Yokohama City University Hospital, 3-9 Fukuura, Kanazawaku, Yokohama 236 Kanagawa, Japan

Andrea Nicolini, Professor, Department of Internal Medicine, University of Pisa, via Roma 67, 56126 Pisa, Itlay

Camillo Porta, MD, Medical Oncology and Laboratory of Pre-Clinical Oncology and Developmental Therapeutics, IRCCS San Matteo University Hospital Foundation, Piazzale C. Golgi 19, I-27100 Pavia, Italy

Shivendra Shukla, Professor, Department of Medical Pharmacology and Physiology, University of Missouri School of Medicine, 1 Hospital Drive, M530 Medical Sciences Bldg., Columbia MO 65212, United States

Frank Tacke, MD, PhD, Department of Medicine III,University Hospital Aachen, Pauwelsstr. 30, 52074 Aachen, Germany

Bin Wang, Professor, PhD, MD, Deputy President of Weifang Medical University; Dean of School of Radiology, Director of Centre of Molecular Imaging, Chairman Medical Imaging Center, the Affiliated Hospital, Weifang Medical University, 7166 Baotong West Street, Weifang 261053, Shandong Province, China

Xin Wei Wang, PhD, Senior Investigator, Chief, Liver Carcinogenesis Section, LHC, NCI, NIH, 37 Convent Drive, MSC 4258, Building 37, Room 3044A, Bethesda, MD 20892, United States

Nathalie Wong, Professor, Department of Anatomical and Cellular Pathology, The Chinese University of Hong Kong, Shatin NT, Hong Kong, China

Yusuf Yilmaz, MD, Department of Gastroenterology, Marmara University School of Medicine, Tophanelioglu cad. No:13/15, Altunizade, Istanbul 34662, Turkey

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com/wjh

World J Hepatol 2009 October 31; 1(1): I
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

Meetings

Events Calendar 2009

October 30-November 3, 2009
Boston, MA, United States
The Liver Meeting

November 1, 2009
16th Annual Scientific Meeting of Hong Kong College of Radiologists
Organised by: Hong Kong College of Radiologists Venue: Hong Kong Academy of Medicine Jockey Club Building, 99 Wong Chuk Hang Road, Aberdeen, Hong Kong
http://www.hkcr.org

November 2, 2009
16th Annual Scientific Meeting of Hong Kong College of Radiologists
Organised by: Hong Kong College of Radiologists Venue: Hong Kong Academy of Medicine Jockey Club Building, 99 Wong Chuk Hang Road, Aberdeen, Hong Kong
http://www.hkcr.org

November 8, 2009
International Symposium on Hepatology 2009 / 22nd Annual Scientific Meeting
Organised by: The Hong Kong Association for the Study of Liver Diseases, Venue: Hong Kong Convention and Exhibition Centre
Email: melissa.leung@asia.cmpmedica.com

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com/wjh

World J Hepatol 2009 October 31; 1(1): I-V
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

Instructions to authors

GENERAL INFORMATION

World Journal of Hepatology (*World J Hepatol*, *WJH*, ISSN 1948-5182, DOI: 10.4254), is a monthly, open-access (OA), peer-reviewed online journal supported by an editorial board of 575 experts in hepatology from 45 countries.

The biggest advantage of the OA model is that it provides free, full-text articles in PDF and other formats for experts and the public without registration, which eliminates the obstacle that traditional journals possess and usually delays the speed of the propagation and communication of scientific research results.

The role of academic journals is to exhibit the scientific levels of a country, a university, a center, a department, and even a scientist, and build an important bridge for communication between scientists and the public. As we all know, the significance of the publication of scientific articles lies not only in disseminating and communicating innovative scientific achievements and academic views, as well as promoting the application of scientific achievements, but also in formally recognizing the "priority" and "copyright" of innovative achievements published, as well as evaluating research performance and academic levels. So, to realize these desired attributes of *WJH* and create a well-recognized journal, the following four types of personal benefits should be maximized. The maximization of personal benefits refers to the pursuit of the maximum personal benefits in a well-considered optimal manner without violation of the laws, ethical rules and the benefits of others. (1) Maximization of the benefits of editorial board members: The primary task of editorial board members is to give a peer review of an unpublished scientific article via online office system to evaluate its innovativeness, scientific and practical values and determine whether it should be published or not. During peer review, editorial board members can also obtain cutting-edge information in that field at first hand. As leaders in their field, they have priority to be invited to write articles and publish commentary articles. We will put peer reviewers' names and affiliations along with the article they reviewed in the journal to acknowledge their contribution; (2) Maximization of the benefits of authors: Since *WJH* is an open-access journal, readers around the world can immediately download and read, free of charge, high-quality, peer-reviewed articles from *WJH* official website, thereby realizing the goals and significance of the communication between authors and peers as well as public reading; (3) Maximization of the benefits of readers: Readers can read or use, free of charge, high-quality peer-reviewed articles without any limits, and cite the arguments, viewpoints, concepts, theories, methods, results, conclusion or facts and data of pertinent literature so as to validate the innovativeness, scientific and practical values of their own research achievements, thus ensuring that their articles have novel arguments or viewpoints, solid evidence and correct conclusion; and (4) Maximization of the benefits of employees: It is an iron law that a first-class journal is unable to exist without first-class editors, and only first-class editors can create a first-class academic journal. We insist on strengthening our team cultivation and construction so that every employee, in an open, fair and transparent environment, could contribute their wisdom to edit and publish high-quality articles, thereby realizing the maximization of the personal benefits of editorial board members, authors and readers, and yielding the greatest social and economic benefits.

The major task of *WJH* is to report rapidly the most recent results in basic and clinical research on hepatology, including: liver biology/pathology, cirrhosis and its complications, liver fibrosis, liver failure, portal hypertension, hepatitis B and C and inflammatory disorders, steatohepatitis and metabolic liver disease, hepatocellular carcinoma, biliary tract disease, autoimmune disease, cholestatic and biliary disease, transplantation, genetics, epidemiology, microbiology, molecular and cell biology, nutrition, geriatric and pediatric hepatology, diagnosis and screening, endoscopy, imaging, and advanced technology.

The columns in the issues of *WJH* will include: (1) Editorial: To introduce and comment on the substantial advance and its importance in the fast-developing areas; (2) Frontier: To review the most representative achievements and comment on the current research status in the important fields, and propose directions for the future research; (3) Topic Highlight: This column consists of three formats, including (A) 10 invited review articles on a hot topic, (B) a commentary on common issues of this hot topic, and (C) a commentary on the 10 individual articles; (4) Observation: To update the development of old and new questions, highlight unsolved problems, and provide strategies on how to solve the questions; (5) Guidelines for Basic Research: To provide Guidelines for basic research; (6) Guidelines for Clinical Practice: To provide guidelines for clinical diagnosis and treatment; (7) Review: To systemically review the most representative progress and unsolved problems in the major scientific disciplines, comment on the current research status, and make suggestions on the future work; (8) Original Articles: To originally report the innovative and valuable findings in hepatology; (9) Brief Articles: To briefly report the novel and innovative findings in hepatology; (10) Case Report: To report a rare or typical case; (11) Letters to the Editor: To discuss and make reply to the contributions published in *WJH*, or to introduce and comment on a controversial issue of general interest; (12) Book Reviews: To introduce and comment on quality monographs of hepatology; (13) Guidelines: To introduce Consensuses and Guidelines reached by international and national academic authorities worldwide on basic research and clinical practice in hepatology.

CSSN
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

Published by
Beijing Baishideng BioMed Scientific Co., Ltd.

SUBMISSION OF MANUSCRIPTS

Manuscripts should be typed in 1.5 line spacing and 12

pt. Book Antiqua with ample margins. Number all pages consecutively, and start each of the following sections on a new page: Title Page, Abstract, Introduction, Materials and Methods, Results, Discussion, Acknowledgements, References, Tables, Figures, and Figure Legends. Neither the editors nor the publisher are responsible for the opinions expressed by contributors. Manuscripts formally accepted for publication become the permanent property of Beijing Baishideng BioMed Scientific Co., Ltd, and may not be reproduced by any means, in whole or in part, without the written permission of both the authors and the publisher. We reserve the right to copy-edit and put onto our website accepted manuscripts. Authors should follow the relevant guidelines for the care and use of laboratory animals of their institution or national animal welfare committee. For the sake of transparency in regard to the performance and reporting of clinical trials, we endorse the policy of the International Committee of Medical Journal Editors to refuse to publish papers on clinical trial results if the trial was not recorded in a publicly-accessible registry at its outset. The only register now available, to our knowledge, is http://www. clinicaltrials.gov sponsored by the United States National Library of Medicine and we encourage all potential contributors to register with it. However, in the case that other registers become available you will be duly notified. A letter of recommendation from each author's organization should be provided with the contributed article to ensure the privacy and secrecy of research is protected.

Authors should retain one copy of the text, tables, photographs and illustrations because rejected manuscripts will not be returned to the author(s) and the editors will not be responsible for loss or damage to photographs and illustrations sustained during mailing.

Online submissions

Manuscripts should be submitted through the Online Submission System at: http://www.wjgnet.com/wjhoffice. Authors are highly recommended to consult the ONLINE INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS (http://www.wjgnet.com/wjh/full/v1/i1/112.htm) before attempting to submit online. For assistance, authors encountering problems with the Online Submission System may send an email describing the problem to wjh@wjgnet.com, or by telephone: +86-10-59080038. If you submit your manuscript online, do not make a postal contribution. Repeated online submission for the same manuscript is strictly prohibited.

MANUSCRIPT PREPARATION

All contributions should be written in English. All articles must be submitted using word-processing software. All submissions must be typed in 1.5 line spacing and 12 pt. Book Antiqua with ample margins. Style should conform to our house format. Required information for each of the manuscript sections is as follows:

Title page

Title: Title should be less than 12 words.

Running title: A short running title of less than 6 words should be provided.

Authorship: Authorship credit should be in accordance with the standard proposed by International Committee of Medical Journal Editors, based on (1) substantial contributions to conception and design, acquisition of data, or analysis and interpretation of data; (2) drafting the article or revising it critically for important intellectual content; and (3) final approval of the version to be published. Authors should meet conditions 1, 2, and 3.

Institution: Author names should be given first, then the complete name of institution, city, province and postcode. For example, Xu-Chen Zhang, Li-Xin Mei, Department of Pathology, Chengde Medical College, Chengde 067000, Hebei Province, China. One author may be represented from two institutions, for example, George Sgourakis, Department of General, Visceral, and Transplantation Surgery, Essen 45122, Germany; George Sgourakis, 2nd Surgical Department, Korgialenio-Benakio Red Cross Hospital, Athens 15451, Greece

Author contributions: The format of this section should be: Author contributions: Wang CL and Liang L contributed equally to this work; Wang CL, Liang L, Fu JF, Zou CC, Hong F and Wu XM designed the research; Wang CL, Zou CC, Hong F and Wu XM performed the research; Xue JZ and Lu JR contributed new reagents/analytic tools; Wang CL, Liang L and Fu JF analyzed the data; and Wang CL, Liang L and Fu JF wrote the paper.

Supportive foundations: The complete name and number of supportive foundations should be provided, e.g., Supported by National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 30224801

Correspondence to: Only one corresponding address should be provided. Author names should be given first, then author title, affiliation, the complete name of institution, city, postcode, province, country, and email. All the letters in the email should be in lower case. A space interval should be inserted between country name and email address. For example, Montgomery Bissell, MD, Professor of Medicine, Chief, Liver Center, Gastroenterology Division, University of California, Box 0538, San Francisco, CA 94143, United States. montgomery.bissell@ucsf.edu

Telephone and fax: Telephone and fax should consist of +, country number, district number and telephone or fax number, e.g., Telephone: +86-10-59080039, Fax: +86-10-85381893

Peer reviewers: All articles received are subject to peer review. Normally, three experts are invited for each article. Decision for acceptance is made only when at least two experts recommend an article for publication. Reviewers for accepted manuscripts are acknowledged in each manuscript, and reviewers of articles which were not accepted will be acknowledged at the end of each issue. To ensure the quality of the articles published in *WJH*, reviewers of accepted manuscripts will be announced by publishing the name, title/position and institution of the reviewer in the footnote accompanying the printed article. For example, reviewers: Professor Jing-Yuan Fang, Shanghai Institute of Digestive Disease, Shanghai, Affiliated Renji Hospital, Medical Faculty, Shanghai Jiaotong University, Shanghai, China; Professor Xin-Wei Han, Department of Radiology, The First Affiliated Hospital, Zhengzhou University, Zhengzhou, Henan Province, China; and Professor Anren Kuang, Department of Nuclear Medicine, Huaxi Hospital, Sichuan University, Chengdu, Sichuan Province, China.

Abstract

There are unstructured abstracts (no more than 256 words)

and structured abstracts (no more than 480). The specific requirements for structured abstracts are as follows:

An informative, structured abstracts of no more than 480 words should accompany each manuscript. Abstracts for original contributions should be structured into the following sections. AIM (no more than 20 words): Only the purpose should be included. Please write the aim as the form of "To investigate/study/…; MATERIALS AND METHODS (no more than 140 words); RESULTS (no more than 294 words): You should present *P* values where appropriate and must provide relevant data to illustrate how they were obtained, e.g. 6.92 ± 3.86 *vs* 3.61 ± 1.67, $P < 0.001$; CONCLUSION (no more than 26 words). Available from: http://www.wjgnet.com/wjg/help/8.doc.

Key words

Please list 5-10 key words, selected mainly from *Index Medicus*, which reflect the content of the study.

Text

For articles of these sections, original articles, rapid communication and case reports, the main text should be structured into the following sections: INTRODUCTION, MATERIALS AND METHODS, RESULTS and DISCUSSION, and should include appropriate Figures and Tables. Data should be presented in the main text or in Figures and Tables, but not in both. The main text format of these sections, editorial, topic highlight, case report, letters to the editors, can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/wjg/help/instructions.jsp.

Illustrations

Figures should be numbered as 1, 2, 3, *etc.*, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each figure on a separate page. Detailed legends should not be provided under the figures. This part should be added into the text where the figures are applicable. Figures should be either Photoshop or Illustrator files (in tiff, eps, jpeg formats) at high-resolution. Examples can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/4520.pdf; http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/4554.pdf; http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/4891.pdf; http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/4986.pdf; http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/4498.pdf. Keeping all elements compiled is necessary in line-art image. Scale bars should be used rather than magnification factors, with the length of the bar defined in the legend rather than on the bar itself. File names should identify the figure and panel. Avoid layering type directly over shaded or textured areas. Please use uniform legends for the same subjects. For example: Figure 1 Pathological changes in atrophic gastritis after treatment. A:...; B:...; C:...; D:...; E:...; F:...; G: …*etc.* It is our principle to publish high resolution-figures for the printed and E-versions.

Tables

Three-line tables should be numbered 1, 2, 3, *etc.*, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each table. Detailed legends should not be included under tables, but rather added into the text where applicable. The information should complement, but not duplicate the text. Use one horizontal line under the title, a second under column heads, and a third below the Table, above any footnotes. Vertical and italic lines should be omitted.

Notes in tables and illustrations

Data that are not statistically significant should not be noted. $^{a}P < 0.05$, $^{b}P < 0.01$ should be noted ($P > 0.05$ should not be noted). If there are other series of *P* values, $^{c}P < 0.05$ and $^{d}P < 0.01$ are used. A third series of *P* values can be expressed as $^{e}P < 0.05$ and $^{f}P < 0.01$. Other notes in tables or under illustrations should be expressed as ^{1}F, ^{2}F, ^{3}F; or sometimes as other symbols with a superscript (Arabic numerals) in the upper left corner. In a multi-curve illustration, each curve should be labeled with ●, ○, ■, □, ▲, △, *etc.*, in a certain sequence.

Acknowledgments

Brief acknowledgments of persons who have made genuine contributions to the manuscript and who endorse the data and conclusions should be included. Authors are responsible for obtaining written permission to use any copyrighted text and/or illustrations.

REFERENCES

Coding system

The author should number the references in Arabic numerals according to the citation order in the text. Put reference numbers in square brackets in superscript at the end of citation content or after the cited author's name. For citation content which is part of the narration, the coding number and square brackets should be typeset normally. For example, "Crohn's disease (CD) is associated with increased intestinal permeability[1,2]". If references are cited directly in the text, they should be put together within the text, for example, "From references[19,22-24], we know that..."

When the authors write the references, please ensure that the order in text is the same as in the references section, and also ensure the spelling accuracy of the first author's name. Do not list the same citation twice.

PMID and DOI

Pleased provide PubMed citation numbers to the reference list, e.g. PMID and DOI, which can be found at http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/sites/entrez?db=pubmed and http://www.crossref.org/SimpleTextQuery/, respectively. The numbers will be used in E-version of this journal.

Style for journal references

Authors: the name of the first author should be typed in bold-faced letters. The family name of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized, followed by their abbreviated first and middle initials. (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR). The title of the cited article and italicized journal title (journal title should be in its abbreviated form as shown in PubMed), publication date, volume number (in black), start page, and end page [PMID: 11819634 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.5396].

Style for book references

Authors: the name of the first author should be typed in bold-faced letters. The surname of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized, followed by their abbreviated middle and first initials. (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR) Book title. Publication number. Publication place: Publication press, Year: start page and end page.

Format

Journals

English journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

1 **Jung EM**, Clevert DA, Schreyer AG, Schmitt S, Rennert J, Kubale R, Feuerbach S, Jung F. Evaluation of quantitative contrast harmonic imaging to assess malignancy of liver tumors: A prospective controlled two-center study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 6356-6364 [PMID: 18081224 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.6356]

Chinese journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

2 **Lin GZ**, Wang XZ, Wang P, Lin J, Yang FD. Immunologic effect of Jianpi Yishen decoction in treatment of Pixu-diarrhoea. *Shijie Huaren Xiaohua Zazhi* 1999; **7**: 285-287

In press

3 **Tian D**, Araki H, Stahl E, Bergelson J, Kreitman M. Signature of balancing selection in Arabidopsis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2006; In press

Organization as author

4 **Diabetes Prevention Program Research Group**. Hypertension, insulin, and proinsulin in participants with impaired glucose tolerance. *Hypertension* 2002; **40**: 679-686 [PMID: 12411462 PMCID:2516377 DOI:10.1161/01.HYP.0000035706.28494.09]

Both personal authors and an organization as author

5 **Vallancien G**, Emberton M, Harving N, van Moorselaar RJ; Alf-One Study Group. Sexual dysfunction in 1, 274 European men suffering from lower urinary tract symptoms. *J Urol* 2003; **169**: 2257-2261 [PMID: 12771764 DOI:10.1097/01.ju.0000067940.76090.73]

No author given

6 21st century heart solution may have a sting in the tail. *BMJ* 2002; **325**: 184 [PMID: 12142303 DOI:10.1136/bmj.325.7357.184]

Volume with supplement

7 **Geraud G**, Spierings EL, Keywood C. Tolerability and safety of frovatriptan with short- and long-term use for treatment of migraine and in comparison with sumatriptan. *Headache* 2002; **42** Suppl 2: S93-99 [PMID: 12028325 DOI:10.1046/j.1526-4610.42.s2.7.x]

Issue with no volume

8 **Banit DM**, Kaufer H, Hartford JM. Intraoperative frozen section analysis in revision total joint arthroplasty. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2002; (**401**): 230-238 [PMID: 12151900 DOI:10.1097/00003086-200208000-00026]

No volume or issue

9 Outreach: Bringing HIV-positive individuals into care. *HRSA Careaction* 2002; 1-6 [PMID: 12154804]

Books

Personal author(s)

10 **Sherlock S**, Dooley J. Diseases of the liver and billiary system. 9th ed. Oxford: Blackwell Sci Pub, 1993: 258-296

Chapter in a book (list all authors)

11 **Lam SK**. Academic investigator's perspectives of medical treatment for peptic ulcer. In: Swabb EA, Azabo S. Ulcer disease: investigation and basis for therapy. New York: Marcel Dekker, 1991: 431-450

Author(s) and editor(s)

12 **Breedlove GK**, Schorfheide AM. Adolescent pregnancy. 2nd ed. Wieczorek RR, editor. White Plains (NY): March of Dimes Education Services, 2001: 20-34

Conference proceedings

13 **Harnden P**, Joffe JK, Jones WG, editors. Germ cell tumours V. Proceedings of the 5th Germ cell tumours Conference; 2001 Sep 13-15; Leeds, UK. New York: Springer, 2002: 30-56

Conference paper

14 **Christensen S**, Oppacher F. An analysis of Koza's computational effort statistic for genetic programming. In: Foster JA, Lutton E, Miller J, Ryan C, Tettamanzi AG, editors. Genetic programming. EuroGP 2002: Proceedings of the 5th European Conference on Genetic Programming; 2002 Apr 3-5; Kinsdale, Ireland. Berlin: Springer, 2002: 182-191

Electronic journal (list all authors)

15 Morse SS. Factors in the emergence of infectious diseases. Emerg Infect Dis serial online, 1995-01-03, cited 1996-06-05; 1(1): 24 screens. Available from: URL: http//www.cdc.gov/ncidod/EID/eid.htm

Patent (list all authors)

16 **Pagedas AC**, inventor; Ancel Surgical R&D Inc., assignee. Flexible endoscopic grasping and cutting device and positioning tool assembly. United States patent US 20020103498. 2002 Aug 1

Statistical data

Write as mean ± SD or mean ± SE.

Statistical expression

Express *t* test as *t* (in italics), *F* test as *F* (in italics), chi square test as χ^2 (in Greek), related coefficient as *r* (in italics), degree of freedom as υ (in Greek), sample number as *n* (in italics), and probability as *P* (in italics).

Units

Use SI units. For example: body mass, m (B) = 78 kg; blood pressure, p (B) = 16.2/12.3 kPa; incubation time, t (incubation) = 96 h, blood glucose concentration, c (glucose) 6.4 ± 2.1 mmol/L; blood CEA mass concentration, p (CEA) = 8.6 24.5 μg/L; CO_2 volume fraction, 50 mL/L CO_2, not 5% CO_2; likewise for 40 g/L formaldehyde, not 10% formalin; and mass fraction, 8 ng/g, *etc.* Arabic numerals such as 23, 243, 641 should be read 23 243 641.

The format for how to accurately write common units and quantums can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/wjg/help/15.doc.

Abbreviations

Standard abbreviations should be defined in the abstract and on first mention in the text. In general, terms should not be abbreviated unless they are used repeatedly and the abbreviation is helpful to the reader. Permissible abbreviations are listed in Units, Symbols and Abbreviations: A Guide for Biological and Medical Editors and Authors (Ed. Baron DN, 1988) published by The Royal Society of Medicine, London. Certain commonly used abbreviations, such as DNA, RNA, HIV, LD50, PCR, HBV, ECG, WBC, RBC, CT, ESR, CSF, IgG, ELISA, PBS, ATP, EDTA, mAb, can be used directly without further explanation.

Italics

Quantities: *t* time or temperature, *c* concentration, *A* area, *l* length, *m* mass, *V* volume.

Genotypes: *gyrA*, *arg* 1, *c myc*, *c fos*, *etc.*

Restriction enzymes: *Eco*RI, *Hin*dI, *Bam*HI, *Kbo* I, *Kpn* I, *etc.*

Biology: *H. pylori*, *E coli*, *etc.*

SUBMISSION OF THE REVISED MANUSCRIPTS AFTER ACCEPTED

Please revise your article according to the revision policies

of *WJH*. The revised version including manuscript and high-resolution image figures (if any) should be copied on a floppy or compact disk. The author should send the revised manuscript, along with printed high-resolution color or black and white photos, copyright transfer letter, and responses to the reviewers by courier (such as EMS/DHL).

Editorial Office

World Journal of Hepatology

Editorial Department: Room 903, Building D,
Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu,
Chaoyang District, Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-59080038
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: wjh@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com/wjh

Language evaluation

The language of a manuscript will be graded before it is sent for revision. (1) Grade A: priority publishing; (2) Grade B: minor language polishing; (3) Grade C: a great deal of language polishing needed; (4) Grade D: rejected. Revised articles should reach Grade A or B.

Copyright assignment form

Please download a Copyright assignment form from http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/news/10.doc.

Responses to reviewers

Please revise your article according to the comments/suggestions provided by the reviewers. The format for responses to the reviewers' comments can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/news/12.doc.

Proof of financial support

For paper supported by a foundation, authors should provide a copy of the document and serial number of the foundation.

Links to documents related to the manuscript

WJH will be initiating a platform to promote dynamic interactions between the editors, peer reviewers, readers and authors. After a manuscript is published online, links to the PDF version of the submitted manuscript, the peer-reviewers' report and the revised manuscript will be put on-line. Readers can make comments on the peer reviewer's report, authors' responses to peer reviewers, and the revised manuscript. We hope that authors will benefit from this feedback and be able to revise the manuscript accordingly in a timely manner.

Science news releases

Authors of accepted manuscripts are suggested to write a science news item to promote their articles. The news will be released rapidly at EurekAlert/AAAS (http://www.eurekalert.org). The title for news items should be less than 90 characters; the summary should be less than 75 words; and main body less than 500 words. Science news items should be lawful, ethical, and strictly based on your original content with an attractive title and interesting pictures.

Publication fee

Authors of accepted articles must pay a publication fee. EDITORIAL, TOPIC HIGHLIGHTS, BOOK REVIEWS and LETTERS TO THE EDITOR are published free of charge.